# Exocentric Compound Words and Their Usage in Southern African Newspapers: The Case of Lesotho and South Africa

By

'Maboleba Agnes Kolobe

**Doctor of Philosophy** 

in

English Language and Linguistics

National University of Lesotho

Faculty of Humanities, Department of English

**July 2014** 

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

PRELIMINARY PAGES	PAGE
Certificate of Approval	i
Declaration	ii
Acknowledgements	iii
Dedication	V
List of abbreviations	vi
Abstract	vii
CHAPTER 1: GENERAL INTRODUCTION	
1.1. Introduction to the Study	1
1.2. Background to the Study	2
1.2.1. Morphology in Lexicon Expansion	2
1.2.2. Synopsis on the Study of Word-formation	5
1.2.3. Defining the Term Compounding	6
1.2.4. Functions of Compound Words	9
1.2.5. Representation of Compound Words	10
1.2.6. Classification of Compound Words	11
1.2.7. The Concept of Exocentricity	13
1.2.7.1. Endocentric Compound Words	13
1.2.7.2. Exocentric Compound Words	14
1.2.8. Theoretical Premises Used in Compounding	18
1.2.8.1. Reductionists Theories	19
1.2.8.2. Transformational Theories	19
1.2.8.3. Slot-filler Theories	19
1.2.8.4. Pragmatic Theory	20
1.2.9. Background of Media in Lesotho	21
1.2.10. Language and the Media	22
1.3. Statement of the Problem	28

1.4. Research Questions	29
1.5. Aim and Objectives	30
1.6. Hypotheses	30
1.7. Scope	31
1.8. Significance of the Study	31
1.9.Organisation of the Study	32
1.10. Summary of Chapter 1	32
CHAPTER 2: LITERATURE REVIEW	
2.1. Introduction	33
2.2. Understanding Compounding as a Phenomenon	33
2.3. Compounding as a Word-formation Process	35
2.4. Classification of Compound Words	36
2.5. Differentiating Endocentric from Exocentric Compound Words	44
2.6. Application of Compound Words	46
2.7. Compounding Databases	50
2.8. Interpreting Compound Words	51
2.9. Analysing Exocentric Compound Words	56
2.10. Language Use in Media	61
2.11. Compounding in Media	67
2.11.1. British Newspapers and Compound Words	67
2.11.2. Indonesia's Newspapers and Compound Words	70
2.12. Summary of Chapter 2	75
CHAPTER 3: METHODOLOGY	
3.1. Introduction	77
3.2. Research Design and Approach	78
3.3. Sample and Sampling Techniques	79
3.3.1. Selection of Cases	79
3.3.2. Units of Analysis	80
3 3 3 Corpora Selection	81

3.4. Data Collection	84
3.5. Data Analysis	84
3.6. Pilot Study	85
3.7. Delimitation of the Study	88
3.8. Summary of Chapter 3	88
CHAPTER 4: DATA ANALYSIS AND DISCUSSION	
4.1. Introduction	90
4.2. Data Presentation and Analysis	91
4.3. Data Analysis and Findings	147
4.3.1. Relations between Compound Constituents and Compound Entities	148
4.3.2. Patterns of Exocentric Compound Words	211
4.3.2.1. Compound Nouns	212
4.3.2.2. Compound Verbs	215
4.3.2.3. Compound Adjectives	217
4.3.2.4. Compound Adverb	220
4.3.3. Neologisms	221
4.3.3.1. String-like Compound Words	221
4.3.3.2. Pre-modified Compound Words	222
4.3.3.3. Coinage Structures	224
4.3.3.4. Conceptual Meanings	226
4.3.3.4.1. Constituent-based Meanings	226
4.3.3.4.2. Partial Context-based	233
4.3.3.4.3. Total Context-based	234
4.3.3 5. Compound Neologisms Patterns	236
4.4. Summary of Chapter 4	237
CHAPTER 5: GENERAL CONCLUSION AND RECOMMENDATION	
5.1. Introduction	239
5.2. Revisiting the Research Questions	240
5.2.1. Are exocentric compound words used in Southern African newspapers?	240

5.2.1.1. Compound Nouns	240
5.2.1.2. Compound Verbs	243
5.2.1.3. Compound Adjectives	244
5.2.1.4. Compound Adverb	246
5.2.2. How does each constituent of an exocentric compound word relate to the co	ompound
entity?	246
5.2.3. Neologisms	251
5.2.1.5. Compound Neologism Patterns	252
5.2.1.5.1. Compound Neologism Verb Patterns	252
5.2.1.5.2. Compound Neologism Noun Patterns	252
5.2.1.5.3. Compound Neologism Adjective Patterns	253
5.2.1.5.4. Compound Neologism Adverb Pattern	253
5.2.4. Conceptual Meanings	254
5.2.5. Which and why are certain features of a compound word entity chosen	n for the
formation of an exocentric compound word?	254
5.3. Theoretical Implication	255
5.4. Strengths and Contribution of the Study	255
5.5. Limitations to the Study	256
5.6. Suggestions and Recommendation for Future Research	256
5.7. Summary of Chapter 5	257
LIST OF TABLES	
Table 1: Classification of Compound Words by Year and Theorist	38
Table 2: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Transition	149
Table 3: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-cause	151
Table 4: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Result-cause	152
Table 5: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Part-whole	154
Table 6: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Attribution	156
Table 7: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Purpose	158
Table 8: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Purpose-action	160
Table 9: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Location-purpose	161
Table 10: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Receiver-action	162
Table 11: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-receiver	164

Table 12: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position	165
Table 13: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position-action	168
Table 14: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-position	171
Table 15: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-position	173
Table 16: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position-agent	174
Table 17: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position-instrument	174
Table 18: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Time	175
Table 19: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Time-place	177
Table 20: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Time-action	178
Table 21: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-time	179
Table 22: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-condition	180
Table 23: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Activity-oriented	181
Table 24: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Status	183
Table 25: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-agent	185
Table 26: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Status-agent	187
Table 27: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-agent	188
Table 28: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Purpose-agent	189
Table 29: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-condition	190
Table 30: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-output	191
Table 31: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Intensity	192
Table 32: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-intensity	193
Table 33: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Intensity-action	195
Table 34: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position-intensity	197
Table 35: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Outcome-intensity	198
Table 36: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Intensity-outcome	199
Table 37: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Metaphor	200
Table 38: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Output-input	200
Table 39: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Input-output	202
Table 40: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Input-input	203
Table 41: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Output-distance	205
Table 42: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Personality	206
Table 43: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Movement	209
Table 44: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Measurement	210

REFERENCES APPENDIX	258 271
Table 58: Patterns of Compound Neologism Adverb	253
Table 57: Patterns of Compound Neologism Adjectives	253
Table 56: Patterns of Compound Neologism Nouns	252
Table 55: Patterns of Compound Neologism Verbs	252
Table 54: Structures of Neologisms in the Corpus	251
Table 53: Summary of Constituent-compound Entity Relations	247
Table 52: Pattern of Compound Adverb	246
Table 51: Patterns of Absolute Categorical Exocentric Compound Adjectives	245
Table 50: Patterns of Compound Adjectives	244
Table 49: Pattern of Absolute Categorical Exocentric Compound Verb	244
Table 48: Patterns of Compound Verbs Found in the Corpus	243
Table 47: Compound Nouns Formed from Suffixation	242
Table 46: Patterns of Absolute Categorical Exocentric Compound Nouns	242
Table 45: Patterns of Compound Nouns Found in the Corpus	241
Table 45: Patterns of Compound Nouns Found in the Corpus	2/1

#### NATIONAL UNIVERSITY OF LESOTHO

### **CERTIFICATE OF APPROVAL**

## EXOCENTRIC COMPOUND WORDS AND THEIR USAGE IN SOUTHERN AFRICAN NEWSPAPERS: THE CASE OF LESOTHO AND SOUTH AFRICA

By

## 'Maboleba Agnes Kolobe

This is to certify that this thesis has been examined and approved by the Examining Committee in fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

Supervisor		
Dr. Beatrice Ekanjun	ne-Ilongo, Department of English	
Head, Department of English		
	Dr. Puleng Letsoela	
Dean, Faculty of Humanities		
•	Dr. Beatrice Ekanjume-Ilongo	

#### **DECLARATION**

I undertake that this thesis entitled Exocentric Compound Words and Their Usage in Southern African Newspapers: The Case of Lesotho and South Africa is my own and has not been written for me, in whole or in part, by any other person. Information taken from other books, articles and websites have been duly acknowledged.

Signed
--------

'Maboleba Agnes Kolobe

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would like to pass my gratitude to the very many people who contributed in the undertaking of this study, from its initial stage to its completion.

I wish to thank my supervisor and mentor Dr. Ekanjume-Ilongo, for her immeasurable assistance throughout all the stages of this thesis. If it wasn't for her informed comments and ceaseless coaching, it would have not been easy to complete this work on time. I remain indebted to her.

I am equally indebted to members of the English Department at the National University of Lesotho and colleagues at the Lerotholi Polytechnic for seeing the potential in me and helping me realise it too. I also thank the Polytechnic administration for understanding that I had to leave them for the good of this degree. Thank you for showing real professionalism.

My gratitude is again due to different groups of people who contributed directly and indirectly when this work was in progress. I thank my students from Lerotholi Polytechnic and the National University of Lesotho for keeping me motivated me with their 'Whows' comments, though they were not aware of the impact those comments made.

My special thanks go to my family. Ntate Kolobe, who is and has always been an anchor of my strength from the time we met till now. I will never forget the timeless moments that he kept asking me how far I was with my work. His encouragement that I should focus on my work, and his understanding during the times when I had to leave him and the girls at home in pursuance of this work, indeed, make me feel humbled. 'Ntate, You made me start this

journey and you helped me through it to the very end. Indeed, I have reached high like you once wished. You are amazing! I love you so much and I truly thank God for you'.

I thank my girls for understanding that "Mummy has a lot of work to do so she won't be home today or tomorrow or the whole week." You guys are just a BLESSING from GOD and I love you girls!

#### **DEDICATION**

I wish to dedicate this thesis to my dear husband, Gauda Daniel Kolobe, who at the completion of its writing has also begun his retirement;

To my three beautiful girls- Boleba Priscilla,

Kamohelo Isabella and

Reneuoe Daisy;

To my late parents, 'Noosi Joshua and 'Matholloana Jeanett Lehloka;

To all women inspired by this work!

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

ACE: Absolute categorical exocentricity

CW: Compound word

C1: Constituent 1

C2: Constituent 2

#### **ABSTRACT**

This research contributes to an understanding of exocentricity phenomenon by using a constituent-entity approach to illuminate relations that hold between compound constituents and compound entities. Despite the growing literature in compounding research, there has been relatively little discussion of exocentric compounding in media context. Past research has focussed almost on endocentric compound words in literary works and/or morphological databases. This study addresses this gap by examining usage of exocentric compound words in Southern African newspapers. More specifically, it provides insights into various relations between compound constituents and entities of exocentric compound words in which such constituents appear. By considering exocentric constituents and media context, the study speaks to calls to account for insufficient framework for analysis of exocentric compound words. Such calls emerge from the views that exocentric compound words are considered out-centred and idiomatic and could be analysed by employing metaphor, metonymy analytical tools. This study argues that interpretation of exocentric compound words depend on the features of individual compound constituents, a situation that ascertains direct relationship between an exocentric compound word and the entity that it is used to refer to.

Data for this study were collected from four quality English newspapers published in Lesotho and South Africa and circulated in Lesotho after 1993, a year that brought with it freedom of expression and freedom of media (Matjama (1997). The primary contribution of this study to the literature on exocentric compounding is a WordNet Similarity framework. This framework offers an exhaustive picture of constituent-entity relations. It displays how and why other senses of compound entities are chosen over others to form the compound words.

The study contributes to the literature by identifying 43 constituent-entity relations, various structures of exocentric compound neologisms and their different patterns. It also demonstrates contribution of context in analysing absolute categorical exocentric compound words. Importantly, the findings presented in this thesis demonstrate productiveness of constituent-context analysis approach in exocentric compounding.

#### CHAPTER 1

#### **GENERAL INTRODUCTION**

#### 1.1. Introduction to the Study

Post apartheid era marked change in the history of media in the sister countries of Lesotho and South Africa. Matjama (2007:18) state that due to apartheid regime, media growth was stagnated in the two countries because only government-related issues were aired. The situation did not only affect content of what should be broadcasted but also the words used to communicate the content had to be well chosen (Reah, 1998:50). When the two countries experienced democracy, there was improvement in media communication. Democracy brought with it freedom of expression and freedom of media. The present study examines use of words in media. It particularly focuses on the use of exocentric compound words because, in media, people try to outdo each other with more and better words to sell their products and these words become absorbed in their everyday use of language (Yule, 2006: 53).

A perusal of literature on the topic of exocentricity and media indicates that very little has been done so far. However, this does not underestimate the need to investigate language use in media in order to improve creativity of words to meet the demand of media communication. Reah (1998:50) affirms the importance of correct choice of words in media by stating that newspapers choose to use words that play a critical role in displaying the ideology of the newspaper. It is on this basis that undertaking of this study is necessary.

This chapter offers general orientation to the study. It provides background on compounding and exocentric compound words together with the general use of language in media. It investigates the problem on the build-up of exocentric compound words through asking research questions and stating research objectives and hypotheses. The chapter also presents the scope and the significance of the study.

#### 1.2. Background to the Study

This section provides background information building up on exocentric compound words. It introduces the traces of the phenomenon of exocentric compound words from the linguistic subfield of morphology up to the study of compounding as one of word-formation processes.

#### 1.2.1. Morphology in Lexicon Expansion

One interesting characteristic of language is the ability to grow. Samova and Porter (2001: 139) demonstrate that it is important to study language because it is the "key to the heart of a culture". This general observation tasks linguists to trace and establish patterns on the development of the languages of the world. One of the linguistics sub-fields that encompass formation of words attributive to development of languages is morphology. The term "morphology" is a Greek word made up of *morph* which means "shape" or "form" and – "the something". ology which means study of [https://sites.google.com/a/Sheffield.ac.uk/all.about-linguistics/branches/morphology/what is-morphology/IMG\_4778-001.JPG?attredirects=0]. Anderson (2003),Aronoff Fudeman (2005) and Salmon (2000) explain that morphology originates from biology where it constitutes study of the forms of plants and animals. It became absorbed in linguistics in 1859 by the German linguist August Schleicher who first used it to refer to the study of the

form of words. In present-day linguistics, "morphology" is specifically referred to as the study of the internal structure of words and of the systematic form-meaning correspondences between them (Anderson, 1982:598). In the same vein, Booij (2007:13) clarifies that

Morphology deals with both the form and the meaning of linguistic expressions. Hence, one might qualify morphology as word grammar, that part of the grammar that accounts for the systematic form-meaning relations between words; it is a set of correspondence rules between forms and meanings of words.

The author further affirms that morphology fulfils two basic roles in linguistics. First, morphological operations yield new lexemes; second, morphology determines the appropriate form of a lexeme in a given context. He indicates that with morphology, linguists understand the chemistry of human language better and so can analyze it. It is through morphology that language users know how linguistic rules operate in the perception and production of language, and again how that knowledge is represented in the mind. Booij (op.cit.) is supported by Bubenik (1999:23) who presents the role of linguists as "to describe and analyze the languages of the world as accurately and as insightfully as possible". Since they have to deal with morphological phenomenon of a language, linguists need a set of tools to describe this phenomenon, and these tools are found in morphology. With these morphological tools, linguists are able to explain language complexities of the human language faculty and the rule-governed creativity in the domain of language and end up developing a typology of languages and showing how they differ or relate and to what extent as observed by Booij (op.cit.:74).

Following Salmon (2000) elaboration of the aims of morphology, the study summarizes the importance of morphology as a linguistic sub-field in that, morphology:

• Describes the structures of words and patterns of word formation in a language;

- Pins down the principles for relating the form and meaning of morphological expressions;
- Explains how the morphological units are integrated and the resulting formations interpreted;
- Uncovers the lexical resources of language and helps speakers to acquire the skills of using them creatively.

On account that morphology is the study of the internal structure of words, it is significant to define the word, *word*. Anderson (1990, 1992) defines 'word' as the smallest independent unit of language. It is said to be independent in that it can be separated from other words and move around in sentences.

Morphology has two main branches, inflectional and lexical morphology as explained by Fasold and Connor-Linton (2006). Inflectional morphology, on one hand, deals with processes of inflectional forms and it interacts with syntax. It adheres to syntactic rules as to whether a lexeme should carry an inflectional property. Lexical morphology, on the other hand, deals with the lexicon outside the context of grammar (Collins and Hollo, 2000:8). It studies processes in which basic units of vocabulary are derived.

The processes involved in lexical morphology are affixation; where a prefix or suffix is attached to a basic unit of a vocabulary, for example, *disapprove*. There is also conversion, where a basic unit changes from one word class to another, for example, *lecture*, as a verb changes to a noun *lecture*. Clipping, blends and acronyms as other word-formation processes are explained in detail in an unpublished doctoral thesis by Fandrych (2004). The other process of word formation is compounding, which is the centre of this study.

#### 1.2.2. Synopsis on the Study of Word-formation

Word-formation process is the creation of new words. It is defined by Plag (2005) and Nordquist (2013) that it incorporates ways in which new words are made on the basis of other words or morphemes. Coulson (2000) explains that it is sometimes contrasted with semantic change because it results in a change of a word meaning. The process is coupled with the study of language in general. Bauer (1978: 69) states that word-formation study has been on a limelight since the time of Panini (500 BC), a researcher who provided a detailed description of Sanskrit word-formation. The topic was further researched by other scholars including Lees (1960), Adams (1973), Aronoff (1993), Santana (2000), Pearl (2004), Rua (2005), Wisniewski (2007), Yousefi (2009) and Kemmer (2011).

Existing literature on word-formation process demonstrates that word-formation was approached from different views. Bauer (1978) shows that in 1937, Koziol approached it from totally diachronic point of view while Bloomfield (1933) approached it from totally synchronic point of view. Later on, Jespersen (1922) and Marchand (1969) merged the synchronic and the diachronic approaches in studying word-formation process. In 1957, Chomsky changed the focus and studied syntax but Zimmer (1964) continued with word-formation process whereby he examined problems specific to word-formation. In 1970, Chomsky reversed his attention to word-formation and inspired other researchers such as Lees (1960), Geer et al. (1970), Lakoff (1970a) and Newmeyer (1970).

Beyond the years 1972, Bauer (op.cit: 102) demonstrates that word-formation was considered from different points of view. She states that Halle (1973) and Lighter (1975) approached it from a phonological point of view while Leech (1974) and Jackendoff (1990, 2009), and Hurrford (2004) approached it from a semantic point of view. Roeper and Siegel (1978) and Roeper (2005) approached it from a syntactic point of view. Due to this wide spectrum, it has

not been easy to create a sufficient theory that will explain all the unfolding dimensions involved. Researchers largely have to make up their own theories and procedures as they go along. A general conclusion here is that the study of word-formation interrelates with the study of language in general and since language is dynamic, further study of word-formation is necessary to examine new trends of forming words.

#### 1.2.3. Defining the Term Compounding

Compounding is roughly defined as the process of putting two words together to form a third one that will be steadily independent of a particular word-class (Collins and Hollo, 2000:9). Therefore, a compound word in linguistics refers to a lexeme (word) that consists of more than one basic unit of vocabulary. Compound words are often formed from two already existing words. However, there is a possibility of having extended families of compound words (Anderson, 1988 and Scalise, 1992). Thus, compound words can form other compound words. Due to this feature, they may be further defined as sequences of lexemes where any sequence of constituents result into something different. Dressler (2006:32) provides the following example to illustrate this point. The compound word sailboat may be extended to sailboat rigging, sailboat rigging design, sailboat rigging design training, sailboat rigging design training institute. These compound words function as single words in sentences despite their indefinite make-up words. For the purpose of consistency in this paper, words that make up a compound word are referred to as constituents. Compound words provide names of entities, properties or actions (Bauer, 2003:100-102). The meaning of constituents in a compound word interrelates in such a way that a new meaning, now of a compound word, comes out very different from the meanings of the words in isolation. Research in compounding reflects that the elements combined in a compound word happen to enjoy independent status. Anderson (1992:294) adds that a newly formed compound word occupies a new lexical category which may be different from that of its constituents when separated. They may be nouns, verbs, adjectives and/or adverbs. Furthermore, compound words are accepted in the lexicon and learnt as wholes. They are used in the same way as any simple lexeme. It is further explained that language users do not use these new lexemes as having analysable elements. That is, they do not usually need to consider internal structure of the new lexemes in order to understand what they mean; rather they interpret them as complete structures.

Compounding may also be referred to as composition, hence compound words are sometimes called composites (Finegan, 2007 and Falik, 1978). In many languages, compounding is the most frequently used means of building lexicon. Booij (2007:74) mentions that the most pronounced property of compounding is that it consists of combining different lexemes to form larger words. This property makes compounding productive. Moreover, their productivity is a result of their semantically translucent and flexible nature as stated by Jindal (2007:89). That is, a compound word is formed from words whose meanings are already known since such words would have been in the language before. What is left for linguists is to find out the semantic relations between the two or more constituents that make up the compound word. According to Booij (op.cit: 75), semantic pattern of a compound word that is generally observed is that in the form XY equals Z, X has something to do with Z or Y with Z. He shows that the exact nature of the semantic relation has no formal expression since it is the matter of the language user, "As language users, we have to interpret the relationship on the basis of the meanings of the compound constituents, our knowledge of the world, and, sometimes the context in which the compound is used" (Booij, op.cit: 80).

As composed by Bauer (1994:1530), compound words are classified according to the role they play in a sentence. Following Bauer's declaration, Matthews (1991:148) proposes the following lexical category combinations of compound words:

Adjective + Noun

Noun + Noun

*Adjective* + *Adjective* 

*Noun* + *Adjective* 

Verb + Noun

Noun + Verb

There are observed relations in the formation of compound words. Bauer (2003:18) proposes different relations that are illustrative of how compound words may be understood. For illustration purposes, AB are considered two constituents of a compound word. According to Bauer, their relationship may be that:

A causes B

A is caused by B

A is prevented by B

B resembles A

A is at place B

B is at time A

B is made of A

B is made with A

B is part of A

As much as the illustration presents different relations that hold between constituents of a compound word, it will be difficult to apply these criteria generally in the different types of compound words as shall be seen in this study. Bauer (2003:20) admits that there have been

over a hundred attempts to provide a list of possible meaning relationships in compound words but all these attempts are far from exhaustive. She states that these suggested meaning relationships fail because it is extremely difficult to explain the meaning relationships between two elements of a compound word. The author further specifies that since there is no limit to the meaning relationships that hold between the two constituents of a compound word, and since there is no limit to the length of a compound word, there is nothing to prevent anybody from making up their own compound words. Therefore, Bauer (2003: 22) states that "compounds can be extended indefinitely". In the same vein, Radford (2009:148) add that there is no theoretical limit as to how long a compound word should be due to its recursive nature. Moreover, Bauer highlights that compound words may also be explained in relation to potential ambiguity, an aspect mostly seen in newspaper headlines where words are compromised because of limited space. That is, a lot of information can be packed in few words expressed in a form of a compound word.

#### 1.2.4. Functions of Compound Words

Compound words are classified according to their function in sentences. The following section shows different classes according to compound functions, though this list is far from being exhaustive.

#### **\*** Compound Nouns

These are compound words that function as nouns in sentences. They are the largest and the most varied category (Carroll, 1994). Most compound nouns denote a subset of what is denoted by the second constituent. But other compound nouns do not have this interpretation. For instance, *loudmouth* is not the type of a *mouth* but *a person who talks a lot in an offensive* 

*manner*. In the combination, usually the second base is a noun while the first can belong to a range of categories, a noun, an adjective, a verb or a preposition. Examples are,

Birdcage (bird is a noun)

Gentleman (gentle is an adjective)

Hangman (hang is a verb)

Outpatient (out is a preposition)

#### **\*** Compound Adjectives

Compound adjectives behave as adjectives do in sentences as exemplified in McGregor (2009). These also have denotation mirrored in the second constituent. Thus, if an object is said to be *dirt-cheap*, or *snow-white*, then it must be *cheap* or *white* respectively. However, other compound adjectives do not share similar interpretation. For example, *stress-free* job is not *a free job* or *skin-deep* is not *deep*. With compound adjectives, the first base may be a noun while the second base may be a gerund-participle (*heart breaking*) or past participle of a verb (*heart-broken*).

#### **\*** Compound Verbs

These compound words function as verbs in sentences. They are made up of a preposition and a verb. Thus, a verb could be attached to a preposition to form a compound word. Pinker (1999: 79) provides examples such as *over-excite*, *under-cover*, *out-do*.

#### 1.2.5. Representation of Compound Words

Compound words may be represented in three ways (<a href="www.getitwriteonline.com/archive/042703CompWdsHyh.htm">www.getitwriteonline.com/archive/042703CompWdsHyh.htm</a>): There are compound words that are called closed compound words and they are represented as single words as in *flowerpot*; some are hyphenated as in *merry-go-round*, *well-being*; while others are called

open compound words and are represented as separated words as in *school bus, decision making*. The representation may also affect the class category of a compound word. For example, *carryover* is an adjective while *carry over* is a verb. It is in such cases where category and meaning of a compound word may be deduced contextually (Servaes, 1999). The present study will follow these three representations to classify the exocentric compound words into their various categories.

#### 1.2.6. Classification of Compound Words

Recent works done on the classification of compound words in Spencer (1991), Bauer (2001, 2004, 2008a), Allen (1986), Beard (1995), Kerstens (1996), Haspelmath (2002), Booij (2007) and Mukai (date unknown) were defined on the basis of diverse criteria. These include classes of compound words that hold either grammatical relation between the constituents, or those that relate on the basis of absence of a lexical head, or those that have associated compounding and affixation. The most favoured classification of compound words is that done by Bisetto and Scalise (2005) and it is favoured for two reasons. Firstly, it focuses on the relation that holds between compound constituents, which is grammatical relation. Secondly, it aligns with older but more profound classifications of Bloomfield (1933), Marchand (1969). Adopting Bisetto and Scalise's (2005) classification, however, the present study concentrates on the relations between compound constituents themselves and entities given to compound words formed from such constituents.

Bisetto and Scalise (op.cit.) propose three classes of compound words namely subordinate, attributive and coordinate compound words. Each macro-type is characterized by a different grammatical relation between the constituents of the compound word. Moreover, each macro-type is further sub-divided on the basis of absence or presence of a lexical head. This

presumes that there are both endocentric and exocentric compound words under each macrotype.

Subordinate compounds are compound words that have a complementation relation between the constituent which is considered to be the head and the one that is non-head. This kind of relation as shown by these researchers is apparent in compound words whose heads are formed from verbs as in a compound word such as *taxi-driver*. A similar situation is observed in compound words with no de-verbal heads where the constituents are linked by an *of-relation* as in Noun + Noun compound, *doorknob* (knob of a door) or where constituents are linked by subordinating relation as in *cat food* (food for cats).

Attributive compounds are compound words whose category is made up of constituents that have an attribution or modification relation. In their case, one of the constituents is an attribute in relation to the other constituent. Looking at a compound *swordfish*, the constituent which is non-head is used as a metaphoric attribute of the head, hence why the compound refers to 'fish with a sword-like snout'. This compound word may not be described in terms of complementation relation as 'fish of a sword' or 'fish for a sword'.

Coordinate compounds are compound words whose constituents are linked by a coordinating relation. The compound words in this category have equal semantic status. In the examples *prince-bishop, blue-green, bittersweet*, the person is both a prince and a bishop simultaneously, the object has both colours blue and green, and the taste is both bitter and sweet. Although these macro-types have both endocentric and exocentric compound words, most compound words are endocentric.

#### 1.2.7. The Concept of Exocentricity

It usually appears insufficient to discuss exocentricity without endocentricity. Therefore, the study will start by giving a brief discussion on endocentric compound words.

#### 1.2.7.1. Endocentric Compound Words

The compound words under this class are defined as compound words whose first element is a modifier of the second one, which denotes a grammatical head. For instance, *beehive* is a kind of hive as much as *armchair* is a kind of chair. Answers.com defines endocentric compound word as construction that has an obligatory head and one or more dependents. The function of the dependents is to narrow the meaning of the head. Such constructions are considered endocentric because there is one word among them, which controls the semantics and the grammatical category of the whole compound word. That is, the meaning of the constituent will be equivalent to that of the one word and will belong to the same category. According to Scalise (1984:79), the word endocentric refers to that word whose syntactic or morphological category is similar to that of one of its constituents. This one word becomes the centre of the head of the whole construction, hence why endocentric compound words are called headed constructions because the head is contained inside the construction.

The following exemplify what is meant by head. In the compound words *blackbird*, *windmill* and *coffee table*, it is said that *bird*, *mill* and *table* are heads. They control interpretation and understanding of those compound words. Katamba (1993:302) shows that for these endocentric compound words, their entities are embedded with features identical of the constituents that make up the compound word. The other part of the compound word limits the entity to which the compound word refers to, therefore it is called "a modifier" (Radford, 2009:148).

#### 1.2.7.2. Exocentric Compound Words

Exocentric is an adjective defined by American Heritage Dictionary as

Of or relating to a group of syntactically related words, none of which is functionally equivalent to the function of the whole group. For example, none of the words in the phrase 'on the table' is an adverb, yet they combine to form a phrase having adverbial function, [and] Of or relating to a compound word whose referent is not the same as the referent of any of its constituents. For example, the noun 'razorback' does not refer to a type of back, but to a type of hog (one having a sharply ridged back, [exocentric: Definition from Answers.com].

Exocentric construction does have two or more parts which none provides the semantics of the compound word as a whole. An extreme generalization on exocentric construction is that all sentences are exocentric because the meaning of the whole sentence is never any of the constituents that make up that sentence. However, the generalisation was reputed in Transformational grammar after X-bar theory was adverted. Botha (1968) explains that the theory advocates for headedness that as sentences have heads, words also do.

The present study examines exocentric compound words which require different strategies of interpretation from their sister type endocentric compound words. It is due to the very uniqueness of exocentric compound words that attempts of research have been made on them. The studies, however, always left unanswered questions on formation and interpretation of exocentric compound words. Scalise and Guevara (2006:194) clearly state in their study that they have failed to account for the nature of exocentric compound words because exocentricity is an even more complex phenomenon than they imagined initially. They state the following "Not even our proposed definition ... suffices to explain the vast variety of

structures and types that are attested in our database while such have been easy to account for when it comes to endocentric type".

Exocentric compound word is not a hyponym of the grammatical head; instead, it is a hyponym of some unexpressed semantic head. Since the semantic head is unexpressed, the compound word is frequently seen as metaphorical or synecdoche. Exocentric compound words can be accounted for in relation to figurative reading (Bauer 2009: 352). A general observation of the present study is that literature that is available has generated more confusion on what should be considered endocentric or exocentric structure.

Generally speaking, exocentric compound words are compound words that do not refer to the entity mentioned by the head of the compound word, that is to say, *baldhead* is not a type of head, and instead the compound word denotes the person who is in possession of the entity mentioned by the compound word. Again, in an example *egg-head*, none of the constituents directly leads to the referent of the compound word as a whole, which is intellectual. This means that the compound word requires a "special" semantic interpretation that is different from that used for compound words with "heads".

It is worthy-noting that in theoretical linguistics, under phrase structure grammars (constituency grammars), for a compound word to be considered endocentric, it needs to fulfil the same linguistic function as one of its parts while the exocentric compound word does not. Bloomfield's work (1933) provides a detailed distinction between the two grammars of dependency versus constituency in relation to endocentric and exocentric compound words. This study hopes to establish patterns that may aid analysis of these compound words by approaching them from constituency approach.

Marchand (1969) in Bauer (2008a) identify different classes of exocentric compound words.

Firstly, there is the romance type. This type consists of compound words that are made up of

a verb and a noun. The noun functions as a direct object of that verb. What makes this type

exocentric according to Marchand, is the fact that the compound word is not a hyponym of

the final noun as reflected in the examples below. Compound words identified in this

category may refer both to people and objects.

*Pickpocket* – a person who steals

Cutthroat- murderer

Spoilsport- a person who does things interfering with enjoyment of others

Scarecrow- something frightening but not dangerous

*Breakwater*- structure that is build to break the force of waves

Breakfast- first day's meal

There is no notion of hyponymy in these compound words, which is a case that brings up an

inquiry on their relationship to their referents. Nothing on the surface relates cut + throat to

mean murderer or break + fast to mean first day's meal. There is a need for a special

semantic interpretation in order to understand this kind of compound words.

The second type is referred to as the phrasal-verb type. Under this type, exocentric compound

words are made up of a verb or either a preposition, an adverb or a particle. Showoff is one

such compound word. There is clearly no noun in the compound word and yet the

construction as a whole is a noun. The exocentricity of this type lies in the lexical category

assigned to the whole compound word which is parallel to any of the constituents.

31

Thirdly, there is the possessive type. Compound words under this type are believed to possess

characteristics of their referents; however, "the relationship between the unexpressed

possessor or thing characterised and the expressed characteristic in the construction is rather

vague" (Bauer 2008a). When one relates the constituents that make up a compound word to

what they refer to as a compound word, it cannot be explained directly what brings the first

constituent and the second constituent together to assign their whole a particular referent.

This is an area in exocentricity that challenged the undertaking of the present study.

Examples are paperback, scatterbrain "a book that has a thin flexible cover instead of a hard

cover, and somebody incapable of organized thought" respectively.

The fourth category is called appositional compounds. Spencer (2003:1264) argues that these

compound words are also exocentric because they pose a problem when it comes to

headedness since they are double-headed. Actor-manager "somebody who is both an actor

and a manager" is one such type.

Another type comprises compound words referred to as complex pre-modifiers. Words that

are classified under this category are treated as compound words because they are made up of

two independent lexemes. One question regarding this type is whether they should be

analyzed as compound adjectives as indicated by Aronoff (2009) or whether there is a

possibility of other analysis. It is important to notice the absence of adjectival head in these

compound words, a point that denotes exocentricity.

Examples: *before-tax* (profits)

pass-fail

(test)

roll-neck

(sweater)

32

Finally, there are compound words generally known as out-compounding compounds.

Compound words under this class are prefixed with out-. According to Bauer and Renouf

(2001), this type of compounding dates back to Shakespeare time. It is noted to be a

productive pattern especially in journalistic prose. The prefix out- is treated in the way prefix

un- is in a word such as unhorse which denotes negative of characteristics of a horse.

Examples: *out-soaped* 

Out-Herod

The connotation of the two words would be understood to mean soaps and Herod with no

characteristics befitting soaps and Herod.

1.2.8. Theoretical Premises Used in Compounding

A brief overview of existing models used in compounding studies is outlined in the next

sections of the study. Compounding theories have come in different models. Those discussed

here feature in simple compositional accounts of compounding, where the meaning is easily

interpreted from the constituents.

William (1981) and Selkirk (1982) propose right-hand rule, which states that majority of

English compound words is syntactically and semantically right-headed, especially

endocentric compound words. According to this rule, the right hand element in a compound

word determines meaning and category of the whole compound; it provides semantic

information and the word class. Compound words, like other words, belong to a particular

syntactic category. It is difficult though, to say the same thing about exocentric compound

words because they are believed to be headless. Even though this study considers pragmatic

theory (to be discussed later in this section) in the analysis of exocentric compound words, it

33

acknowledges existence of other theories including reductionist theories, transformational theories and slot-filler theories. The sections below provide brief explanation of these theories and why they are not useful for the present study.

#### 1.2.8.1. Reductionists Theories

Reductionists theories propose that relationships between constituents are such that A is in B, B is in A, A is the goal of B; A is the source of B, etc. However, other theorists such as Bauer (2010) criticize these theories that they are not complete. To illustrate this point, Bauer (2008a: 45) uses a compound word *car thief*. It is doubtful to define this compound word following the four-way approach as "car in a thief", "thief in a car", "thief as the goal of car" or "thief as the source of a car". This theory is therefore not useful in this study as it does not accommodate the infinite set of compounding relationships.

#### 1.2.8.2. Transformational Theories

Transformational theories claim that compound words are formed from relative clauses. For example, *ignition key* may be defined as a result of "a key which causes ignition". These theories are also falsified by L1 acquisition studies that demonstrate that compound words are acquired earlier than relative clauses (Anderson, 1992). It is therefore not useful to the present study as compound words may not derive from relative clauses.

#### 1.2.8.3. Slot-filler Theories

The third group of theories is composed of slot-filler theories. These are theories that conceptualize constituents as "bundles of features". What happens here is that the modifying constituent adds a feature to the other constituents. These theories, however, seem insufficient for exocentric compounding because it is still a challenge in exocentricity as to

which constituent of the two or more constituents is a modifying constituent, if the modifier is there at all. In a case of its existence, modifying constituents very often add more than one feature, at least which has been proven with endocentric compound words (Lieber, 2004: 320). The theory relies heavily on a strong version of the head-modifier asymmetry. The challenge goes further that some languages exhibit 'less conservative conceptual type distribution than these theories account for" (Lieber op.cit.) hence it is not useful to this study.

#### 1.2.8.4. Pragmatic Theory

This theory claims that the relationship that holds between constituents of a compound word is understood through the meaning of a compound word, which would have been understood from pragmatic knowledge about the world. Bauer (1978) and Adams (1973) extrapolate that words are used primarily for communication purposes. They show that the knowledge of the world is essential to reach a correct interpretation of a compound expression. Generally, the theory emphasizes contextual importance for understanding compound words and accommodates the fact that there should not necessarily be direct relationship between the constituents. The theory further advocates that compound words condense a lot of information in the least (minimal) linguistic structure. The present study will follow the pragmatic theory because the problem under discussion is investigated in its contextual setting.

The theory also extends to concept of probability attribute cited in Adams (1973), which assigns a weight to every lexical item. Probability is relevant in this study because the study hypothesizes that every feature in a constituent be assigned weight in order to project its relationship to fellow constituents in the compound word as a whole.

To enhance analysis of the data collected, the present study also considers constituency grammars by Bloomfield (1933). The model has been used to analyse exocentric compound words. It advocates that in order to interpret exocentric compound words, there is a need to scrutinize the constituents that make up the compound word. The study has found it insufficient to adopt only one model for this study because of its complex nature; therefore, it proposes a complex model for exocentric compound words, which will be a concordance of pragmatic and constituency approach. A combination of theories is not a new thing in research (see Benczes 2004).

#### 1.2.9. Background of Media in Lesotho

Matjama (2007) states that prior to 1993, that is, during apartheid, media was characterized by dominance of the state print and that environment stagnated growth of an independent media. It made it impossible for issues of speech freedom to feature on the government's agenda. There has been obvious growth in media since 1998 when the government of Lesotho opened up the sector to independent media houses. Before then, the government controlled content of broadcasts to ensure news coverage that does not implicate the government (Musanhu, 2009). This improvement was made possible by Media Institute of Southern Africa (MISA) that was established to promote freedom of expression, media freedom, media diversity, independence and pluralism in Lesotho, [www.misa.org/misa-chapters/lesotho]. In line with MISA, Matjama adds that the media policy ensures that "the principles of freedom to access and impart information and ideas and freedom of thought and expression are respected as important rights".

Matjama (2007) states that the first independent English language newspaper (*The Mirror*) started in 1986. In 1993, *The Mirror* was joined by eight other newspapers during the 1993

election campaign. As of now, Lesotho has 18 newspapers, in both Sesotho and English, spread across private independent media such as churches, political parties and the government.

## 1.2.10. Language and the Media

Defined by Jandt (2004:147), language means a set of symbols shared by a community. When used in media, Hanusch (2008:52) posits that it is crucial to consider language when revising messages received from news media and to decode them accordingly. This reflects that people need to know and understand language used in media.

Language is a social phenomenon, and as such it mirrors the society which uses it, at the same time, it affects the minds of the members of the society in which it is used. Language users may think that it happens automatically to apply language anywhere because people learn it and know it by heart. Akmajian et al. (1997) affirms that applying language within its cultural surrounding is not that simple. He states that even with literal definitions provided by dictionaries, it is not simple to know what those words mean in their cultural surroundings. In line with Akmajian et al., Swiss linguist (Ferdinand de Saussure, 1983) proposes sign model. According to the model, language operates through signs. In order to give an object, meaning/name, signifier (the physical form) and signified (the concept evoked by the signifier) need to be considered. Fisk (1990) argues that the model sign is however influenced by one's cultural surroundings. This means that it is important to study language crossculturally.

Research of language in media cannot be overlooked. Bell (1991, 1995) mentions several reasons why language use in media is of interest in the field of research. She shows that media language is easier to collect than conversation because it is there in large quantities.

People access media as a source of data for language features they want to study for the reason that they are interested in how media use such language features. It is also of interest to find out how media affect and mirror language in a wider society and culture. People are interested again because they want to find out how media affects attitudes and opinions in society through the way it presents people and issues. Media is regarded a power resource. It can influence, control and stimulate progress and change in the society. It has potential to place matters at the centre of debate. Media provides platform for national and international issues. It is again a place where changing cultures and values of society are communicated, displayed and constructed. It provides leisure-time activity and means of entertainment hence why people should know and understand the language used. In addition, people spend most of their time reading or watching television (Bell, 1991: 4). People learn about strategies and skills they can apply to better their lives through listening to media. It can encourage individual change and mobility. This means that the role of media is to contribute to social development. All this is accessed through language as an instrument.

Moreover, language of the media can tell us things both about media and about language. Newspapers are used as channels to pass this information. Reah (1998:50) states that they provide the reader with the news, and present it often in a way that guides "the ideological stance of the reader". What this means is that newspapers choose, over many other possible choices of words, words that play fundamental role in displaying the ideology of that paper.

The present study investigates exocentric compound words in language use, in Southern African newspapers. It looks particularly at the two countries of Lesotho and South Africa. Lesotho is landlocked and completely surrounded by South Africa. Both countries use English as the business language [www.pressreference.com/ky-Ma/Lesotho.html]. Foko (2000) states that

[t]he economy of Lesotho is closely tied to that of South Africa for trade, finance, employment and access to the outside world. While South Africa has, for a long time, depended on the migratory labour arrangements whereby Lesotho provided manpower for the mining industry.

On the basis of this situation, it seems inevitable to consider the two countries for this study. Foko (2000) supports the incorporation of the two countries by providing the advantage it brought in media. She states that "there is a level of media diversity in both broad casting and print media and the people of Lesotho do have access to a wider range of news and information and generally view points than previously the case," was [www.kas.de/wf/doc/4215-1442-2-30.pdf] . Besides that, South African's newspapers circulate freely in Lesotho. It is also noted that Lesotho does not have daily newspapers but only weeklies and fortnightly newspapers. All the dailies read in Lesotho are owned by South African media companies (Foko, 2000). Generally speaking, the study covers South Africa because as stated by Masanhu (2009: 23) "...by virtue of being geographically surrounded by South Africa, citizen [of Lesotho] also enjoy wider media access. South Africa's daily newspapers and radio and television channels are freely available in Lesotho".

A survey done by South African Audience Research Foundation shows that about 50% of the adult population in South Africa is newspaper readers. Below is a list of newspapers circulated in South Africa. Most of them are published in English. This list is adapted from [Wikipedia.org/wiki/List\_of\_newspapers\_in\_South\_Africa]:

Newspaper	Language
Sunday Times	English
Daily Sun	English
Rapport	Afrikaans
Sunday Sun	English
Sunday World	English
City Press	English

Newspaper	Language
Isolezwe	Zulu
Ilanga	Zulu
The Sowetan	English
Die Son (Daily)	Afrikaans
Isolezwe ngeSonto	Zulu
The Star	English
Isolezwe ngoMgqibelo	Zulu
Die Burger Saturday	Afrikaans
Sunday Tribune	English
The Saturday Star	English
Beeld Daily	Afrikaans
Beeld Saturday	Afrikaans
Ilanga Langesonto	Zulu
Die Burger Daily	Afrikaans
Weekend Argus	English
Son op Sondag	Afrikaans
The Times	English
The Citizen (Daily)	English
Independent on Saturday	English
Mail & Guardian	English
Sondag	Afrikaans
Cape Times	English
Sunday Independent	English
Cape Argus	English
Daily News	English
The Mercury	English
The Citizen (Saturday)	English
Business Day	English
Daily Dispatch	English
The Herald	English
Weekend Post	English
Saturday Dispatch	English
Volksblad - Daily	Afrikaans
Weekend Witness	English
Volksblad - Saturday	Afrikaans
The Witness	English
Pretoria News	English
Pretoria News Saturday	English
Diamond Fields Advertiser	_

In Lesotho, newspaper readership is also popular. The section below shows a list of newspapers that are circulated in Lesotho.

# Newspaper Language

Friday Flyer

Informative	English
Public Eye	English
Lesotho Times	English
Makatolle	Sesotho
MoAfrica	Sesotho
Mohlanka	Sesotho
Mopheme-The Survivor	Sesotho and English
The Mirror	English
Sunday Express	English
Weekender	English

**English** 

Newspaper language is recognized as a particular variety of style which has its own system of language means. Some newspapers cover a diversity of purposes; they contain informational and evaluative material, comments and views of the writers. When reporting for newspaper, for instance, journalists become economical with words because of limited space of the newspaper. At the same time they try to attract and maintain the reader's attention. In trying to provide enough details on their reporting, they leave out word classes such as determiners and auxiliary verbs. They usually form word phrases instead of longer clauses. For example, instead of "The Strategic Plan of a University", they will write, "University Strategic plan". Due to this space constraint, word classes of adjectives and nouns are strung together so that a sentence is made as short as possible. In [Eng.1september.ru/2002/08/4.htm], it is shown that since the ultimate objective of newspapers is to sell and maximize profits, there is much use of emotive language in order to appeal to the human psyche.

Of many columns found in newspapers, there are feature stories. Feature stories attract wide readership than other news types which make up a newspaper because they (feature stories) are regarded as soft news. Journalists are allowed more freedom of style when reporting feature stories. Galantomos et al. (2011:3) explain that 'Feature stories are a mixed type, in that they provide background and pick up a piece of information and develop it through comment, view and speculation'. They are longer than other articles in a newspaper. In feature stories, speaker design their talk for their hearers. The essence of style is that speakers are responding to their audience in the language that they produce. In line with Galantomos et al., Keeble (1994:244) defines feature stories as containing more "comment, analysis, colour, background and a greater diversity of sources..."

Feature stories address a range of topics including society, health, food, politics, entertainment, individual, environment, sport, economics and current issues. They offer background information about the subject. Information provided in feature stories is not time bound, it could be about events that took place in the past, present or are yet to take place. However, the information would be provided in detail and researched extensively [www.johnwatsonsite.com/MyClassNotes/Topics/FeatureArticle/herald feature article.htm]. The most favourable characteristic of feature stories, for the purpose of this study, is that feature stories provide the reader with the attitude of the writer in the feature story. This aspect of ownership of the story on the side of the writer reflects liberty with the choice of vocabulary the writer may decide to use.

There are observed characteristics of language use in feature stories. Information is presented in short paragraphs of one to four sentences. Direct quotations are indicated by use of inverted commas. Language registers include emotive language and creativity in the use of language. Sentence construction ranges from short to long sentences. Contracted form of

words is usually used [www.johnwatsonsite.com/MyClassNotes/Topics/FeatureArticle/herald feature article.htm].

#### 1.3. Statement of the Problem

One of the difficulties of the study of morphology is not only that morphology is correlated with semantic, orthographic and phonological factors, but also that words, whether inflected or derived exist as free word forms entertaining with each other different relations. Exocentric compound words do not contain an outstanding element that determines their interpretation, an element that is referred to as a 'head' in other types of compound words. They do not have the meaning of X is a kind of Y. Their structure makes the relationship not clear in the surface form of the two or more constituents that make up a compound word. The relationship is further difficult to detect in the surface form of the compound word as a whole and its referent. For instance, one wonders what it is about honeymoon that suggests relationship between honey and moon and its referent of a holiday taken by newly married couple. What is the contribution of the two constituents to the meaning of the compound word as a whole? Neither is the relationship clear between hot and dog in a compound word hotdog and its referent of sausage in bread roll. Is there something hot and doggish in the sausage or bread roll? The problem here is what brings the two constituents together to mean what they mean. The researcher agrees with Scalise and Guevara (2006:204), that exocentric compound words are one of anomalies (irregularities) in language since it is difficult to account for all the information conveyed by them. However, that should be taken as the more reason it is worth researching, to unfold all or some of these anomalies. Previous studies acknowledge an existing gap as to how to unfold compounding process of exocentric compound words. Asher and Simpson (1994: 402) states that every type of approach so far has failed to define a watertight system of rigorous rules to determine the hidden relation that hold between exocentric compound constituents, exocentric compound words and their referents. It is still not apparent on what grounds some of the various features of a constituent are regarded as relevant to the referent while others are not. In an attempt to explain this complexity, exocentric compound words are said to refer to an outside object. In order for them to be fully comprehensible, they need to be considered in relation to that object. This assumption is even more frustrating. When one considers the exocentric compound word heartburn with its referent of burning sensation in the lower part of the chest, caused by indigestion, which of the outside objects would be associated with the heartburn at the expense of which ones? One also wonders why the compound is made up of the word heart when the sensation does not take place at the heart but on the chest. If one attempts to replace heart with chest to form a compound word, the referent proves to vary. This shows that it is not enough to just explain the relation in terms of metonym as suggested by Bauer and Renouf (2001) and Benczes (2004). What remains a problem then, is, what brings heart and burn together in the compound heartburn to mean what it means? On the basis of this observation, exocentricity is still found to be an even more complex phenomenon than one can image since there has not yet been a study that explains all the peculiarities involved in the concept.

#### 1.4. Research Questions

The rubric question to the study is: what is the relationship between individual constituents of an exocentric compound word, the compound word itself and the entity it is referred to as used in newspapers?

In order to explain the peculiarities involved in the concept of exocentricity, the following subsidiary questions will be asked:

- 1. Are exocentric compound words used in newspapers?
- 2. How does each constituent of an exocentric compound relate to the named entity?
- 3. Which and why are certain features of a named entity chosen for the formation of an exocentric compound?

#### 1.5. Aim and Objectives

The aim of the study is to explore the relationships between constituents of an exocentric compound word, the compound word itself and the entity that the compound word refers to. The stated aim leads to the formulation of objectives. The objectives are derived from the research questions of this study and are as follows: upon completion of this study, the researcher should be able to

- 1. Identify exocentric compound words found in newspapers
- 2. Establish relations between individual compound constituents and the compound words' entities
- 3. Establish which and why other features of the named entity are represented in the formation of an exocentric compound

#### 1.6. Hypotheses

This study is based on the following rubric hypothesis for this study is: The entity of an exocentric compound word relates directly to constituents that make up that compound word. The subsidiary hypotheses are:

1. Exocentric compound words are used in newspapers

2. Interpretation of exocentric compound words depend on the features of individual compound constituents

3. Entities assigned to exocentric compound words relate directly with individual constituents that make up an exocentric compound word

#### **1.7. Scope**

The study focuses on Southern African newspapers. It investigates use of exocentric compound words identified in English newspapers produced in both Lesotho and South Africa, and circulated in Lesotho. Since Lesotho is landlocked by South Africa, this study has considered both countries in order to ensure representative data. The study considers data after 1993, a year that marks change in media because of introduction of democratic government system. The new government system brought freedom of media, speech and information; hence independent newspapers increased in number and could easily be exchanged between the two countries of Lesotho and South Africa. The area of study in the newspapers is feature stories. The selection of feature story will depend on the availability of exocentric compound words as the subject matter of the study.

# 1.8. Significance of the Study

The study may:

- a) establish a systematic approach that explains analysis of exocentric compound words
- b) demonstrate direct relationship between exocentric compound constituents and their entities and so promote creativity of new words in the media discourse
- c) emphasize selective use of language to enhance effective communication

- d) contribute to media language that could be used in the future research to investigate exocentricity in specific discourses
- e) show case diverse patterns possible in the formation of exocentric compound words

#### 1.9. Organisation of the Study

The study is divided into five chapters. Chapter 1 provides an orientation of the study. It highlights the problem to be investigated in the study. It outlines the research questions, aim and objectives, hypotheses, scope and significance of the study. Chapter 2 focuses extensively on related literature on compounding, language and media. Methodologies employed to collect and analyse data for this study are presented in Chapter 3. Chapter 4 presents the analysis and discussion of findings. Conclusions and recommendations based on the findings are presented in Chapter 5.

#### 1.10. Summary of Chapter 1

Chapter 1 has provided an orientation of the study as well as the theoretical background. The chapter described the research problem investigated in the study. The research questions, the aim, the objectives and the hypotheses were briefly outlined. Then the importance of the study was highlighted. The section concluded with an outline on the organization of the study. The next section provides a detailed description of literature reviewed for this study.

#### **CHAPTER 2**

#### LITERATURE REVIEW

#### 2.1. Introduction

The current study endeavours to explore the use of exocentric compound words in Southern African newspapers written in English and circulated in Lesotho. Research on this type of compound words has been mostly on literary works and databases and has centred on classification, compositionality and interpretation of exocentric compound words. The purpose of this chapter is to summarise and critically evaluate literature relating to exocentric compound words. It does so by reviewing previous studies taken on compounding as a word formation process that yield exocentric compound words. It looks at different approaches used in understanding the phenomenon of compounding, analysis and interpretation of exocentric compound words. It further evaluates language use in media.

# 2.2. Understanding Compounding as a Phenomenon

This section establishes a common understanding of the phenomenon of compounding. Montermini (no date) studied the nature of compound words and the units that make up compound words. He inquires whether compound words are words in the sense that derivational words are and whether they are made up of other words. In order to address the question, he uses a word-based approach whereby words are strictly considered basic units of morphological and lexical organization.

Generally, he attempted to establish whether compound words and the constituents that make them up fit the description of what is considered 'word'. The problem Montermini (ibid.) addresses concerned definition of compounding. According to him, it is problematic to define the term compounding because, terms that are used to define it such as word, root and stem, do need precise definitions themselves. However, he admitted that all definitions have a common agreement that a compound is a word. Considering a common definition of a compound word being formed from two or more existing words, the author mentions that some definitions are too loose and could be confusing if applied across the board. He cites linguistic sequences that comprise more than two independent units and are not linked by any grammatical element. Such constructions are not considered compound words even though they are formed in the same way as other compound words. He gives examples of constructions such as Sister Mary and President Obama in the sentences 'This is my Sister Mary and this is President Obama. Based on this observation, he (Montermini) argues that compound word's definition needs to first formalize definition of units that make up a compound word. He indicated that a compound word may contain units that are either larger or smaller than a word. It may include elements such as roots or stems. Following previous attempts to define a compound word, Montermini (ibid.) comments on Scalise et al. (2009: 149) proposal that compound words are words formed from major lexical categories and that they should possess some grammatical or semantic relationship. In his study, he debates that maybe composition should not be made a compounding universal feature of all languages.

He presents several dimensions that contribute in perceiving 'word' as 'word'. He states that word definition relates to phonology. He explains that compound words exhibit some stress pattern that is different from that of its elements when treated individually. This means that it can be rightly argued that compound words are words.

A subsequent question in Montermini's (ibid.) study is whether compound words are made up of words. He adopted a Word-based approach to address this question. The approach advocates that all lexemes are structured and connected to lexeme's paradigm. Thus, each word is made up of morphosyntactic properties that correspond to one particular cell in the

paradigm. Montermini's (no date) study has established a common ground of understanding of compounding and the units that make up compound words. Based on his study, it would be appropriate to talk about compounding as a word formation process.

#### 2.3. Compounding as a Word-formation Process

The study of compound words has been on the lime light for quite some time, starting with Bloomfield (1933) to the recent attempt by Ningsih and Rosa (2013); however, there are uncertainties as regard to structure of compound words and their interpretation. Though the existing literature has provided insightful information on compounding as a word formation process, it only unfolds some of these uncertainties but leaves many questions still unanswered, hence it is still necessary to further research on compounding as a word formation process even now.

Bauer (2004) studied orthography of English compound words. She explained the difference between a phrase and a compound word. According to this author, the difference between a phrase and a compound word is measured by stress experienced on the words that make up a compound word. For a compound word, it is the left-hand element that carries stress while for a phrase; stress is on the right-hand element and this makes the left-hand element dependent on the right-hand one.

Bauer's (ibid.) study exemplified the words *black bird* and *blackbird*. Looking at *black bird*, there are two orthographic words *black* and *bird* and stress is on the second word. The two words are independent, thus each element is a separate lexical item and each can be inflected. The meaning of the whole construction can be predicted from the elements. In *blackbird*, there is only one orthographic word *blackbird*. This means that *blackbird* is treated as one

lexical item and the inflection belongs to the unit as a whole. In addition, the meaning of the whole unit is not entirely predictable from the elements.

Bauer (op.cit.) picked words similar to *blackbird* for further illustration. According to her, these words behave in the same manner as *blackbird*.

- Some colour adjectives: blue-ribbon, greenhouse, grey-flannel
- Grand in names of family relationships as in grandmother, grandchild
- Monosyllabic gradable adjectives: broad-, dry-, free-, sweet-, as in broadcloth, drycell, freepost
- Non-gradable monosyllabic adjectives: blind, dumb, first, quick as in blindside, dumb cluck, first-lady, quicksand, squaretail, whole stitch
- Disyllabic adjectives: bitter, narrow, silly as in bitter cress, narrow boat, silly-season.

#### 2.4. Classification of Compound Words

Bisetto and Scalise (2005) examined classes of compound words from a database of compound words in the Department of Foreign Languages in Bolonga. Their study include ten languages of English, Italian, Dutch, Spanish, Chinese, French, German, Bulgarian, Norwegian and Russian. In the introduction of their study, Bisetto and Scalise highlight problems in compound classifications. They mention that classifying compound words is problematic because the terminology given to proposed classes keep changing. For example, the term *bahuvrih*i was used to designate a possessive exocentric compound but it has now changed into a generic term "exocentric". To signify this change, Bauer (2001:700) argues that the term ended up being applied to any compound word which is not a hyponym of its own head element. Terms which have also changed and ended up confusing compound words

are "root compound" and "synthetic compound". Bisetto and Scalise (op.cit.) argue that these terms keep changing because they are language specific. That is, Romance languages, for instance, do not have compound words based on roots. Other problematic terms are "phrasal" and "neoclassical" terms. It may be argued that they keep changing because they refer to syntactic nature of the non-head, and this alone attracts different interpretations of a noun formed this way because language has different syntactic rules.

Bisetto and Scalise (ibid.) also identified the problem of neglected categories. The authors state that morphological research has favoured other compound structures over others. Outstandingly researched structures are compound nouns formed from two nouns or from adjective and noun. Lexical categories such as compound adjectives formed from adjective and adjective, adjective and noun, verb and adverb, noun and adverb are neglected. Neglected again are compound words containing adverbs, prepositions, particles and verbs. These authors argue that there are many compounding structures such as:

Verb + Verb = Verb

Adverb + Verb = Verb

Noun + Verb = Noun

Noun + Verb = Verb

Verb + Noun = Noun

Verb + Noun = Verb

Preposition + Noun = Noun

Preposition + Verb = Verb

Particle + Adverb = Adverb

Adverb + Verb = Verb

Research on compounding also reflects problems of classificatory criteria. Here, Bisetto and Scalise (2005) cite the notions of endocentricity /exocentricity and the notion of coordination. If endocentricity and exocentricity are defined on the basis of presence and absence of a head constituent, then, there is neither exocentricity nor endocentricity in coordinate compound words because such compound words relate grammatically and do not consider headedness. This problem of classification is observed from early works of compounding as shown in the table below. The table presents the year the study on compound classification was attempted and the theorist who proposed it. It also shows the classifications that were made.

Table 1: Classification of Compound Words by Year and Theorist

YEAR	THEORIST	CLASSIFICATION
1933	Bloomfield	Exocentric, endocentric
1950	Bally	De coordination, d'accord, de rection
1960	Marchand	Endocentric
1991	Spencer	Endocentric, exocentric, dvandva
1998	Fabb	Exocentric, endocentric, dvandva
2001	Olsen	Determinate, copulative, possessive
2001	Bauer	Endocentric, copulative, possessive, synthetic
2002	Haspelmath	Endocentric, exocentric, affix compound, coordinate, appositional
2007	Booij	Endocentric, exocentric, bahuvrihi, copulative

Even though some classifications seem to apply similar terminology, the distinctions made under each are the ones posing a problem. For instance, Bisetto and Scalise (op.cit.) indicate that endocentricity and exocentricity may be defined on the basis of the head as shown

earlier; while some theorists add other aspects of differences such as compound structure and constituents' relations.

Influenced by these challenges, Bisetto and Scalise (ibid.) propose a new classification of compound words. As they put it, their classification is based on a very simple assumption. Firstly, they propose that compound words be assumed as consisting two constituents linked by a grammatical relation which is not overtly expressed. Secondly, they suggest that grammatical relations holding between the two constituents of a compound word are the same relations that hold in syntactic constructions of subordination and coordination. It is on this observation that these authors proposed classification of compound words based on subordination, attribution and coordination. They further show that each class consists of endocentric and exocentric compound words. Bisetto and Scalise's (ibid.) study is marginalized because their classification has excluded compound words formed from more than two constituents.

According to these two authors, coordinate compound words are compound words that hold complement relation. For example, in the compound word taxi driver, taxi is the complement of driver, apron string where apron is a complement of string. They also provide a non-head compound word of cut throat but fail to explain the complement relation. They go further to explain attributive compounds. They define them as compound words formed from either noun plus adverb or from noun plus noun. In each case, one of the constituents expresses an attribute as in blue cheese and snail mail. Coordinate compound words are defined as compound words whose constituents are tied by an implicit conjunction and, as in poet painter, mother-child.

Even though Bisetto and Scalise (op.cit.) have condensed the classification of compound words into only three, and claim they are all subject to grammatical relations, they, on the contrary, pronounce that grammatical relations be considered 'first' and as a 'basic' step for classifying compound words. Undoubtedly, their statement leaves room for other possible relations to be considered for further classifications. In fact, they were aware of this overstatement on coordinate compound words as they suggest further semantic analysis of coordinate compound words. As an answer to this limitation, the present study considers semantic relations not only between the constituents of a compound word but also how each constituent relates to the referent of the compound word as a whole. The purpose of this two level analysis, it is believed, is to cater for more anomalies of compounding.

Arcodia et al. (no date) developed Bisetto and Scalise's (2005) study by examining noun plus noun compound words classes against Bisetto and Scalise's classification. While Bisetto and Scalise propose that compound words be classified as attributive, subordinate and coordinate, Arcodia et al. (date unknown) attach semantic and formal criteria to distinguish the classes of compound words. They argue that Bisetto and Scalise's classification should be viewed as a continuum scale and not a valid framework in which each compound word can be unambiguously placed.

They (Arcodia et al.) show that the distinction brought about by Bisetto and Scalise is more of pragmatics than of grammar as the authors claim. They cite the example of *ghost writer* as denoting a *writer* and a *ghost* at the same time, while it also denotes a *man sharing some* peculiar characteristics with a ghost.

Fabb (2007) is another scholar who studied compound words classes. He acknowledges the fact that compound words are interpreted from their constituents when used as isolated words. However, Fabb (ibid: 89) was aware of the restriction of such an approach as also

observed by Downing (1977: 49) that "not every man who takes out garbage is the garbage man". Fabb (op.cit.) approaches compounding in a similar manner as Gagne and Spalding (2006). Both studies show that it is easier to process the meaning of the compound word once the meaning of its constituents is known. This knowledge helps to identify how the constituents contribute to the meaning of the compound word as a whole. However, for novel compound words, this system fails hence the insufficiency of their studies. It is also important to remember that compound words may be interpreted metonymically (Benczes 2004). The present study hypothesizes that there are several relations between the constituents of a compound word.

Fabb's (op.cit.) study followed classification of compound words as proposed in the previous studies. It categorised endocentric compound words as having the notion of head as a determining factor of its meaning while exocentric compound words lack transparency between the constituents due to the absence of the head. His classification includes coordinate compound words as those compound words whose both constituents have the same status as in *student-prince* meaning *a person who is both a student and a prince*. The status of the two constituents of a coordinate compound word is equal in contributing to the meaning of the compound word as a whole.

Besides these major classes of compound words, Fabb (ibid.) provided subcategories of compound words as following:

## 1. Synthetic (verbal) compound words

These are those whose heads are derived words consisting of a verb plus an affix as in *expert-tested*, *checker playing*, *window cleaning*. Often these compound words are used as adjectives. This structure is already problematic in that it does not allow other affixes to be

used. For example, a compound word such as *shum-clearance* will be considered none existing. Roeper and Siegel (1978), Botha (1968), Selkirk (1982), Leiber (1983), Fabb (1988), and Spencer (1991) have also studied synthetic compound words.

#### 2. Incorporation compound words

Fabb's (2007) study further shows that some words may be incorporated to form compound words. However, Bybee (1985) restricts this type by showing that incorporated words may have phonological or morphological differences. It is observed that these incorporated words are formed from body parts that leave out other kinds of names such as personal names, kinship terms, and names of particular species of trees.

# 3. Repetition compound words

These are compound words that have whole-word reduplication. Sometimes there might be a slight modification on the second word. There are examples like *higgledy-piggledy*, *hotchpotch*.

Fabb (op.cit.) confirms that compound words are directional. Thus, the meanings of compound words are sensed from their "heads" and relations between the parts of the compound words.

In the same vein, McIntyre (2012) explores general application of compounding. His study first presents three types of compound words namely, endocentric, exocentric and copulative compound words. He identifies an endocentric compound as a compound word with the interpretation of AB is somehow associated to B. He mentions that the final element is the head while the other element provides additional information about the head. He identifies that the exocentric compound words have constructions whereby the compound words are neither of the constituents that make it though the referent would be somehow associated with

all the constituents. According to McIntyre (2012), exocentric compound words are literally interpreted as "out-centred", thus the head of an exocentric compound, which is the centre, is not in the compound itself. He warns that naming an exocentric compound word does not mean its meaning does not relate to those of its constituents because in actual fact, it does. His argument is that exocentric compound words have zero morpheme heads. For example, *redskin* means *a person whose skin is red*. That person is there in the compound formation but it is unpronounced. The present study finds McIntyre's distinction significant though insufficient because it does not elaborate on how the constituents relate to the meaning of the exocentric compound word. He further classified compound words into copulative type. Compound words under this type hold equal status, thus the entity is each of the constituents. These are explained as bearing the meaning of AB as A and B.

McIntyre (op.cit.) again shows functions of compound words. He lists that compound words can serve as compound nouns, compound verbs, compound adjectives and compound prepositions. When addressing interpretation of compound words, he uses noun compounds to illustrate this point. He admits that English does not specify the relationship between the two nouns in a compound except that constituent 1 has something to do with constituent 2. The author mentions that this general statement may be problematic when it comes to new compound words. He therefore proposes inclusion of contextual knowledge to determine the nature of the relationship between the nouns. In his study, he explains that it is significant to possess the knowledge of state of affairs surrounding the word because "compound words may name language-independent memorized concepts" (McIntyre, op.cit: 5). The author offers how compound words may be distinguished from other clusters of words. He mentions that compound words are stressed on the right-hand element while non-compound words are stressed on the left-hand element.

#### 2.5. Differentiating Endocentric from Exocentric Compound Words

Following an approach based on features and not constituents as in earlier studies, Scalise et al. (2009) studied identification of a compound word as either endocentric or exocentric. Their study explain that such identification depends on the notion of "head". They show that a head may be identified on semantic ground. They align themselves with Bloomfield (1933:235) that for a compound word to be considered endocentric; it should denote a hyponymy of its head as in the example *schoolbag*- is a kind of bag. They further propose that a head can be identified on categorical grounds. Scalise et al. (op.cit.) state that a head should be defined as a category determinant, in that it positions a compound word as a particular grammatical category. For instance, if in the compound word *schoolbag*, the head *bag* is a noun, the whole compound word becomes a noun. Besides, for these two observations of identifying head, they define a head in positional terms, that it must be the right most element of the compound word. Scalise et al.'s (op.cit.) study has considered endocentric compound words up to this point. To address exocentric compound words, they bring in the notions of dimensions, limits and types of exocentricity.

These authors propose that all languages exhibit some degree of exocentricity, though these degrees may vary. Some languages are reported having only exocentric compound words, while others have more endocentric compound words. From identification of compound word classes done by Bisetto and Scalise (2005), Scalise et al. show that the attributive and the coordinate compound word classes behave similarly when it comes to exocentric compound words, but the subordinate class shows a higher incidence of exocentric compound words.

In their study, Scalise et al. (ibid.) show that English has less exocentric compound words as opposed to other languages in their corpus. They declare that Chinese has outstanding range of exocentric compound words as indicated below:

#### **\*** Categorical combinations

Verb + Noun = Noun

Verb + Noun= Adjective

Adjective+ Noun= Noun

Verb + Verb = Noun

Noun + Noun = Noun

Adjective + Adjective = Noun

They further demonstrate that Chinese, Latin, Serbo-Croatian and Turkish and Italian have absolute categorical exocentricity (ACE), meaning that a referent comes out completely different from categories of constituents of the compound word, as in Verb + Verb = Noun,

Noun + Noun = Adjective, Verb + Verb = Adjective

Their study argue that there are compound words whose semantics of outputs differ from those of inputs as in *East west* – meaning "thing". With this example, one sees relationship (direction indicators) between the constituents themselves but not between the constituents and the referent. It was difficult for them to explain the semantic relationship of this compound, this implies that their approach though as multi facet as one would think, does not cover the wide spectrum of exocentric compound words. Another example that illustrates their point is *redskin*. The compound word could be understood to mean what it means if considered metonymically; however, Booij (2007) refutes such a proposal that *red skin* is not exocentric for the fact that its interpretation has justification of metonymy. Other compound words that have metonymic and antonymic relations are considered exocentric. A declaration

like this one as per Booij (ibid.) complicates understanding of exocentric compound words even more.

Scalise et al. (op.cit.) show that exocentric compound words can be categorical, semantic or morphological. They explain a categorically exocentric compound word as a compound word whose constituent in the head position does not impose its categorical features to the whole construction. The example of such a construction is Noun + Verb = Noun. A morphologically exocentric compound word is a compound word whose morphological features of the compound word are not the same as those of its constituents. The example is *clean boots*. While a compound word that is semantically exocentric does not denote a same class as classes of its constituents. For example, a compound word that denotes an action may be a formation of an agent class. Clearly stated, the semantic type of the compound word is not derived from the semantic type of any of its constituents.

The conclusion drawn from Scalise et al.'s (2009) study is that exocentric compound words can be understood better if treated at varying levels of categorical, semantic and morphological. They propose as well that morpho-syntactic properties of a language need to be considered because some languages have productive word formation rules that can allow exocentric result.

#### 2.6. Application of Compound Words

Scalise and Quevara (2006) deliberate exocentric compounding in typological framework. Their study aims to survey distribution of formal and semantic distribution of exocentric compounding in three languages of Chinese, Dutch and Italian. These languages were chosen on two grounds; firstly, they allow comparison of inflectional and isolating languages. Secondly, they reflect right-headed and left-headed languages. And lastly, the three languages

are rich in productive patterns of compounding. Their study recommended that there is no need to consider all the descriptive properties of compound in order to clarify its definition and description.

They collected 80000 compound words from Morbo/Comp database. The analysis considered the role of the notion of 'head' in compounding. It explored whether it was possible to determine the degree of exocentricity in a language. It identified different levels of regularity/irregularity in compounding, incorporating the observed similarities and differences between the sample languages. It also classified compound words according to grammatical relation between the constituents.

Scalise and Quevara (2006) adapted Bisetto and Scalise (2005) classificatory scheme in that unlike Bisetto and Scalise, they argue that the same compound word could fit in the three classes. For instance, the compound constituents of the compound word *dog bed* have possibility of complementation relation to make *bed of a dog*. These constituents may also have attribution relation where *bed* may be characteristic of a *dog*, *bed* with a dog-like shape. Coordination relation is also possible though not common in English (*dog and bed*). Though these researchers are satisfied with their classificatory scheme, the present study has reservations especially with exocentric compound words. The head, in the exocentric compound words, if at all there is one, is not as explicit as a head in the endocentric compound words. As a result it may not be so easily explained as implied in Scalise and Quevara's study.

In their analysis, Scalise and Quevara (op.cit.) examine whether it is always possible to select the complementation relation in exocentric compound words. They further explore lexical selection in compounding. They observe that with endocentric compound words, this is highly possible. In the example *trash removal*, the head element *removal* selected the non-

head *trash* to make up the interpretation *removal of trash*. However, this application is still restricted because it denies such compound words as *patience removal*. Even though the words are both existing words in the English lexicon, their combination to form one lexical unit is likely to be considered nonsensical. The same applies to *wine bottle* whereby, nonhead *wine* is selected by head *bottle* while *patience bottle* is denied. With this lexical selection provided by Scalise and Quevara (2006), there is a lot that needs to be explored in order to provide answers to why certain features and not others are selected when forming exocentric compound words. Further research is needed to unfold, systematically, relations that hold between the constituents of exocentric compound words.

Gast (2008) elaborates on a comparative analysis of verb-noun compound words and their distribution in English and German. His study shows that endocentric verb-noun compound words in English are also found in German. However, this is found not to be the case with exocentric compound words. Popular types that are found in English consist of Verb-ing + Noun compound words and synthetic compound words of the Noun-Verb-er for both languages. Differences that were found in the distribution are related to aspects of external language history such as language content and the role played by language internal factors such as disposition to allow conversion.

Gast' study shows that Verb-Noun compound words are not popular in English, which result in their restricted distribution, while in German; they are and are also productive. It is found that they allow various semantic patterns. The type that is found is invariably endocentric. There are highlights of exocentric compound words though their distribution is mostly profound in English not German.

His study also demonstrates that it is not easy to identify endocentric verb-noun compound words because sometimes the left-hand member could either be a noun or a verb. Examples

are *call girl*, *guideline*, *lovebird*, *work bench*. *Lovebird* is a bird species known for its affection for one another. On the other hand, it can denote birds that love one another or be noted to mean birds that display some degree of love (noun). This implies that assigning the lexical category of verb-noun can be problematic.

In brief, Gast's study concludes that verb-noun compound words are mostly distributed in German than in English. The type verb-noun compound words in German corresponds to English verb-noun where verb is attached to –ing form as in *parking permit, drinking water, breeding ground*.

However, English exocentric compound words correspond to German synthetic compound words noun-verb-er. It is reflected in the study that exocentric compound words are more distributed in English while endocentric compound words are widely used in German.

Verb-noun compounding shows unrestricted word formation rule in German while it is severely constrained in English. Endocentric compound words have unrestricted degree of productivity in German. Any combination can be interpreted. Marchand (1969:74) attributes high productivity for endocentric compound words in English. The study also reflects that exocentric compound words are numerous in English but used negatively.

The following section presents types of verb-noun compound words found in Gast's (2008) distribution.

# **!** Imperative compound words

These are compound words whose noun acts as an argument of the verb and the whole compound word denotes an entity of the resulting activity. Thus, these compound words denote verb denotation and their meanings are metonymic. Examples are *backbones*, *breakwater*, *turn penny*.

#### **Possessive compound words**

In this category, a verb modifies a noun and the whole compound word is interpreted metonymically. Examples are *scatterbrain* (scattered brain), *draggle tail* (draggled tail) meaning a woman whose skirt hangs untidily and is dirty.

#### 2.7. Compounding Databases

In an attempt to provide a more insight literature to serve as an initiative to study compounding from a larger perspective, Guevara et al. (date unknown) compiled a multilingual database of compound words from a corpus of over 20 languages. Their study provided a platform for researchers to manipulate the phenomenon of compounding from a wider spectrum. They compared and contrasted data at the level of individual language. They concluded that since languages have different linguistic features, it is acceptable to study their concepts based on individual languages. The present study has also adopted language specific approach to investigate and address the complexity of exocentric compounding.

In addition, Guevara et al. (date unknown) state that previous studies have always had fall backs because of nonexistence of reliable source of compound words. They highlight that previous studies have not up to now provided clear boundaries of compounding. Citing Bauer's (2001:695) definition of a compound word as a lexical unit made of two or more independent lexemes, they state that the definition is problematic because it does not distinguish between compound words and phrases. Guevara et al. (op.cit.) organized their data in three levels. First, they present all the collected data at the level they called expansion. The second level comprise of a table which presented four examples of each compound type and analysed them in terms of categorical, structural, morphosyntactic and semantic information. The third level consists of a summary of possible structures of a given language.

They use native speakers to collect data for their study, classified and analysed it manually according to the represented examples. It is noted that even though they opted for this method, they were aware that, "MORBO/COMP is not typologically well-balanced". It is doubtful whether Guevara et al.'s (op.cit.) database would be regarded as a reliable source for compound words and their types while they were already aware that it was not balanced.

#### 2.8. Interpreting Compound Words

Studies reviewed under this section interpret compound words using semantic approach. Finn (1980) interprets nominal compound words. He defines nominal compound words as sequences of two or more nouns through modification; however, he focuses his study on nouns formed from two constituents.

He divides interpretation of nominal compound words into three phases. The first one is that words should be interpreted as lexemes so that they are given lexical interpretation. Secondly, he suggests a phase he termed modifier parsing and concept modification, which means assigning an interpretation to the modification of one concept by another. Having observed that semantic relationship which exist between the nouns is not explicit, besides that there is a possibility that more relationships exist between the nouns. Therefore, the given interpretation may be influenced by semantic, pragmatic and contextual factors. The author uses computer programme to provide appropriate semantic interpretation of the compound words. The programme was given a string of nouns. Then, the interpretation was done based on a set of semantic rules, some of these rules were specific and others were general. The general rules were highly preferred than specific ones. The approach used represented concepts and the relationships between them. It examined attributes inherited between the concepts. It also encoded the semantic interpretation rules. What was more important about

the approach was the concept matcher whereby it determined the appropriate interpretation and elaborated how well or how appropriate it was.

Finn (op.cit.) mentions that the problem concerning interpretation of nominal compound words is the underlying relationship from the point of view of speaker that holds between the two concepts represented in the elements of a nominal compound. The examples that he gives show different relationship that hold between the concepts. For example, *aircraft engine* hold the relationship of *part of, meeting room* have relationship of *location*, while *saltwater* have relationship of *dissolved in*. The problem still remains because the interpretation is apparent in the surface form of the compound. There are other instances where the interpretation may not be so easily reached as in the example that he gives of *GM cars*. Nothing on the surface hinders the relationship of *made by*. This implies that the correct interpretation of the compound word depends on the speakers' knowledge of several factors. The problem of interpretation is further caused by lack of syntactic rules which guide the interpretation process. He argues that there should be explicit rules which language users may use to interpret nominal nouns.

The problem of interpreting these nouns is again caused by compounding itself. It may happen that two unambiguous constituents are made ambiguous after compounding process. A general hypothesis made by Finn (1980) is that any nouns may be combined into a compound noun and be interpreted according to a particular context.

His study suggests classes of interpretation rules that may be used to interpret compound words. The first class is that of idiomatic rules. These rules allow the constituents in a nominal compound word to relate on the surface level directly. The second class is productive rules. These rules are open rules because they capture any form of modification in the sense of defining an observed pattern. These forms are then characterised by the semantic

relationships between the modifier and the modified concepts. The author emphasises that the semantic relationship is not influenced by the constituents but by the rule itself. Thus, the constituents are matched against a semantic relationship that already exists. The third class contains structural rules. The class is appropriate where there is a structural relationship between the two constituents. Thus, what role can constituent A play in B or vice versa, and how fitting can that role be. This means not all roles could be fitting, that is why other interpretations would be inappropriate.

Generally, Finn (1980) states that it is possible to interpret these compound words if there is knowledge about the concepts themselves and the three classes of interpretation rules.

Gagne and Spalding (2006) also deliberate on compound words. Their study focuses on how to process interpretation of novel compound words. According to these authors, novel compound words are interpreted in the similar manner as familiar compound words. They state that constituents that make up the compound word need to be considered as separate words. If these words have been seen before, then that novel compound word can easily be interpreted using the mental knowledge and concepts associated with such words. They argue that the interpretation is also influenced by relation availability. It should be possible to interpret a novel compound word by constructing a relation between the constituents. The authors admit that this interpretation would be easier if the relation is transparent. However, they detect the challenge placed by their conclusion that not all compound words will have transparent relation. They mention that some compound words are fully transparent while others are partially transparent and there are those that are partially opaque while others are fully opaque. They state that in order to interpret the novel compound words, it is unavoidable to select a relation, just as it is the case with familiar compound words.

Gagne and Spalding (2006) show that processing of compound words depends on the constituents that make up that compound word. Often language users are likely to know the constituents as separate words already existing in the language. This knowledge can be used to determine the meaning of the compound word as a whole. They also indicate that novel compound words are processed easily if they are preceded by words that are closely related to them. For instance, the compound word *milk bottle* is easily processed if preceded by *cow*. When a compound word is encountered, the language system attempts to locate unified representation of the compound word (conceptual knowledge), as well as to derive the meaning of the compound word based on the constituents and conceptual knowledge about how the constituents are related. However, they realize that this technique cannot be applied across the board if opaque compound words are considered. They clearly state that when lexical forms of constituents of opaque compound words are retrieved, processing may not be easily achieved, as it is the case with transparent compound words.

Gagne and Spalding's (ibid.) study is based on the model called Instance model by Logan. The model proposes that in order to decide on the processing of lexemes, there is a need to retrieve knowledge from the mind or to follow a systematic procedure. In their study, the researchers shared similar view with (Kumary 2004, Hyona 2012 and Beard 1995) that words are easily processed because they have been seen before (thus direct and componential route). When one looks at Instance model, it is realized that it applies to familiar compound words that already exist in the mental lexicon.

The present study is interested in the conceptual system advocated for by Gagne and Spalding (2006). Contrary to their focus on endocentric compound words, though, the primary focus for the present study is exocentric compound words used in Southern African newspapers.

Their method will help the present study to establish the appropriate method that may be used to interpret exocentric compound words.

In 2005, Kim and Baldwin carried out a study similar to that of Gagne and Spalding. They also focus on two-word compound words. Their study introduces a method to be used when interpreting these compound words. Following preceding studies on noun plus noun compound words (Finn, 1980), Kim and Baldwin state problems that accompany interpretation of these nouns. They demonstrate that, firstly, the compounding process itself is productive; therefore, it is difficult to mould a rule that can be applied. Secondly, they mention that the relationship between the two elements that make up a compound word is implicit; therefore, it is not easy to ground down the interpretation. Lastly, the authors show that the interpretation itself may be influenced by contextual factors. What this means is that, appropriate interpretation of noun compound words is problematic to reach at.

Kim and Baldwin (op.cit.) argue that research done on noun compound words has been based on manually made rules, hence their proposal of automatic interpretation by the application of WordNet Similarity. The argument is that these manually-made rules tend to cover specified context under discussion. They argue that their proposed method of WordNet Similarity shows sense of disambiguation. It shows that the similarity between term-to-term can be used to disambiguate word senses that may help at reaching appropriate interpretation.

Their findings show that both modifier and head noun contribute to the interpretation process, with the head being more outstanding. However, both elements' roles differ according to a semantic relation type. For example, in the cause and instrument semantic relation, the modifier becomes more active while in the content and property relation, the head noun usurps. This means the role of the constituents of a noun compound is influenced by the relationship held between the constituents.

Kim and Baldwin's (op.cit.) study focuses on endocentric compound words and left out exocentric compound words. This still leaves a gap in relation to interpretation of compound words. Even though their method could have been good, it is applied on isolated corpus since their data were retrieved from a computer database. The present study would like to reach at the interpretation build around both semantic and usage of exocentric compound words with the assumption that looking at them in operation might bring a stronger lead on their interpretation.

Rallapalli and Soma (2012) developed on Kim and Baldwin's (op.cit.) study. The difference between their study and that of Kim and Baldwin is that the latter combine WordNet Similarity with PurposeNet, hence the name hybrid for the approach that they used. In their study, they first searched the ontology to locate the node corresponding to the head or the nominal compound word. After this, they extracted the corresponding descriptive and action features of the artifact represented by the nominal compound word. Secondly, they applied WordNet Similarity to cover any unattended compound words. Their search resulted into 600 compound words which they selected manually after the computer search. They complemented the computer search with manual search because the computer tagged wrong words as nouns as well. The present study modified these methods of interpreting compound words by considering context in which the compound words appear.

# 2.9. Analysing Exocentric Compound Words

In an attempt to provide a more direct approach to compounding, Benczes (2002) researched on how to analyse English exocentric compound words. She states that these compound words are analysed in the same way as endocentric compound words. She suggests that cognitive tools such as metaphor, metonymy and blending among others be applied when dealing with this type of compound words. She aligned her study with Driven and Verspoor

(1998) who argued that compound words are distinguished in terms of transparency of their meaning. That is, there are those that are easily interpreted from their elements and may be easily linked semantically. These are compound words that Driven and Verspoor (op.cit: 60) said are analysable and immediately transparent. For example *apple tree* – a tree that bears apples. They suggest that a second category is made up of partially transparent compound words. These are compound words whose components may still be analysable though the semantic link is less apparent. For example *blackbird* is a bird species, not necessarily a black type of bird. Another category is referred to as darkened compound words. Driven and Verspoor (ibid.) claim that compound words under this category are understood metaphorically or metonymically. This approach was nevertheless found insufficient. As Benczes (2002) indicates, it does not draw distinct boundaries as to when a compound word becomes transparent or partially transparent.

While this study aligns with Benczes's (ibid.) observation in this regard, it does not so much agree with it when it comes to her proposed method of analysis. Benczes uses a very small sample of what she terms creative compound words. She considers only five exocentric compound words, *armchair*, *jailbird*, *belly button*, *meadow mayonnaise* and *flame sandwich*. Due to the limitation in her corpus, her study could only be regarded as a marginalised study. Besides that, the compound word *armchair* is wrongly included in her sample because as she clearly argues, it is an endocentric compound word. It will, however, be regarded as part of this study because in fact it has proven flexible nature of compound words that endocentric compound words at one stage could be exocentric compound words.

A major drawback that one can see and which still calls for further research on analysability of exocentric compound words, is that Benczes (op.cit.) realizes that neither all semantic relations nor all metaphorical relations are considered in interpreting exocentric compound

words "once again, not all aspects of the metaphor are activated" (Benczes, op. cit: 13). One needs to understand that the task is still to provide a justification of why not all aspects are not activated. However, the present study appreciates Benczes's study as it widens possible ways of accounting for complexity of exocentric compound words.

In her study, Benczes presents relations that hold between the constituents of the exocentric compound words that she used in her study. She suggests the chosen sample all relates metaphorically. Thus, armchair has metaphor-based modifier relation that may be realized between constituents of that compound word. She states that the compound word should be understood to mean armrests of a chair, whereby the left-hand constituent arm modifies the right-hand constituent chair. In this case the compound has part-whole relation, hence metaphorical relation. The other three compound words, jailbird, belly button and meadow mayonnaise are said to hold metaphor-based profile determinant. She argues that the three compound words have input spaces that have gone through blending process and this blending is what determines their metaphorical interpretation. For example, in jailbird, jail relates to the imprisoned person and bird relates to caged bird. In belly button, belly relates to the upper body while button relates to the upper garment. The third compound word meadow mayonnaise follows the same pattern. Meadow can be linked to cowpat while mayonnaise can be connected to the dish with mayonnaise topping. The author summarizes that in the three compound words, the second element in the compound word serves as the profile determinant while the first element serves as its modification. She mentions that even though the first element relates to the second one metaphorically, the meaning of the whole compound can be easily retrieved between the correspondences of the elements in the compound word. This is supported by the same author in another study (Benczes (2004) that the meaning of compound words is not a simple combination of the meanings of their

elements; rather, the meaning of the whole compound word is reached through manipulation of the elements that make it up. She also contends that by saying that the interpretation further considers contextual knowledge. She explains that when encountering a compound word, the listener should cognitively manipulate the various domains such that s/he reaches at the compound word meaning.

Benczes (2002) analyses the last compound word (*flame sandwich*) as holding the relation of the first two relations, metaphor–based modifier and metaphor-based profile determinant. She states that the modifier *flame* and the head *sandwich* are metaphorical in that the head element provides the structure of the comment as per its interpretation. That is, the negative comment is situated between the two positive comments just like a sandwich filling is situated between the two sides of bread.

What still remains a challenge even after the author's later work (Benczes, 2006), is the fact that she neglects the idea of constituents relating in more than one way. This view she has initiated by shifting *armchair* from its common class of endocentric into exocentric through analysing it metaphorically. In addition, Benczes's (2002) study has used only one pattern of exocentric compound words that of exocentric noun compound words. It does not hint at all on how other categories might fit in her proposed analysis method.

Another related study was undertaken by Ralli and Andreou (2010) on the distinction between endocentric and exocentric compound words in Greek and Cypriot. The aim of their paper is to show that both types should not be differentiated on semantic grounds, but rather on structural grounds. They further demonstrate that semantic approach need not be used to categorise exocentric compound words.

Their study follow a similar pattern of compounding studies whereby the authors first demonstrate the problem of defining an exocentric compound word. They align with previous studies that exocentric compound words cannot be defined as hyponyms of their constituents or at least one of their constituents. Their argument proposes that exocentricity should be considered as a language specific phenomenon. This is because compound words that could have been classified as endocentric in other languages, following a general distribution between endocentric and exocentric compound words, are considered exocentric in Greek and Cypriot.

They demonstrate this point by testing examples from Greek and Cypriot against such works of Scalise et al. (2009) who extrapolate degrees and dimensions of exocentricity, that is, whether it can be categorical, semantic or morphological and Bauer (2008a, 2010) who propose that exocentric compounds be judged as exocentric on the semantic grounds. Ralli and Andreou (2010) argue that data from Cypriot and Greek do not support any of these claims.

Ralli and Andreou's (op.cit.) study also show that exocentric compound words should not be differentiated from their counterpart's endocentric compound words on the basis of headedness. Greek and Cypriot data show that exocentric compound words were actually headed. The difference they have from endocentric compound words was that in their formation, they involve derivation, which is the process from where their headedness comes. This evidence from Greek and Cypriot shows that exocentric compound words have heads as part of the word structure and therefore they do not have to be inferred as suggested in other studies (Dressler, 2006:33). This observation nullifies that headedness is a criterion for defining endocentricity and exocentricity.

Ralli and Andreou's (op.cit.) study discuss the structure of exocentric compound words. They show that Greek and Cypriot exocentric compound words follow the structure of compounding and derivation, in that order. Data showed that majority of these compound words involve stem combinations. The first constituent is a stem without inflectional ending while second constituent may be a stem or a fully inflected word. Supported by other works, Drachman and Malikouti-Drachman (1994), Nespor and Ralli (1996) and Ralli (2005, 2007), the structure of Greek compound words follow that pattern of either a [stem stem] or a [stem word]. Their study concludes that there should be a clear demarcation between exocentric and endocentric compound words in terms of their formation structure, with exocentric compound words following the pattern of compounding-derivation order while endocentric compound words are formed from compounding process only or follow derivation-compounding order. This study is significant on the development of the present study in that it demonstrated how languages differ in exocentricity. It affirms necessity of further research on individual languages in order to establish compounding behaviour.

So far literature reviewed for this study reflected that constituents of compound words have grammatical relation shown overtly or otherwise. It also demonstrated other relations such as semantic and formal criterion even though these were not exhaustively explained. Based on these limitations, the present study expands the relations' scope by considering context in which exocentric compound words appear.

# 2.10. Language Use in Media

Hanusch (2008) examined how newspapers employ language in their reporting coverage of death. His study compares four quality newspapers, two from Australia and two from Germany. It examines specific words that are used to describe death and events that relate to death. The four newspapers are regarded the top quality newspapers in their respective

countries. The two countries are examined because they share some cultural dimensions, though they differ in others. For instance, Australia is more individual than German. Thus, an individual is regarded highly important in a society. On the other hand, Germans are high on uncertainty avoidance, meaning that they stick by laws, rules, security and safety measures in order to avoid situations awkward to them. Clearly put, Germans are less comfortable with uncertain situations than are Australians.

In his study, Hanusch (op.cit.) uses holistic model that account for the various factors that impinge on news flow. The model considers a combination of political, economic, cultural, social, historical and linguistic factors. However, this methodology has been criticised in that the sample was not representative. Other researchers argue that generalisation has been made on the basis of few questionnaires.

His study collected data from four quality newspapers of the months of September and October 2004. He undertook extensive interviews with eight journalists from each newspaper. Journalists that were interviewed were involved in the production of foreign news. They were questioned on the use of language when reporting death and sample headlines were picked out to provide a cross-cultural analysis as to the kind of language acceptable in each country.

Hanusch's (op.cit.) findings show that there are no written policies regarding the use of language when reporting death. What is generally observed is that Germans are quite particular about the use of certain language while Australians are not much concerned about finer linguistic details. It is also discovered that both countries try to keep death reporting much more distant and dry. Specifically, Germans replace words such as *corpses* with *bodies*. These journalists view themselves as intellectuals hence the use of alternative words. (Four of them were PhD holders). Australians though are not so elaborative about use of language in

their newspapers; they also report that there are no policies and conventions governing use of language except adhering to stylistic expressions of newspapers. For example, they could choose *died* instead of *passed away* because the latter would be appropriate for the people who died after a long illness.

Furthermore, interviewees were presented with five headlines. They were asked about their opinions on the taste, ethics or appropriateness of the headlines and if they could publish them. In order to facilitate the process, German newspapers were translated into English for Australian journalists while those published in Australian were translated into German. Hanusch (2008) observes that this part posed a problem because literal translations from one language to another did not suit the other language' newspaper style.

From the chosen headlines, almost all German journalists disapproved of the use of words such as *trample each other to death*; *slaughtered innocents*, *bloody carnage*, *gates of hell*, *rotting bodies*, *deconstructed*. German journalists argue that such words are harsh and disrespectful of the dead. *Deconstructed* was not taken well at all, the reason was that death is not a joking matter; therefore it cannot be expressed in puns.

Australian journalists accepted all the headlines despite the choice of words used. Such words as the ones mentioned above did not bother them. They reported that they would publish the headlines because there is nothing wrong with the words used.

Hanusch's study concludes that Australians code of ethics is much less detailed, hence Australians' acceptance of any language used in newspapers. On the other hand, German is more prescriptive. It expresses in detail that the press is to have respect for the truth, human dignity and do truthful reporting, respect people's privacy. Overall, Australian journalists display less concern on words and humour that is used when reporting death. His study

signals a trend that language research may take. It emphasizes the importance of using language for a purpose through appropriate choice of words. People also realize the role of newspapers in people' lives whereby the culture of a far away country could be presented and made known to the outside world on a newspaper. Thus, language users come to know about diverse cultures through language use in newspaper discourse.

In another study on language and media, Galantomos et al. (2011) investigated content and language of newspaper articles used to refer to the start of official ban of smoking in Greece in July 2009. Greek government noticed that newspapers play an important role in conveying anti-smoking messages and keeping the public informed; therefore, they decided to use newspapers as a means to communicate to the public.

They collected data from 29 Greek newspapers nationwide and local. They collected articles from a filtering company that monitors and analyses information that is collected though reliable open source media. They gathered clippings of newspaper articles based on the words *ban, smoking* and *Greece*. The search yielded 196 articles covering a period of six months, three months before the official ban and three months after the official ban. News stories and feature articles sections were considered. The sections were classified into 13 sections, each showing a different type and theme (content).

Sections that shared type and theme were grouped and discussed generally. The researchers state that the grouping enabled them to get the gist of each article's theme and the language form. Their findings show that 16% of the sections covered content on reactions, various events that happened on the first day of the reinforcement of new restrictions on smoking and the compliance or resistance of the citizens. 14% was based on experts' interviews which covered issues on anti-smoking campaigns. Nine percent referred to the impact that smoking has on human organization and activities such as tourism and sex. Another nine percent

comprised views by journalists, citizens and experts on the willingness of individuals and the state of officials to abide by the new rule and its regulations. Eight percent showed extensive statistical data regarding attitudes towards the new law where statistics showed 83% that supported anti-smoking education in schools. Seven percent was on evaluation of new legislation. It covered economic impact on night clubs where smoking is a predominant feature. Six percent reported on importance of anti-smoking campaign through help line. The help line informed people on all aspects regarding new legislation. Four percent was on testimonials of citizens who tried successful and unsuccessfully to quit smoking. Four percent reported on comparative measures done in major European countries such as Italy, Ireland, and Great Britain etc. Three percent reported reactions against anti-smoking campaign which resulted in a foundation of a political party for the smokers' right protection.

Galantomos et al.'s (2011) findings show that the language that is used reflects obvious shift from usual labels such as *habit*, *addiction* to unusual ones such as *terrorist act* when referring to smoking. Characteristic words such as *an illness*, *a hard drug*, *a form of worldwide pandemic*, *a poison that causes addiction* and many more were used. The vocabulary used was both formal and informal with no special use of punctuation marks to attract the reader. Formal language complied with syntactical rules of Greek language. There were instances of metaphors, idiomatic expressions; utterances in the form of imperatives, use of foreign words, utterances ending with exclamation marks were frequent language devices. Use of dots, questions, quotation marks also featured in headlines. Words with strong negative background and implications were used as well. There were uses of figures, percentages and numbers as well as words with strong evaluative force. There were no modal expressions observed.

The present study adopts the methodology used in Galamanto et al. (op.cit.) where feature stories were used as subject area because of their colourful description of events and presentation of a more individual style of the reporter.

Another related study was conducted by Pollak et al. (2011). Their study investigated techniques of text mining and discourse analysis in detecting contrast patterns in newspaper articles. They focused on the press coverage of the 2007 Kenyan elections and post-election crisis. Text mining is explained as a technique that is used to construct classification models. It is also used to find interesting patterns in large text collections. This technique will be used in the present study to uncover non-obvious and unexpected patterns of compound words in newspapers. As reflected by the authors, their study investigates the potential of text mining techniques to explore patterns of explicit and implicit meanings generated in the process of using language. The authors mention that text mining is a central step of what they call knowledge discovery in huge data by humans and computers. They state that humans will select data that they are interested in and define problems associated with it. They will then set goals and interpret the results, while the computer will search through the data looking for models and patterns that meet the human-defined goals.

Their study has an element of comparison because they hypothesize that local and international news coverage will show discrepancy. For their study, the researchers picked out six English-language quality newspapers. They selected this corpus conveniently from already existing corpus that was collected for another project on *Intertextuality and Flows of information*. They had four Western newspapers and two local ones. Their aim was to find ideological differences in national versus international news reports of the same events. The present study's approach shows some similarity with Pollak et al.'s (op.cit.) approach. It uses computer assisted method to analyse data for patterns of exocentric compound words and

relations between compound constituents and compound entities. The present study aligns with the authors that "Computer technology is useful for the analysis of discourse" (Pollak et al., 2011: 23).

### 2.11. Compounding in Media

This section presents studies that relate to media and compound words.

### 2.11.1. British Newspapers and Compound Words

Bauer and Renouf (2001) undertook a study on compounding patterns in the British newspaper *Independent* circulated from 1988 to 1998. They used AVIATOR and ACRONYM analytical tools to analyse data of 360 million words. Their analysis yielded up with 3000 formations of neologisms.

They classify the formations under several types. The first type consists of exocentric compound words. Under this type, they discuss bahuvrihi compound subtype which is also termed possessive type. This means that the entity of the compound word would be possessing features similar to that of compound word.

Secondly, they discuss lexicalized compound words. Using Marchand (1969) works, Bauer and Renouf (op.cit.) explain that with these compound words, direct object is incorporated into the verb as in *pickpocket*. They mention that due to unexpected order of *pickpocket* versus *pocket-picker*, the formation becomes exocentric.

The third subtype comprises compound words formed from particles. The authors state that this subtype is problematic to justify because the compound word formed here presents contrasting patterns. However, their exocentricity lies in the fact that they are considered nouns formed from verbs plus particles as in the examples *put-in* and *put-down*.

The last subtype is made up of compound words used as premodifiers but used independently as well. Examples her include *pass-fail*, *nose-bleed*. These are considered exocentric because their syntactic functions differ from those word classes of their individual elements.

The authors identify a second type made up of phrasal items. They consider this type under compounding because as shown by Di Sciullo and Williams (1987: 48), they are 'compound like'. The type includes lexicalized compound phrases which include a head noun and a prepositional phrase complement such as *lady-in-waiting*, *mother-in-law*. The compound words under this subtype are hyponyms of the initial element; therefore, they are left-headed. Bauer and Renouf (2001) state that the compound phrases are left-headed because they are not yet fully integrated into the lexical system but retain traces of their syntactic origins.

The second type of compound phrases is French loan constructions. These compound word phrases retain French word order as in attorney general, notary public. This subtype, like the previous one, is considered left-headed because it is not fully integrated into the English system.

Their study also includes subtype made up of other expressions with no overt head but appear to be lexicalisations of phrasal structures. Bauer (1978:207) gives examples such as *has-been*, *love-lies-bleeding*, *and forget-me-not* to illustrate this subtype. Bauer and Renouf (op.cit.) mention that new compound phrases are formed using this pattern.

The fourth subtype includes verb plus particle constructions. The compound words here are left-headed because they allow inflections on the left-hand element and are hyponyms of their left hand element. Compound words that show this pattern includes *pass-by*, *passer-by* and *passing-by*.

The last pattern consists of compound words with *who-* as the first element. Examples are *whoever, whomever and whose-ever* (Bauer 1994:153). Bauer and Renouf's (op.cit.) study show classes of compound words they call wrong-headedness. These include compound words made form:

- Derivatives with prefixes such as *non-, anti-, pseudo-,* with examples such as *no-drug, nonperson*
- Adverbial compound nouns such as frog-fashion, Turkey-style, windmill-style, bunting-style
- Compound premodifiers whose second element is *-only* as in *data-only*, *dry-clean-only*, *quartet-only*, *leisure-only*.

Another class of compound words found in their data is compound verbs. Existence of this class is supported by several linguists such as Adams (1973), Marchand (1969), Selkirk (1982, Lieber (1992, 2004 and 2009). Examples of such include *up-skill*, *outsoaped*, *dry-burn*, *test-release*, *mock-whispers*.

Compound adjectives also feature in their data. The authors explain that these words are compound in form and have an overt adjective and modifier. Examples are *rumour-sodden*, *confrontation-free*, *evil-seeming*, *patient-satisfaction*, *and foreign-office*. Constructions such as coordinate compound (here referred to as translative compound) appear in their data as in *angel-beast*, *grandmother-grandchild*, *love-again*, *honey-yoghurt*. The authors explain that these examples act as adjectives in sentences even though they have no adjectival head.

Bauer and Renouf (op.cit.) classify other constructions as compound words with plural inflection on first element. This appears non-standard in their data though English compounding is said not to allow internal inflections. Their argument here is that data

reflected this kind of 'things' which look like compound words. Examples are arms-issue, arts-patronizing, Beatles-watcher, women-friends, relations-wise, savings-rate, forms-compatible.

Other compound words are classified as synthetic compound words. The authors explain synthetic compound as a compound whose second element is a verb with its argument on the left-hand element. Examples are *tax-payer*, *video-shockers*, *blood-pooling*, *calf-aching*, *mouse-squeak*. It is noted in this class of compound words that the construction involve a head noun derived from its verb by conversation while the typical –*ing* suffix is also found in the data.

Bauer and Renouf (op.cit.) have been able to unearth uncommon patterns likely to be found in compounding. Following their example, the present study has expanded the scope because it examines a wide range of journalism by considering four quality newspapers. Bauer and Renouf (ibid.) have compromised the fact that newspapers have different reporting styles. Their data would have hugely contributed in the literature of compounding if it had considered several newspapers, but as realized, it has used only one newspaper. It cannot be denied, at the same time, that these authors' data have yielded useful foundation for the present study. It would serve as a reference in the analysis of the present study because it has used newspaper as their scientific source for data.

### 2.11.2. Indonesia's Newspapers and Compound Words

Ningsih and Rosa (2013) investigated types and processes of compound words used in newspaper headlines of a newspaper called *The Jakarta Post*. They present the definition of compounding as build up of a new word from the existing words (Wisniewski, 2007). Their study has also captured Crabtree and Power's (1985) view that compounding process forms

words from two independent words, not from bound affixed words. They state that compounding yields compound words and these compound words result from free morphemes. A morpheme is defined by Delahunty and Garvey (2010) as the smallest part of a word that has grammatical function or meaning. In addition to this definition, Stageberg (1999) clarifies that morpheme is a short segment of language satisfying three criteria. A morpheme is a meaning word; a morpheme cannot be broken into further parts and a morpheme is recursive in different language usage with a relatively stable meaning. However, Ningsih and Rosa's (2013) study regards the number of elements in a compound word as significant since there are compound words formed from more than two independent words. Importance of studying compounding has been shown by numerous researchers where it has been treated as a process mostly used as a way of making new lexemes.

An interesting part of Ningsih and Rosa's (ibid.) study is the distinction between a compound word and a phrase. These two can be confusing since they look the same and they are both formed from more than two words; while in actual fact they are different. Once again the authors cite Delahunty and Garvey (2010) to draw the distinction between these two. They show that the two may be differentiated by stress. Compound words are stressed on the first word while phrases are stressed on the last word. The meanings of the two differ to a greater or lesser degree. The difference is again observed in the order of constituents as in *sawdust* and *dust from saw*. Compound words also do not allow modification on the first element whereas phrases do.

Ningsih and Rosa (op.cit.) further adopt Delahunty and Garvey's (op.cit.) theory of compound types. The theory advocates that a compound word is classified according to the function that it performs in a sentence. They establish three types of compound words and list processes involved under each type. These are presented below.

# 1. Compound Nouns

- a) Noun + Noun = bath towel, boyfriend
- b) Verb + Noun = pickpocket, breakfast
- c) Noun + Verb = nosebleed, sunshine
- d) Verb + Verb = make-believe
- e) Adjective + Noun = deep structure, fast-food
- f) Particle +Noun = in-crowd, down-town
- g) Adverb + Noun = now generation
- h) Verb +Particle = cop-out, drop-out
- i) Phrase compounds = son-in-law

# 2. Compound Adjectives

- a) Noun +Adjective = card-carrying, childproof
- b) Verb +Adjective = fail safe
- c) Adjective +Adjective = open-ended
- d) Adverb +Adjective = cross-modal
- e) Particle + Adjective = over-qualified
- f) Noun +Noun = coffee-table
- g) Verb + Noun = roll-neck

- h) Adjective + Noun = red-brick, blue-collar
- i) Particle +Noun = in-depth
- j) Verb + Verb = go-go, make-believe
- k) Adjective +Verb = high-rise
- 1) Verb + Particle = see-through, tow-away

## 3. Compound Verbs

- a) Noun +Verb = sky-dive
- b) Adjective +Verb = fine-tune
- c) Particle +Verb = overbook
- d) Adjective + Noun = brown-bag

Even though Ningsih and Rosa's (op.cit.) classification of compound processes provides significant insight on the development of this study, there are inconsistencies observed which could have been clarified if the processes were considered in context. For instance, it is difficult to account for a compound verb *brown-bag* formed from Adjective + Noun. Contextual information could have helped to deduce why the authors classified this compound as a compound verb while it fits the criteria of a compound noun. To avoid such uncertainties, the present study classifies compound words in context.

Their study further reiterates the three basic classification of compound words based on semantic relations between the head and the modifier. Firstly, they discuss endocentric compound words. Using Delahunty and Garvey's (2010) and Booij's (2007) studies, Ningsih and Rosa (op.cit.) define endocentric compound words as words that represent a subtype of

whatever the head represents. This means that the head element of an endocentric compound word names the subtype. They further explain that the referent to an endocentric compound is identical to that of its constituents.

Secondly, they define copulative compound words. These compound words are reported to result from element of the same status; therefore, they have two semantic heads. They claim same status because they are said to contribute equally to the meaning of the whole. According to Booij (2007), copulative compound words are a special class of compound words, whose elements possess a relation of coordination rather than semantic head. Look at the example *bittersweet*. The referent here is both *bitter* and *sweet* hence coordination relation.

The present study's focus is on the last class, which are exocentric compound words. Citing Booij (2007) and Delahunty and Garvey (2010), Ningsih and Rosa (2013) explain that exocentric compound words are hyponyms of some unexpressed semantic head whose meaning cannot be guessed from their constituents. They all claim that exocentric compound words have no heads, at least not from their constituents. Expressed differently from other authors, Delahunty and Garvey (op.cit: 54) state that "exocentric compound is the compound that names a subtype, but the type is not represented by the head or the modifier in the compound". They exemplify white-collar as an exocentric compound word and claim that even though its entity is neither a collar nor a white thing, its meaning is related to a worker. Why a worker? Ningsih and Rosa (op.cit.) provide no further explanation beyond this observation, which the present study finds insufficient. Another limitation regarding their study is that they use only one newspaper found in Indonesia, "The Jakarta Post'. This may be found too thin to represent compound types and processes in newspaper discourse. To contribute on the existing literature on compounding in media, the present study examines

compounding systematically in Southern African newspapers through a broader presentation of multiple newspapers. Their study has contributed in the development of the present study because it has set precedence that exocentric compound words feature in newspapers even though it considered only one newspaper.

In addition, the present study investigates compounding from a scientific source of newspapers just like Ningsih and Rosa's (2013) study. It aligns with a claim made by these authors that previous studies have used data commonly from literary texts and internet. Therefore, the present study has regarded the role of language as important; hence it has tackled compounding in operation and not as an isolated entity like in other studies.

# 2.12. Summary of Chapter 2

In conclusion, the chapter dwelled extensively on existing literature pertaining to compounding as a word formation process and interpretation of compound words. It critically examined the various types, classes and processes of compound words in different texts of literary texts, databases and newspapers. These studies have emphasized on classification of compound words and their distribution across various languages. Given that exocentric compound words were the least discussed type of compound words in the literature, the present study affirms the necessity to deliberate on the use of exocentric compound words. Prior research has focused on distinction between exocentric compound words and endocentric compound words; this has left a gap on examining how these compound words behave in context. It is on this basis that the present study intends to build on the use of exocentric compound words. The present study also expands on the literature regarding exocentric compound words by investigating constituents' relations towards compound entities in the field of media.

The literature has also provided an insight of several methodologies to be used when investigating compounding. Many studies used manual tools to collect data, others retrieved data from prepared collections of compound words. The studies employed computer assisted tools to analyse the data, which have provided significant results. The present study will adopt the analytic tools as well to analyse exocentric compound words identified in newspapers. Some of the studies are closely related with the present study in that they used newspapers as their scientific source. The present study is an expansion of this scope since it considered a wider spectrum of newspapers while such studies examined general concept of compounding in a very limited scope of one newspaper. The contribution of this study is visible on the methodology used to analyse exocentric compounds. Using WordNet Similarity will yield new knowledge of relations between compound constituents and compound entities.

#### **CHAPTER 3**

#### **METHODOLOGY**

#### 3.1. Introduction

The review of literature has produced reoccurring themes emphasizing the importance of compounding in different discourses. Compounding is a crucial lexicon building process used in languages of the world (Downing, 1977, Katamba, 1993 to mention only a few). The purpose of this study is to examine the relationship between constituents of exocentric compound words as used in Southern African newspapers and their referents. It aims at researching exocentricity in newspapers as a communicative tool because it is believed that choice of words has a communicative bearing. Thus a speaker or a writer makes a clear choice over a word that will help him/her to communicate meaningfully and purposefully. Newspapers also face a challenge of diction, hence for a certain communicative reason, the speaker or the writer will opt for certain type of words. Therefore, this study focuses on the exocentric compound words. It is observed that this type of word do feature in newspapers. To motivate undertaking of this study, Leedy and Ormrod (2001:94) state that, "Research is a viable approach to a problem only when there are data to support it." It has been found out that newspapers like other documents do use exocentric compound words to communicate. This chapter describes the exact steps undertaken to address research questions and hypotheses for the study.

It has been observed that no single method of research is essential in academic research or is better than any other method. Many researchers call for a combination of research methods in order to improve the quality of research (Meyer, 2001). The study shares the same opinion. It adopts Rallapalli and Soma's (2012) terminology of hybrid approach to a problem, meaning

the utilisation of different research methods to a problem. This is not because the study was unable to decide between the various merits and demerits of the various methods. Instead, it is believed that all methods are valuable if used appropriately and managed carefully.

### 3.2. Research Design and Approach

Crabtree and Miller (1992) emphasize the significance of illustrating the research approach in order to increase the validity of social research. The present study adopted a qualitative research approach. It investigated the phenomenon of exocentricity in a specific domain of media. When showing merits of this kind of research, Altheide (1996) explains that qualitative research aims to gather an in-depth understanding of human behaviour and the reasons that govern such behaviour. The qualitative aspect of this study manifests itself on the in-depth examination of patterns of exocentric compound words that mirror in Southern African newspapers and how this type of words relate to the entities that they are used to refer to. Yin (2009:19) adds that "colloquially a research design is an action plan for getting from 'here' to 'there', where the 'here' may be defined as the initial set of questions to be answered and 'there' is some set of (conclusions) answers." This study examined a human decision over the use of certain words for a special purpose of communication. It used a case study strategy because it studies exocentric compound words used in Southern African newspapers exchangeable between the two countries of Lesotho and South Africa. Stake (1995) recommends that the most typical application of qualitative research seems to be that of case studies.

Case studies are defined in various ways; however, a general definition compiled from a number of sources such as Stake (1995), Altheide (1996), Yin (2009) and Meyer (2001) is that a case study examines a phenomenon in its natural setting, employing multiple methods of data collection to gather information from one or a few entities. Gillham (2000:1) adds

that a case study is an investigation to answer specific research questions which seek a range of different evidence from the case settings. In the same vein, Yin (2009:13) explains that case studies may be used as a method of inquiry. He states that they are conducted within a defined time frame. The author advocates that researchers conducting case studies may not need to visit the site under study but may collect their data by consulting secondary sources. This was the case with this study as data were collected from documents in the form of newspapers. Yin (op.cit: 15) argues that, "The case study...encompasses specific techniques for collecting and analyzing data and data should be collected from different sources."

There are some criticisms that case study strategy lacks representativeness and statistical generalisability (Gillham 2000). However, Yin (2009) argues that a case study strategy may be used to establish general concepts. He states that case studies are used for analytical generalizations, where the researcher's aim is to generalize a particular set of results to some broader theoretical propositions. Indeed the present study investigates exocentricity in a manageable case that would be able to serve as a reference for further research related to this one. Generally, it is argued that case study strategy lays a platform for the research to be conducted in an area where few, if any, previous studies have been undertaken as is the case with this one.

# 3.3. Sample and Sampling Techniques

This section provides sample for this study and how data were sampled. It presents the cases that were included in the sample. Then it justifies the units of analysis and corpora selection.

#### 3.3.1. Selection of Cases

With case studies, a researcher has liberty in selecting cases. There can be single or multiple cases. Originally, this study planned to investigate exocentricity in Lesotho newspapers only

and that would have made it a single case study; however, following Gillham's (2000) observation that a short coming of a single case is lack of generalisability; the study, therefore, included South Africa as another case so that it would be able to draw generalisation on the subject of exocentricity and media. Crabtree and Miller (1992) advise that qualitative sampling seeks information richness and selects the cases purposefully rather than randomly. The two countries were also considered because they share some similarities when it comes to media background. Lesotho got shifted from apartheid regime to democracy system in 1993 and a year after that South Africa experienced the same change. It is during this time that both countries enjoyed media freedom. South Africa's newspapers were freed from media restrictions just like Lesotho. Democracy brought with it the following:

- Freedom of the press and other media
- Freedom to receive or impart information or ideas
- Freedom of artistic creativity and
- Academic freedom and freedom of scientific research [www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com/component/content/articles?id+73%3].

### 3.3.2. Units of Analysis

Yin (2009) mentions that case study allow analysis of more than one unit of analysis in each case. This is, after developing contrasts between the cases, the researcher can focus on contrasts within the cases. Moreover, there is a choice of design in case study, holistic or embedded design. Yin (ibid.) differentiates one from the other in that holistic design examines the global nature of the phenomenon whereas an embedded design also pays

attention to subunits. In this study, an embedded design was used to analyze the cases. Thus, attention was given to sub-units and sub-processes within each case.

Case studies do not claim to be representative, but the emphasis is on what can be learned from a single case. Given this situation, Meyer (2001: 283) states that the underlying philosophy of single case study is "not to prove but to improve". Indeed this study seeks to improve the use and analysis of exocentric compound words in media.

The study used a purposeful sampling. The ultimate goal of purposeful sampling as shown by Crabtree and Miller (1992) and in [www.dissertationwriting.com/write-dissertationmethodology-help.shtm] is to obtain cases judged to be rich with information for the purposes of study. This is exactly what the present study went in for through the purposeful sampling.

# 3.3.3. Corpora Selection

The present study considers four quality newspapers, two from Lesotho and two from South Africa. Lesotho Times and Public Eye are produced in Lesotho while Saturday Citizen and Sunday Independent come from South Africa. Newspapers are a useful resource for information. They convey local, regional, international and national news to readers. They write about everything happening at all corners of the world. They act as the guardian of the society and help at developing public opinion [www.fuldafreepress.com/the-role-of-newspaper-in-the-modern-society/2014Fulda Free Press Poker]. The chosen newspapers target wide readership. They service people in national affairs, sport, advertisements, lifestyle and entertainment. In this contemporary time, newspapers are important in the promotion of trade, commerce and business. The two newspapers from Lesotho do not target any specific readership but provide affairs suitable for every citizen, whether from Lesotho or outside, hence why they circulate in South Africa just as South Africa's newspapers circulate in

Lesotho. Even though, *Saturday Citizen* initially focused on sport, it later widened its readership by providing other information as stated above [visibleadvertising.co.za/Media/Citizen.Saturday.html]. The same thing applies to *Sunday Independent*. The newspaper was initially targeted for higher-income people but later it aimed at a wider readership because there was a growth of papers with a black working class [www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com/component/content/article?id=73%3].

All the four newspapers are produced weekly in their countries. This totalled each of them to 48 issues in a year and 144 in a three-year period from 2011 to 2013. This periodisation was determined by sustainability of newspapers and availability of feature stories. The researcher discovered that of the many newspapers that were established from the year 1993 up to date, only a few sustained their establishment. Others died natural death because they were established targeting current events of the country at that time while others just disappeared for reasons unknown. There are others coming up in Lesotho such as the Weekender and Friday Flyer, the study left them out because they are just too new to judge their sustainability in circulation. The study filtered newspapers from 1993 by scrutinizing them for, one, availability of feature stories where the study intends to collect data from. Feature stories are chosen because the researcher believes that they are more general than other columns that make up a newspaper. In feature stories, there are voices of editor and readers of the newspapers. Moreover, feature stories have open readership because they talk about general issues such as current affairs, entertainment, stories and celebrities; therefore, the researcher believes that their nature influences the language that is used. Curtis (2011) gives a background on feature stories as outlined below.

He mentions that feature stories are popular content elements of newspapers, magazines, blogs, websites, newsletters, television broadcasts and other mass media. He explains that

they are articles that focus on human-interest issues. Contrary to hard news, Curtis reports that feature stories are not meant to report the latest breaking news but rather an in-depth look on at a particular subject. They penetrate deeper into the subject and expands on the details.

The section below highlights kinds of feature stories. According to Curtis (2011), feature stories are classified under the following kinds:

- 1. *Human interest*: this is the kind that discusses issues through the experiences of other things.
- 2. *Profile*: this kind expresses an individual's character and lifestyle. It covers different facets of the character in order to enable readers to visualize the subject.
- 3. *How-To*: this is the kind that gives people expertise on how to do some things.
- 4. *Historical features*: this is the kind that takes people back to historical events.
- 5. Seasonal themes: this kind involves stories about holidays and change of seasons.
- 6. *Behind the scenes*: this kind provides inside views of unusual issues and occupations.

The corpus of feature stories considered for this study is made up of mixed types of features. The study finds feature stories suitable as a source of research bearing in mind their nature as rightly shown by Curtis (2011). The corpus of feature stories considered for this study is made up of mixed type of features. The reason for this non-restriction approach is that firstly, the study is not meant to be genre based; therefore, it is not necessary to focus on a particular type of feature stories. Secondly, upon the selection of the newspapers depending on the availability of features, another determining factor for the sample was availability of the study items themselves, in this case, exocentric compound words.

#### 3.4. Data Collection

The present study collected data from online newspapers. Firstly, the newspapers had to have been published after Lesotho and South Africa's apartheid eras. Secondly, the newspapers had to have feature stories columns from where data would be collected. Thirdly, feature stories had to have used exocentric compound words. After the newspapers that fitted the mentioned criterion were retrieved from the internet, the present study used AVIATOR and ACRONYM analytical tools (Renouf, 1996) to identify exocentric compound words from the newspapers. A definition of a search item was entered on the search bar, and the tools would quickly highlight every word that fits the defined criterion. For instance, the definition would be compounded words. The definition would be repeated over and over if the results were not satisfactory or different definitions would be entered to search for more results. Even though these tools were productive, they are not fully fleshed as Renouf (op.cit.) warned; therefore, the present study also used manual method to identify and collect exocentric compound words from the newspapers for two purposes. First, the present study found manual method necessary because it is believed that it gives one an opportunity to engage and talk deeply with the data as they are manipulated round and round. Two, manual search was done as the computer search included not only compound words but also phrases. Given this limitation, a human effort was necessary in order to sieve unwanted data. This seems to reoccur when using computer assisted software since Renouf (1996: 183) warned about it.

### 3.5. Data Analysis

The data analysis for this study was done using a machine assisted method. The study adopted Kim and Baldwin (2005) methodology of analysis using WordNet Similarity. This is open software that allows a researcher to measure semantic relation similarity or relatedness between words. When a word is entered on the search toolbar, the software displays all

senses associated with that word. It is at this stage that the researcher can scrutinize the displayed information for relations between the words. (Fellbaum, 2005) states that the software is used to group words based on their meanings and it labels semantic relations among them. The use of computer instrumentation for interpretation of compound words have been employed before and it yielded good results (see Finn (1980), Semantic Interpretation of Nominal Compounds, Gawronska et al. (1994), Interpreting Compounds for Machine Translation, Kim and Baldwin (2005), Automatic Interpretation of Noun Compounds using WordNet Similarity and Rallapalli and Soma (2012), A hybrid Approach for the Interpretation of Nominal Compounds using Ontology).

The analysis began with the researcher entering the collected data by constituents for the software to interpret and the definitions were transcribed manually on a separate sheet. This was done in order to draw the semantic relation similarity between the words. Then the exocentric compound word was entered on the search word bar immediately for analysis as well. The analysis was done in consideration of the context in which the exocentric word appears as contextual knowledge is supported by pragmatic theory. This step added intensity in the analysis of the exocentric compound words. The combination of the computer analysis and the manual analysis benefited the researcher in getting the richness of the subtleties underlying the use of exocentric compound words. The software enabled fast and convenient analysis of exocentric compound words and manual analysis ensured thorough manipulation of both the separate entities of the constituents and the reference together with the role of context in analysing of such words.

# 3.6. Pilot Study

The methodologies for this study were pre-tested on a small-scale data. For pilot study the researcher used convenient sampling to pick newspapers available at her house. Since the

purpose of a pilot study is to pre-test an instrument for research, selection of newspapers was not significant at this stage. *Informative, Public Eye, Sowetan* and *Mail and Guardian* newspapers were readily available at the researcher's home so they were used as sample. The former two newspapers are produced from Lesotho and the latter are from South Africa and this made the cases well represented. Silverman (2001:222) supports pre testing research instrument for its appropriateness for the subject under discussion.

Data collected from the pilot study reveal that newspapers feature the use of exocentric compound words. The compound words found in the corpus covered the traditional patterns of exocentric compound words. For example, data reflected compound patterns such as Noun + Noun, Verb + Verb, Particle + Noun, Preposition + Verb, Adjective + Noun etc. This aligned with the findings of the study on types and processes of compound words carried by Ningsih and Rosa (2013).

It was also possible to use WordNet Similarity for interpretation of exocentric compound words at the level of constituents. For example, the exocentric compound word goes through three stages as shown below:

Stage 1: retrieval of the senses attached to the exocentric compound word

Stage 2: retrieval of senses attached to each of the constituents by the tool

Stage 3: relation drawn

Following the three stages, the two compound words below were used to test this tool.

1. CW: interview /noun/ ~ the questioning of a person or a conversation which is information is elicited; often conducted by journalists

C1: inter (1 sense) /verb/ ~ place in a grave or tomb

C2: view (13 senses) /noun/ ~ a message expressing a belief about something; the expression of a belief that is held with confidence but not substantiated by positive knowledge or proof

2. CW: full-length/adjective/~representing or accommodating the entire length

C1: full (13 senses) /adjective/ ~ constituting the entire quantity or extent; complete

C2: length (5 senses) /noun/ ~ the linear extent in space from one end to the other

The relation that can be drawn between the constituents that make up the exocentric compound word *interview*, for example, is based on an individual constituent. The first constituent of this compound word *inter* denotes an action of placing somebody at an inward position where he/she has to be involved while the second constituent *view* denotes a stand undertaken by somebody. On the basis of these senses, the constituents are taken to relate to the entity of the compound as "position-action". The argument behind this relation is that the person involved in the questioning as per the entity of the compound word as a whole, is placed in a position where he/she has to proof himself/herself in regard to the matter under discussion, thus, he/she is directly involved in that activity.

Similarly the compound word *full-length* is interpreted based on the constituents that make it up. The relation between the constituents and the entity of the compound word as a whole is that of intensity. The two constituents both express the extent of the entity referred to by the whole compound word.

The researcher realized from the pilot study that the style of writing and the language used in a newspaper differ according to a genre. For example, hard news is written differently from features. Since hard news report on accidents, crimes, announcements and events which have occurred, journalists are not allowed much flexibility on the use of language while with features; journalists are allowed more liberty of style (Bell, 1995:40). It was at this stage that it was realized that some of the newspapers do not have feature sections and the corpora for this study had to be adjusted in order to cover those that have features only to be included in the data collection.

In conclusion, the pilot study reflected that this study is viable and the proposed methodologies would yield credible results.

### 3.7. Delimitation of the Study

Representativeness of this study may be criticized in that it considered only one section out of many sections that make up a newspaper. The study focused on the feature stories because of the richness of information found there. Feature stories report on general information and incorporate both the reporter and the reader's views. It may also be argued that the period considered is short. First it was hypothesized that feature stories are a characteristic of every newspapers but empirical data proved otherwise, therefore the sample was affected by unavailability of sections under study hence two newspapers from each country, which have feature stories were considered for the study. Since the study is qualitative, the size of the sample was not significant. According to Du Plooy (2001), the validity of a qualitative study is concerned with the richness of information of the selected cases than the sample size. However, to improve on the generalisability on the subject matter, future researchers may want to focus on sections that are generally found across all newspapers.

# 3.8. Summary of Chapter 3

The chapter outlined the methodologies used to investigate usage of exocentric compound words in newspapers. It elaborated on the research design and individual method for each research question. It also provided a summary of the pilot study conducted to test these

methodologies. It is generally observed that the trend that has been followed in studying compound words captured on endocentric compound words and little was done on exocentric compound. Few attempts on exocentric compound words focused on classification of the compound words and interpretation of one pattern of nominal exocentric compound words. Very little attention has been given to other patterns such as verb, adverb and adjectives exocentric compound words. The next chapter of the study deals with data analysis and discussion.

#### **CHAPTER 4**

### DATA ANALYSIS AND DISCUSSION

#### 4.1. Introduction

The main purpose of this chapter is to present data analysis and discussion of the relations that hold between constituents that make up exocentric compound words and the entities that such compound words refer to. It also deliberates on the patterns of the exocentric compound words that feature in the corpus from the various newspapers. The Chapter is divided into sections. The first section presents qualitative analysis by which exocentric compound words are broken down into their constituents and their meanings are outlined as a build-up for relations and patterns realization. The section, simultaneously, addresses the first subsidiary research question of this study which is whether or not exocentric compound words are used in newspapers.

The second section of the chapter addresses the rubric research question on the relationship between individual constituents of an exocentric compound word, the compound word itself and the entity the compound word is used to refer to as used in newspapers. The relation's identification is grounded on the meaning of constituents used to form the compound word and the meaning of the compound word itself as illustrated in the preceding section.

The third section presents the patterns of exocentric compound words identified in the corpus and their examples. The patterns are labelled under specified lexical categories of nouns, verbs, adjectives and adverbs. The section is further divided into a sub-section on structures of compound neologisms found in the data.

The analysis of exocentric compound words and their usage in Southern African newspapers demonstrates exocentric compound words identified specifically from a corpus of four

newspapers published in Lesotho and South Africa. An observable trend used by morphologists regarding compounding data collection has been that of literary works or databases, this study has deviated from that by studying compounding in media.

### 4.2. Data Presentation and Analysis

Data presented here were collected from feature stories excerpted from four quality newspapers namely *Lesotho Times*, *Public Eye*, *Saturday Citizen* and *Sunday Independence* covering the period between 2011-2013. Feature stories were preferred over sections of headlines or editorials normally used as scientific resource for research. The preference of feature stories is due to the fact that they are a mixed type resource. That is, they provide background information of a topic under discussion, pick up a piece of information and develop it through comment and analysis (Bell, 1991:32).

The following section presents the identified exocentric compound words used in sentences and their analysis. The presentation shows the sentence in which an exocentric compound word appears, and this is followed by the analysis of the compound word and its constituents. This breakdown of compound words into constituents is done so that the relation between the compound word, constituents and the entity of the compound word as a whole could easily be observed. Using WordNet Similarity tool, each of the constituents is entered on the search bar and all senses (possible interpretations) attached to the constituent as a separate word, are displayed. A sense that is found closely related to the meaning of the compound word as a whole is chosen to be the relevant one; and is therefore the one used for analysis.

1. Up to 240 men undergo circumcision at the Lesotho Planned Parenthood Association

Male Clinic in Maseru every month, a positive development showing more men now realise

the importance of **stepping-up** sexually transmitted diseases prevention efforts, according to LPPA Programme Officer, Tefo Lepheana

CW: undergo /verb/ ~ pass through

C1: under (10 senses) /adverb/ ~ through

C2: go (35 senses) /verb/ ~ progress by being changed

CW: stepping-up /verb/ ~ speed up

C1: stepping (10 senses) /verb/ ~ proceeds or move as if by steps into a new situation

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ to a greater intensity

2. "Circumcision has an up to 60 percent reduction capacity of HIV and since scientists proved this, we are **overwhelmed** by demand," he said.

CW: overwhelmed /verb/ ~ overcome, as with emotions or perceptual stimuli

C1: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ beyond the top

C2: whelmed (1 sense) /verb/ ~ overpower

3. Despite government's efforts to work closely with traditional operators, controlling and monitoring of day-to-day "discreet" activities at most circumcision schools around the country has proved difficult over the years.

CW: day-to-day /adjective/ ~ of or belonging to or occurring everyday

C1: day (10 senses) /noun/ ~ 24 hour period assigned to a particular period or observance

C2: (to)-day (10 senses) /noun/ ~ 24 hour period assigned to a particular period or observance

4. The Maseru-based male clinic was established in 2007 after the LPPA realised most men were uncomfortable to queue for reproductive health services with their female counterparts.

CW: counter-parts /noun/ ~ a person or thing having same function or characteristics as another

C1: counter (13 senses) /adjective/ ~ indicating opposition or resistance

C2: parts (19 senses) /noun/ ~ something determined in relation to something that includes it

5. Recently, the health ministry **reinforced** its need to scale up circumcision by saying it would introduce an optional infant circumcision in all hospitals.

CW: reinforced /verb/ ~ strengthens and support with rewards

C1: rein (6 senses) /verb/ ~ control and direct with

C2: force (18 senses) /verb/ ~ to cause to do through pressure or necessity, by physical, moral or intellectual means

6. Their mothers would carry the messages and we hope they would communicate it to their children as they grow older," HIV and Aids Director in the Health Ministry, Miss Maud Boikanyo, told Public Eye in a previous **interview**.

CW: interview /noun/ ~ the questioning of a person or a conversation in which information is elicited, often conducted by a journalist

C1: inter (1 sense) /verb/ ~ place in a tomb or grave

C2: view (13 senses) / noun/ ~ the expression of belief that is held with confidence but not substantiated by positive knowledge or proof

7. The Mafeteng Poultry Cooperative Society members have taken their initiative to a whole new level by establishing Lesotho's first chicken abattoir in a landmark development that will benefit the country's entire farming community

CW: landmark /noun/ ~ an event marking a unique or important historical change of course or one on which important development depends

C1: land (18 senses) /noun/ ~ the people who live in a nation or country

C2: mark (30 senses) /noun/ ~ the impression created by doing something usual or extraordinary that people notice and remember

8. MAFETENG- They have come a long way and understand the pain and joy that comes with being a mother, grandmother and mother-in-law.

CW: understand /verb/ ~ know and comprehend the nature or meaning of

C1: under (10 senses) /adverb/ ~ in or into a state of subordination or subjugation

C2: stand (24 senses) /verb/ ~ be in some specified state or condition

9. But with their ambitions to make it in the poultry business bigger than their fears, the women have persistently refused to wilt with age while surmounting the enormous challenges

that come with free enterprise.

CW: enterprise /noun/ ~ a purposeful or industrious undertaking, especially one that requires

effort or boldness

C1: enter (9 senses) /verb/ ~ set out on (an enterprise or subject of study)

C2: prise (3 senses) /verb/ ~ makes an uninvited or presumptuous inquiry

10. Following weeks of planning and obviously sleepless night, the women this week saw yet another dream come true following the establishment of their own poultry abattoir in

Mafeteng—the first-ever such business to be **set-up** in Lesotho.

CW: set-up /verb/ ~ gets ready for a particular purpose or event

C1: set (45 senses) /verb/ ~ make ready or suitable or equip in advance for a particular

purpose or for some use, event

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ to a later time

11. 'Mamolise Letsa, one of the Mafeteng Poultry Cooperative Society members, said the

last time she visited her husband in 1997, she almost joined her ancestors in the after-world.

CW: after-world /noun/ ~ the place where you are after you die

C1: after (3 senses) /adjective/ ~ located after

C2: world (9 senses) /noun/ ~ the concerns of this life as distinguished from heaven and the

afterlife

*12*. A mother-of-five, Jafeta said women should find ways to gain economic independence

in order to contribute towards breaking the cycle of poverty experienced by many households

not only in Mafeteng but throughout Lesotho.

CW: households /noun/ ~ a social unit living together

C1: house (14 senses) /adjective/ ~ a building in which something is sheltered or located

C2: holds (45) /verb/ ~ have within, contain

"We have introduced two stooges called Helpful and Helpful 2 -though nobody ever 13.

calls them by their names, the archbishop and nanny Hallowpenny, Queen Cynthia and King

Robert.

CW: archbishop /noun/ ~ a bishop of highest rank

C1: arch (5 senses) /adjective/ ~ supreme

111

C2: bishop (3 senses) noun/ ~ a senior member of the Christian clergy having spiritual and

administrative authority

14. While the local industry is slowly growing, I'm aiming the South African market

because it is my stepping stone to go international.

CW: stepping stone /noun/ ~ any means of advancement

C1: stepping (10 senses) /verb/ ~ moves or proceed into a new situation

C2: stone (16 senses) /noun/ ~ a crystalline rock that can be cut and polished for jewellery

*15*. With two music videos Look At Me featuring Mustar and We On Again featuring

Dunamis and Pasco, doing well on local TV, social networks and Youtube, Lethunya said he

was working towards getting paid for his efforts and hard work.

CW: networks /noun/ ~ an interconnected system of things or people

C1: net (12 senses) /verb/ ~ constructs or forms a web as if by weaving

C2: works (34 senses) /noun/ ~ a product produced or accomplished through the effort or

activity or agency of a person or thing

*16*. The talented artiste said he will only be releasing a full-length album once he has

managed to penetrate the South African Market.

CW: full-length /adjective/ ~ complete

112

C1: full (13 senses) /adjective/ ~ complete in extent or degree and in every particular

C2: length (5 senses) /noun/ ~ the property of being the extent of something from beginning to end

17. MASERU-First National Bank Lesotho will today (Thursday) introduce new banking software for smartphones in an effort to support its mobile banking service.

CW: software /noun/ ~ written programmes or procedures or rules and associated documentation pertaining to operation of a computer system and that are stored in read/write memory

C1: soft (20 senses) /adjective/ ~ using evidence not readily amenable to experimental verification or refutation

C2: ware (3 senses) / noun/ ~ articles of the same kind or material, usually used in a combination

18. Known as Smartphone Banking App, the software functions on compatible **cellphones** without requiring network providers or data-integration. Smartphone Banking App is supported by cellphone models such as iOS Apple, BlackBerry10 as well as Android Smartphones and is available as a free download from the App stores.

CW: cellphones /noun/ ~ a hand-held mobile radiotelephone for use in an area divided into small sections, each with its own short-range

C1: cell (7 senses) /noun/ ~ a device that delivers an electric current as the result of a

chemical reaction

C2: phones (4 senses) /noun/ ~ electro-acoustic transducer for converting electric signals into

sounds

19. We foresee that eventually, as supply increases and the prices of smart devices fall,

more people will have access to these devices to be able to transact using our digital

channels."

CW: foresee /verb/ ~ realise before hand

C1: fore (3 senses) /adverb/ ~ front part

C2: see (25 senses) /verb/ ~ perceive an idea or situation mentally

*20*. FNB became the first financial institution with a Smartphone App in July 2011 in

South Africa, which became the most downloaded App in the county on introduction.

CW: downloaded /verb/ ~ transfer a file or program from a central to a smaller computer or

to a computer at the a remote location

C1: down (26 senses) /adverb/ ~ away from a more central or a northerly place

C2: loaded (10 senses) /verb/ ~ transfer from a storage device to computer's memory

114

21. The disc jockey said his love for music gained him popularity with the guys.

CW: disc jockey /noun/ ~ a person who announces and plays popular recorded music

C1: disc (4 senses) /noun/ ~ used to reproduce music by rotating while a pongraph needle tracks in the groove

C2: jockey (5 senses) /noun/ an operator of some vehicle or machine or apparatus

22. Schaba said from his Club Absolute days he has since brushed shoulders with South Africa's heavy weights.

CW: heavy weights /noun/ a person of exceptional importance and reputation

C1: heavy (28 senses) /adjective/ ~ of great intensity or power or force

C2: weights (10 senses) /noun/ ~ the relative importance granted to something

23. It was a huge surprise indeed because for the first since 2000 we saw our names on a national club tour **billboard** for Redds."

CW: billboard /noun/ ~ large outdoor signboard

C1: bill (13 senses) / noun/ ~ advertisement especially by posters or placards

C2: board (13 senses) /noun/ ~ a vertical surface on which information can be placed to public view

24. "I got smarter and big headed because DJ Sechaba was now known at national level.

CW: big headed /adjective/ ~ used colloquially to mean overly conceited or arrogant

C1: big (17 senses) /adjective/ ~ in a boastful manner

C2: headed (13 senses) /verb/ ~ be the first or leading member of a group and excel

25. The year 2004 was the **highlight** of his career.

CW: highlight /noun/ ~ the most interesting or memorable part

C1: high (18 senses) /adjective/ ~ standing above others in quality or position

C2: light (47 senses) / noun/ ~ a particular perceptive or aspect of a situation

26. Born Mokebe Mohasoa, Skebza D has had his fair share of the lime light including winning a HHP, South Africa's hip hop giant's **hip hop** competition in 2008.

CW: hip hop /noun/ ~ genre of African-American music of the 1980s and 1990s in which rhyming lyrics are chanted to a musical accompaniment

C1: hip (6 senses) /adjective/ ~ informed about the latest trends

C2: hop (9 senses) /noun/ ~ an informed dance where popular music is played

27. MASERU- Days before Kate delivered the Prince of Cambridge on Monday this week, the media frenzy was already **fever-pitch** as speculation continued to mount over the gender of the unborn child.

CW: fever-pitch /noun/ ~ a state of extreme excitement

C1: fever (2 senses) /noun/ ~ intense nervous anticipation

C2: pitch (22 senses) /verb/ ~ set the level or character of

28. Sheriff also enjoyed herding **livestock**, preferred wearing boys' clothes despite having all the physical features of a girl, and playing with boys his age in Maphotong, Ha-Elia village where he lived with his grandparents.

CW: livestock /noun/ ~ any animals kept for use or profit

C1: live (19 senses) /verb/ ~ support oneself

C2: stock (27 senses) /noun/ ~ a special variety of domesticated animals within a species

29. Sheriff is also curious enough to want to understand more about his sexuality and hopes one day, he would be able to undergo various tests that might reveal his biological or hormonal make-up.

CW: make-up /noun/ ~ the way in which someone or something is composed

C1: make (51 senses) /verb/ ~ create or design often in a certain way

C2: up (14 senses) /verb/ ~ raises

30. Two elevators and a **state-of-the-art** skylight **staircase** grace the property.

CW: state-of-the-art /adjective/ ~ the highest level of development at a particular time especially the present time

C1: state (11 senses) /noun/ ~ the way something is in respect to its attributes

C2: (of the) art (4 senses) /noun/ ~ creation of beautiful or significant things

CW: staircase /noun/ ~ a way of access (upward and downward) consisting of a set of steps

C1: stair (1sense) /noun/ ~ supports consisting of a place to rest the foot while ascending or descending a stairway

C2: case (22 senses) /noun/ ~ an occurrence of something

31. We give a political balance sheet of a veteran politician who has been through thick and thin of the pros and cons of Lesotho politics, Prime Minister Dr Thomas Motsoahae Thabane, now the chief executive of the coalition government founded on June 8, 2012 after a historic election of May 26 that had born no **outright** winner, compelling contesting political parties to forge strategic alliances.

CW: outright /adjective/ ~ without reservation or exception

C1: out (17 senses) /adjective/ ~ out of power, especially having been unsuccessful in an

election

C2: right (36 senses) /adjective/ ~ in or of satisfactory condition

*32*. We also briefly forecast his prospects from now leading to the 2017 national

elections.

CW: forecast /verb/ ~ predict in advance

C1: fore (3 senses) /adverb/ ~ forward

C2: cast (20 senses) /verb/ ~ put or send forth

*33*. Thababe has also proved to have the ability to convince politicians of different

ideologies to work together and he has appeal to different sectors of the society beyond

religious denominations, political ideologies, social status and professional backgrounds.

CW: backgrounds /noun/ ~ a person's social heritage, previous experience or training

C1: back (28 senses) /adjective/ ~ of an earlier stage

C2: grounds (23 senses) /noun/ ~ a relation that provided foundation for something

119

34. For Thabane to be able to wield power, he would need supporting legal **framework** and a force to use where there is no compliance.

CW: framework /noun/ ~ the underlying structure

C1: frame (17 senses) /noun/ ~ a system of assumptions and standards that sanction behaviour or give it meaning

C2: work (34 senses) /verb/ ~ exert oneself by doing mental or physical activity for a purpose or out of necessity

35. He seems to command good support of the military and the police, state institutions that seem to have a **buy-in** of his policies such as crime prevention, a move that has instilled a sense of security to investments and personal belongings.

CW: buy-in /noun/ ~ amass so as to keep for future use or scale or for a particular occasion or use

C1: buy (6 senses) /verb/ ~ acquire by trade or sacrifice or exchange

C2: in (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ to or toward the inside of

36. It is under his leadership that sector plans have **kick started**, giving Basotho a ray of hope that the National Strategic Development Plan (NSDP 2012-13 to 2016-17) will be implemented.

CW: kick started /verb/ ~ start activated with a foot and the weight of the body

C1: kick (14 senses) /noun/ ~ the swift release of stores of effective force

C2: started (14 senses) /verb/ ~ bring into being

37. Criminals across all sectors from white collar workers, to robbers, car thieves and stock thieves now find Lesotho a cold place for them, with a 'shoot to kill' to those who are

armed and resist arrest.

CW: white collar /adjective/ ~ of or designating salaried professional or clerical work or

workers

C1: white (25 senses) /adjective/ ~ being of the achromatic colour of maximum lightness

C2: collar (12 senses) /noun/ ~ anything worn and placed about the neck

38. The presence of the LCD as a major and more experienced partner in the coalition

has retained the majority of the old stock, to whom change might be interpreted as

undermining their status quo.

CW: undermining /verb/ ~ destroy property or hinder normal operations

C1: under (10 senses) /adjective/ ~ lower in rank, power or authority

C2: mining (4 senses) /noun/ ~ the act of extracting form the earth

39. Failure by the coalition to increase salaries of factory workers has not gone down well with the industry that boasts almost 35 000 workforce.

CW: workforce /noun/ ~ the force of workers available

C1: work (34 senses) /noun/ ~ the occupation for which you are paid

C2: force (19 senses) /noun/ ~ group of people willing to obey orders

40. Thabane's political approach to try and sort out problems within the country's judiciary **backfired** and turned out to be interference in the independence of the courts.

CW: backfired /verb/ ~ come back to the originator of an action with an undesired effect

C1: back (28 senses) /adverb/ ~ in or to or toward an original condition

C2: fired (10 senses) /verb/ ~ went off or discharged

41. While crime is decreasing, especially stock theft and armed robbery, there is an increase in witchcraft killings and white-collar crime.

CW: witchcraft /noun/ ~ the art of sorcery

C1: witch (5 senses) /noun/ ~ a being (usually a female) imagined to have special powers derived from the devil

C2: craft (6 senses) /noun/ ~ shrewdness as demonstrated by being skilled in deception

42. Given his down-to-earth character and ability to maintain friendship, the boy from dusty Ha Abia on the outskirts of the city can mingle with town dwellers and rural dwellers and form friendship with anyone regardless of social status.

CW: down-to-earth /adjective/ ~ sensible and practical

C1: down (26 senses) /adjective/ ~ being or moving lower in position

C2: (to) earth (9 senses) /noun/ ~ ground

43. A strong political debater, Thabane's opponents earlier dismissed him as **non-starter** elite who cannot appeal to rural folk, because of his academic language on poverty alleviation, and it turned out to be true as he was beaten **white wash** in the rural constituencies.

CW: non-starter /noun/ ~ a person with a record of failing, someone who loses consistently

C1: non (1 sense) /adverb/ ~ negation of a word or group of words

C2: starter (7 senses) /noun/ ~ any new participant in some activity

CW: white wash /noun/ ~ a defeat in which the losing person or team fails to score

C1: white (25 senses) /adjective/ ~ free from moral blemish or unsullied

C2: wash (21 senses) / noun/ ~ any enterprise in which losses and gains cancel out

44. Avoid alcohol if you can: From the outset in 2006 Thabane has been thrashed from

the right for his seeming condolence of alcohol abuse and applauded from the left for his

presumed appreciation of the value of reasonable consumption of the product.

CW: outset /noun/ ~ the time at which something is supposed to begin

C1: out (17 senses) /adverb/ ~ moving or appearing to move away from a place

C2: set (45 senses)/verb/ ~ a relatively permanent inclination to react in a particular way

45. When he wasn't battling from the platform of another's party, Thabane made it a

landmark point to read the Bible at the beginning of literally every one of the ABC's indoor

conferences and open-air rallies.

CW: open-air /adjective/ ~ in the open air

C1: open (36 senses) /adjective/ ~ in view of all, accessible to all

C2: air (15 senses) /verb/ ~ make public

46. The tenacity with which he **spearheaded** that September 1998 South Africa's military

invasion, the scuppering of the all-party covenants, and the hounding of the real or perceived

conspirators against the state and mutineers as well as the unremitting committal of these

categories to lengthily imprisonment and to effective banishment from the public sphere, all

speak to this profile.

124

CW: spearheaded /verb/ ~ lead

C1: spear (4 senses) /noun/ ~ a long pointed rod used as a tool or weapon

C2: headed (13 senses) /verb/ ~ be in charge of

47. Do what you know/think is right: Thabane can swim against the tide of collective vision, and act as a **lone-wolf**, without submitting to either majoritarian principle or reverting to contrary majority opinion.

CW: lone-wolf /noun/ ~ a person who avoids the company or assistance of others

C1: lone (3 senses) /adjective/ ~ characterized by or preferring solitude

C2: wolf (6 senses) /noun/ ~ a cruelly rapacious person

48. The line-up will also boast locals Painkiller, Trer, Atrax and Case-Closed.

CW: line-up /noun/ ~ a line of persons arranged in ranks

C1: line (36 senses) /noun/ ~ a formation of people or things one behind another

C2: up (14 senses) /adjective/ ~ being or moving higher in position or greater in some value

49. "We are providing a platform to celebrate Christ with other **like-minded** people from even far beyond their national boundaries, as you can see the line-up features artistes from USA and other African countries," Mahase noted.

CW: like-minded /adjective/ ~ of the same turn of mind

C1: like (11 senses) /adjective/ ~ having the same or some of the characteristics, used in combination

C2: minded (8 senses) /adjective/ ~ used in combination to mean mentally oriented toward something specified

50. The School Screening Project coordinator, Mamakhethe Phokoane said they sent out invitations and Maseru-based schools gave positive **feedback** and showed keenness in seeing the film "that is why we have decided to cover many schools in the city."

CW: feedback /noun/ ~ response to an inquiry or experiment

C1: feed (12 senses) /verb/ ~ supply

C2: back (28 senses) /adverb/ ~ in or to or toward a former location

51. Plans were **underway** to come up with Moshoeshoe: The Mountain Kingdom Volume Two.

CW: underway /adjective/ ~ currently in progress

C1: under (10 senses) /adverb/ ~ through a range

C2: way (13 senses) /noun/ ~ the condition of things generally

52. The grading process was long **overdue** because global hospitality trends demanded we took the grading route for the sector to survive and grow.

CW: overdue /adjective/ ~ past due, not paid at the scheduled time

C1: over (7 senses) /adjective/ ~ complete

C2: due (7 senses) /noun/ ~ that which is deserved or owed

53. However, the process also came at the **backdrop** of an accommodation sector that had, for many decades, largely operated without any standard guidelines to follow in its tourist-experience offering.

CW: backdrop (noun) ~ background, backcloth as scenery hung at back of stage

C1: back (28 senses) /adjective/ ~ related to or located at the back

C2: drop (32 senses) /noun/ ~ a curtain that can be lowered and raised onto a stage from the flies

54. Following an extensive consultative process with various stakeholders, the framework was able to also **outline** the minimum requirements and grading criteria.

CW: outline /verb / ~ describe roughly or briefly or give the main points or summary of

C1: out (17 senses) /verb/ ~ reveal

C2: line (36 senses) /verb/ ~ make a mark

55. Most of them were running other programmes and waiting for their completion before they could **take-up** other projects," Hatase explained.

CW: take-up /verb/ ~ pursue or resume

C1: take (44 senses) /verb/ ~ proceed along

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ to a later time

56. "The understanding was that the government would then **take-over** its sustenance beyond the project, which ended last month."

CW: take-over /verb/ ~ seize and take control without authority and possibly with force; take as one's right or possession

C1: take (44 senses) ~ /verb/~ get

C2: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~beyond the edge

## 57. Historic breakthrough for Lesotho tourism

CW: breakthrough /noun/ ~ a productive insight; important discovery

C1: break (75 senses) /noun/ ~ an unexpected piece of good luck

C2: through (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ the entire extent

58. The Sehlabathebe National Park has exceptional features of distinct and spectacular mountain landscape scenery and a strong sense of wildness and desolation, a concentration of San rock art paintings, the historic cattle post, functional and pristine wetland, the African wild cat, white-tailed rat, the striped weasel, the maloti minnow fish and rainbow trout fish.

CW: landscape /noun/ ~ an expanse of scenery that can be seen in a single view

C1: land (18 senses) /noun/ ~ the territory occupied by a nation

C2: scape (2 senses) /noun/ ~ upright consisting of the vertical part of a column

CW: rainbow /noun/  $\sim$  an arc of coloured light in the sky caused by refraction of the sun's rays by rain

C1: rain (4 senses) /noun/ ~ water falling in drops from vapour condensed in the atmosphere

C2: bow (14 senses) /noun/~ something curved in shape

59. A lot of **groundwork** has been done, which includes the establishment of a Bilateral Steering Committee and National Coordination Committee but more still needs to be done in

terms of operating the park sustainably.

CW: groundwork /noun/ ~ preliminary preparation as a basis or foundation, fundamental

assumption from which something is begun or developed or calculated or explained

C1: ground (23 senses) /noun/ ~ a relation that provides the foundation for something

C2: work (34 senses) /noun/ ~ activity directed toward making or doing something

60. "We want the local communities to actively participate in the development of the

area while we also expect a certain percentage of proceeds generated by the park to go

towards community infrastructure development," Morojele said.

CW: infrastructure /noun/ ~ the stock of basic facilities and capital equipment needed for the

functioning of a country or area

C1: infra (1 sense) /adverb/ ~ below

C2: structure (6 senses) /noun/ ~ a complex entity constructed of many parts

61. The company also threatened to move the issue to a collection agency if Palmer didn't

cough up, with corresponding damage to her credit.

CW: cough up /verb/ ~ give reluctantly

C1: cough (2 senses) /verb/ ~ exhale reluctantly

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ nearer to the speaker

62. Kleargear seems to have lost this one by **overreaching** 

CW: overreaching /verb/ ~ fail by aiming too high or trying too hard

C1: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ beyond the top

C2: reaching (11 senses) /verb/ ~ to extend as far as

63. Its attempt to quash one very minor piece of bad publicity brought down a torrent of unflattering media coverage, and the company felt compelled to take the terms down from its website

CW: website /noun/ ~ a computer connected to the internet that maintains a series of web pages on the World Wide Web

C1: web (8 senses) /noun/ ~ an intricate network suggesting something that was formed by weaving or interweaving

C2: site (4 senses) /noun/ ~ physical position in relation to the surrounding

64. This isn't going to help it sell more **desktop** nap pillows.

CW: desktop /adjective/ ~ screen background

C1: desk (1 sense) /noun/ ~ a piece of furniture with a writing surface and usually drawers or other compartments

C2: top (22 senses) /noun/ ~ the upper part of anything

65. It was he who studied human behaviour by observing hand movements, habit and overall behaviour when using a smartphone.

CW: overall /adjective/ ~including everything

C1: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ throughout an area

C2: all (3 senses) /adverb/ ~ to a complete degree or to the full or entire extent

66. On the benches outside the pub **overlooking** the cricket greens at Harare Sports Club, they hunch over laptops, selling ideas as diverse as how to sell cattle and how to help urban dwellers cook traditional meals.

CW: overlooking /verb/ ~ dominating

C1: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ throughout the entire area

C2: looking (13 senses) /verb/ ~ take charge of or deal with

67. "We have created a launch pad for these entrepreneurs, enabling them to accelerate their start-ups to a level where they can make revenue," Makani says.

CW: start-ups /noun/ ~ the act of starting a new operation or practice, the act of setting in operation

C1: start (22 senses) /verb/ ~ take the first steps in carrying out an action

C2: ups (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ out, off ground

68. Each animal you choose and buy can be ear tagged, branded, entered into a national database, kept at one of our partner farms, looked after."

CW: database /noun / ~ an organized body of related information

C1: data (2 senses) /noun/ ~ collection of facts from which conclusions may be drawn

C2: base (30 senses) /noun/ ~ the fundamental assumptions from which something is begun and developed or calculated or explained

69. "Initially, we focused on pure innovation in terms of technology and utility, but this has evolved into a more practical approach where strong market potential **overrides** technology that is used just for the sake of using cool technology," Makani says.

CW: overrides /verb/ ~ prevail over

C1: over (7 senses) /adjective/ ~ beyond or throughout

C2: rides (16 senses) /verb/ ~ continue undisturbed or without interference

70. "As She-hive, our **mandate** is to end domestic violence by breaking the silence and urging victims to seek help."

CW: mandate /noun/ ~ a document giving an official instruction or command

C1: man (14 senses) /verb/ ~ provide with workers

C2: date (13 senses) /noun/ ~ a meeting arranged in advance

71. But Malebane, 59, likened her married years to "living hell" — a **nightmare** that caused her pain and left her with scars and a series of chronic diseases.

CW: nightmare /noun/ ~ a situation resembling a terrifying dream

C1: night (8 senses) /noun/ ~ darkness

C2: mare (2 senses) /noun/ ~ a dark region of considerable extent on the surface of the moon

72. "It was not a healthy arrangement because the violence just got out of hand.

CW: out-of-hand /adverb/ ~ out of control

C1: out (17 senses) /adverb/  $\sim$  from one's possession

C2: (of) hand (16 senses) /verb/ ~ guide or conduct

73. "I moved out because our children were also caught-up in the violence.

CW: caught-up /adjective/ ~ having become involved involuntarily

C1: caught (29 senses) /verb/ ~ to hook or entangle

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ to a higher intensity

74. "I thought if **step-parents** were to be involved in their lives, they would be in a worse predicament."

CW: step-parents /noun/ ~ the spouse of your parent by a subsequent marriage

C1: step (21 senses) /verb/ ~ place in a former position

C2: parents (3 senses) /noun/ ~ an organism from which younger ones are obtained

75. It is not an easy task, according to the **chairperson** of the Maseru Senior Women Citizens Association, 'Makarabo Makhakhe.

CW: chairperson /noun/ ~ an officer who preside

C1: chair (7 senses) /verb/ ~ lead

C2: person (3 senses) /noun/ ~ a human being

76. Cases of **grandparents** who are struggling to look after their orphaned grandchildren may not be a new story.

CW: grandparents /noun/ ~ parent of your father or mother

C1: grand (10 senses) /adjective/ ~ of behaviour that is impressive and ambitious in scale and scope

C2: parents (3 senses) /noun/ ~ an organism from which younger ones are obtained

77. However, after the death of her father, she was taken-in by a neighbour in Thetsane,

while her sister left to look for a job.

CW: taken-in /verb/ ~ express willingness to have in one's home or environs

C1: taken (42 senses) /verb/ ~ admit into a group or community

C2: in (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ to or toward the inside of

78. Maqutu explained previous efforts to boost tourist arrivals had been hampered by

moving away from, "our strong internationally accepted tag-line of the 'Kingdom in the Sky'

moniker" which he said may not have been a good move.

CW: tagline /noun/ ~ laugh line, the point of a joke or humorous story

C1: tag (10 senses) /noun/ ~ a label associated with something for the purpose of

identification

C2: line (36 senses) /noun/ ~ a mark on the surface

79. Maqutu also explained that the country's challenging environment for lovers of

adventure, was another standalone tourism feature, particularly for backpackers and those

who seek to enjoy the mountain trails.

CW: standalone /adjective/ ~ capable of operating independently

C1: stand (24 senses) /noun/ ~ a mental position from which things are viewed

C2: alone (6 senses) /adjective/ ~ exclusive of anyone or anything else

80. The stunning Angora goats, which appear to pause and show-off their chihuahua-like

facial features to visitors, are also another interesting feature on the Lesotho's undulating

landscape.

CW: show-off /verb/ ~ display proudly, act ostentatiously or pretentiously

C1: show (16 senses) /verb/ ~ make visible or noticeable

C2: off (9 senses) /adverb/ ~ from a particular thing or place or position

81. We see this through the South African tour operators daily come into Lesotho with

droves of tourists while our private sector operators remain as just on-lookers as their

neighbours reap the handsome economic rewards.

CW: on-lookers /noun/ ~ someone who looks on

C1: on (5 senses) /adjective/ ~ in operation or operational

C2: lookers (2 senses) /noun/ ~ witness, a close observer

CW: handsome /adjective/ ~ given or giving freely

C1: hand (16 senses) /verb/ ~ give

C2: some (5 senses) /adjective/ ~ of quantities

136

82. "We are now more inclined to **streamlining** our operations as seen by the merging of the strategic marketing and the investment promotion departments.

CW: streamlining /verb/ ~ contour economically or efficiently; form features of complex structure

C1: stream (10 senses) /noun/ ~ continuous progress

C2: lining (10 senses) /verb/ ~ fill plentifully

83. **Spotlight** on abuse in families

CW: spotlight /noun/ ~ a focus of public attention

C1: spot (20 senses) /noun/ ~ an outstanding characteristic

C2: light (47 senses) /noun/ ~ public awareness

84. "Fearing the **aftermath** of the consequences, they do not want to get tested," he said.

CW: aftermath /noun/ ~ the outcome of an event especially as relative to an individual

C1: after (3 senses) /adjective/ ~ happening at the time subsequent to a reference time

C2: math (1 sense) /noun/ ~ a science dealing with the logic of quantity and shape and arrangement

85. It had never been this unemployed rural couple's plan to have so many children but because of the need to secure the family name through a male offspring, 'Makatiso had continued falling pregnant with the persistence finally paying off at the eighth attempt.

CW: offspring /noun/ ~ the immediate descendents of a person

C1: off (9 senses) /adverb/ ~ no longer on or in contact or attached

C2: spring (11 senses) /verb/ ~ develop into a distinctive entity

CW: paying-off/verb/ ~ do or give something to somebody in return

C1: paying (13 senses) /verb/ ~ make up

C2: off (9 senses) /adverb/ ~ from a particular thing or place or position

86. Tell me how I am going to support this **newborn** alone.

CW: newborn /noun/ ~ a baby from birth to four weeks

C1: new (12 senses) /adjective/ ~ original and of a kind not seen before

C2: born (15 senses) /adjective/ ~ brought into existence

87. Large numbers of those affected by HIV and Aids, she said, would mean large spending in the health sector while high crime incidence would also mean big **budgets** for the police, the judiciary and correctional service.

CW: budgets /noun/ ~ a summary of intended expenditure along with proposals on how to meet them

C1: bud (4 senses) /verb/ ~ start to grow or develop

C2: gets (37 senses) /verb/ ~ acquire as a result of some effort or action

88. "We are at the cross-roads and the route we opt for would determine the future of this

country

CW: cross-roads /noun/ ~ a crisis situation or point in time when a critical decision must be

made

C1: cross (16 senses) /noun/ ~ any affliction that causes suffering

C2: roads (3 senses) /noun/ ~ a way or means to achieve of something

"We also need to financially strengthen the current youth development programmes 89.

to make them more responsive to challenges, beef-up the numbers of youth development

officers in the districts and at the same time, amend the National Youth Policy of 2003 to

bring it **in-line** with current demands."

CW: beef-up /verb/ ~ make strong or stronger

C1: beef (4 senses) /verb/ ~ complain

C2: up (14 senses) /adjective/ ~ getting higher or more vigorous

CW: in-line /adverb/ ~ one behind another in a line or queue, be next in a line of succession

C1: in (7 senses) /adjective/ ~ directed or bound inward

C2: line (36 senses) /noun/ ~ a formation of people or things on behind another

139

90. We have established **greenhouses** at the districts resource centres of Berea, Qacha's Nek, Quthing, Mafeteng and Mokhotlong.

CW: greenhouse /noun/ ~ a building with glass walls and roof for the cultivation and exhibition of plants under controlled conditions

C1: green (14 senses) /noun/ ~ an area of closely cropped grass surrounding the hole of a golf course

C2: house (14 senses) /verb/ ~ contain or cover

91. A mere child who still needed parental guidance when her life turned **upside-down**, Semoko recalls events of those "painful" years with such clarity they appear as if they only happened yesterday, not 65 years ago.

CW: upside-down /adjective/ ~ being in such a position that top and down are reversed, confused stage

C1: upside (1 sense) /noun/ ~ the highest or uppermost side of things

C2: down (26 senses) /adverb/ ~ spatially or metaphorically from a higher to a lower level or person

92. Semoko claims for two weeks she was **locked-up** in the bedroom and, each day her abductor would try to convince her to marry him.

CW: locked-up /verb/ ~ place in a place where something cannot be removed or somebody cannot escape

C1: locked (9 senses) /verb/ ~ hold in

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ nearer to the speaker

93. Our customs do not interpret marriage as something that can be forced or be imposed on any person but that which is **born out** of mutual agreement."

CW: born out /verb/ ~ support with evidence or authority or make more certain or confirm

C1: born (16 senses) /verb/ ~ bring forth, support

C2: out (17 senses) /adverb/ ~ away from one's possession

94. The practice robs the woman of her dignity, pride and essential life elements that fulfil and make her a **wholesome** human being."

CW: wholesome /adjective/ ~ conducive to or characteristic of physical or moral well-being

C1: whole (8 senses) /adjective/ ~ including all components without exception

C2: some (5 senses) /adjective/ ~ of quantities

95. However, Ntene said her office is conducting awareness campaigns in various districts and she hopes such programmes would help **root out** social ills usually disguised as Basotho traditions, morals and values.

CW: root out /verb/ ~ destroy completely, as if down to roots

C1: root (14 senses) /noun/ ~ the place where something begins

C2: out (17 senses) /adjective/ ~ not allowed to continue

96. Crackdown on illegal clinics looms

CW: crackdown /noun/ ~ severely repressive actions

C1: crack (24 senses) /verb/ ~ make a very explosive sound

C2: down (26 senses) /adjective/ ~ being or moving lower in position or less in some value

97. MASERU — Three women sit outside a run-down "surgery" in Thibella, a poor working-class suburb notorious for running illegal shebeens, awaiting their turn to get into the "consultation room".

CW: run-down /adjective/ ~ worn and broken down by hard use

C1: run (57 senses) /verb/ ~ be operating or functioning

C2: down (26 senses) /adjective/ ~ being or moving lower in position or less in some value

98. Welcome to 'Mabatho Clinic, one of the many illegal clinics that have **mushroomed** in Maseru.

CW: mushroomed /verb/ ~ grow and spread fast

C1: mush (6 senses) /noun/ ~ any soft or soggy mass

C2: roomed (1 sense) /verb/ ~ live in

99. The Ministry of Health **spokesman** says the ministry fears clinics such as 'Mabatho are putting the health of clients at risk.

CW: spokesman /noun/ ~ a male advocate who represents someone else's policy or purpose

C1: spokes (7 senses) /verb/ ~ express in speech

C2: man (11 senses) /noun/ ~ the generic word used to refer to any human being

100. The project will support **tie-ups** with external investment promotion agencies and the Basotho Diaspora for business development.

CW: tie-ups /noun/ ~ a social or business relationship

C1: tie (18 senses) /verb/ ~ create social or emotional bond

C2: ups (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ nearer to the speaker

101. In addition, the implementation of targeted programmes I referred to earlier on would strengthen backward linkages and facilitate **spill-over** in-terms of skills and technology transfer from foreign firms to local SMEs.

CW: spill-over /noun/ ~ any indirect effect of public expenditure

C1: spill (10 senses) /verb/ ~ cause or allow to flow or run out or over

C2: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ beyond the top

102. Yes, the first design was rather ambitious as it did not take into consideration institutional capacities of implementing agencies as well as realistic **timeframes** for legislative and administrative reforms.

CW: timeframes / noun/ ~ a time period during which something occurs or is expected to occur

C1: time (15 senses) /noun/ ~ a period of time considered as a resource under your control and sufficient to accomplish something

C2: frame (17 senses) /noun/ ~ a system of assumptions and standards that sanction behaviour and give it meaning

103. So this time around, how are you going to ensure you **overcome** these challenges?

CW: overcome /verb/ ~ win a victory over, get on top of

C1: over (7 senses) /adjective/ ~ having come or been brought to a conclusion, get on top of

C2: come (22 senses) /verb/ ~ reach

104. The new project is designed to **scale-up** this initiative by expanding to new areas and strengthening the capacity of local on-farm technical support services.

CW: scale-up /verb/ increase proportionally

C1: scale (18 senses) /verb/ ~ size or measure according to a scale

C2: up (14 senses) / adverb/ ~ raise

105. It will also support the downstream activities beginning in 2016.

CW: downstream /adjective/ ~ away from the source or with the current

C1: down (26 senses) /adjective/ ~ lower in rank

C2: stream (10 senses) /noun/ ~ continuous progression

106. We feel that an array of strategies could be used to achieve this and a few areas to mention that needs re-development are Hoohlo, Thibella and Seapoint. They need a serious facelift."

CW: facelift /noun/ ~ a renovation that improves the outward appearance (as of a building)

C1: face (22 senses) /noun/ ~ the general appearance of something

C2: lift (36 senses) /verb/ ~ raise in rank or condition

107. The M568 million contract was **bankrolled** by the Millennium Challenge Account-Lesotho (MCA).

CW: bankrolled /verb/ ~ provide with sufficient funds; finance

C1: bank (18 senses) /noun/ ~ a building in which the business of banking transacted

C2: rolled (33 senses) /verb/ ~ move by turning over

108. Public Service and Administration Deputy Minister Ayanda Dlodlo is also blacklisted

for VIP Consulting Engineers' bungling of a R5.2m contract to build toilets in Etwatwa,

Ekurhuleni.

CW: blacklisted /verb/ ~ put on a list of people who are out of favour

C1: black (22 senses) /adjective/ ~ deserving or bringing disgrace or shame

C2: listed (6 senses) /verb/ ~ enumerate

109. Former premier Cassel Mathale and his roads and transport MEC, Pitsi Moloto, not

only ignored Madonsela's recommendations but also sparked a public outcry when Letebele

resigned.

CW: outcry /noun/ ~ a loud utterance often in protest or opposition

C1: out (17 senses) /verb/ ~ be made known

C2: cry (1 sense) /verb/ ~ demand immediate action

*110*. The provincial task team (PTT) brought change in certain areas, although there were

more challenges that overshadowed their successes to date, the African National Congress in

Limpopo said in a statement.

CW: overshadowed /verb/ ~ make appear small by comparison

C1: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ throughout

C2: shadowed (12 senses) /verb/ ~ to dominate with pervasive presence

146

*111*. The committee had set itself a deadline of April to complete its work, but would not be

"mechanical" about meeting this deadline, Tau said.

CW: deadline /noun/ ~ the point in time at which something must be completed

C1: dead (21 senses) /adjective/ ~ complete

C2: line (36 senses) /noun/ ~ a conceptual separation or distinction

*112*. Tau told journalists in Cape Town that the multiparty committee – and the NCOP –

would not "rubber-stamp" the bill, but would invite submissions from interested parties

during its deliberations.

CW: rubber-stamp /verb/ ~ approve automatically

C1: rubber (7 senses) /verb/ ~ erase

C2: stamp (18 senses) /noun/ ~ impression

*113*. Asked why urban residents would be sidelined, Tau said the debate about the bill had

been dominated by "elites".

CW: sidelined /verb/ ~ remove from the centre of activity or attention or place into an inferior

position

C1: side (14 senses) /adjective/ ~ locate away from the central position

C2: lined (36 senses) /noun/ ~ acting in conformity

147

114. The recent proposals also threatened an **about-turn** in South Africa from the rule of law, towards authoritarian attitudes of the past.

CW: about-turn /noun/ ~ the act of pivoting 180 degree, especially in a military formation

C1: about (8 senses) /adjective/ ~ on the move

C2: turn (38 senses) /noun/ ~ a movement in a new direction

115. In the provincial **breakdown** of marks, Gauteng had the highest pass rate at 83.9 percent, a 2.8 percent increase from its 2011 result.

CW: breakdown /noun/ ~ an analysis into mutually exclusive categories

C1: break (75 senses) /verb/ ~ vary or interrupt a uniformity or continuity

C2: down (26 senses) /adverb/ ~ away from a more central place

116. Similarly, the economy as a whole has depended too much on stoking consumer demand and not enough on increasing supply by way of investment, resulting in terrible bottlenecks that have left Brazil at a standstill.

CW: bottlenecks /noun/ ~ constriction

C1: bottle (5 senses) /noun/ ~ a glass or vessel for storing with a narrow ending toward the top

C2: neck (6 senses) /noun/ ~ narrowed part of a container

CW: standstill /noun/ ~ a situation in which no progress can be made or no advancement is possible

C1: stand (24 senses) /noun/ ~ an interruption of normal activity

C2: still (18 senses) /adjective/ ~ not in physical motion

117. They said that for Brazil to break out of its current **logjam** of annual growth rates below 3 percent, President Dilma Rousseff's government would have to take bolder – and more difficult – steps to improve infrastructure and create a better investment climate.

CW: logjam /noun/ ~ any stoppage attributable to unusual activity

C1: log (7 senses) /noun/ ~ a segment of the trunk of a tree when stripped of branches

C2: jam (11 senses) /verb/ ~ block

118. "The next challenge now is productivity," Meirelles said. "Some say Brazil will never (tackle) that, (but) I think it will. It's not something that takes place **overnight**."

CW: overnight /adverb/ ~ happening in a short time or with great speed

C1: over (7 senses) adjective/ ~ having come or brought to a conclusion

C2: night (8 senses) /noun/ ~ time unit

119. Many economists said the bearish investment trend, more than any other single factor, caused them to slash their growth **forecasts** after the data were released.

CW: forecasts /noun/ ~ a prediction on about how something will develop

C1: fore (3 senses) /adjective/ ~ front part

C2: casts (20 senses) /verb/ ~ formulate in a particular style or language

120. And speakers generally **downplayed** the effect of the currency's 16 percent depreciation against the dollar since March, saying it was helpful but not a game changer.

CW: downplayed /verb/ ~ represent as less significant or important

C1: down (26 senses) /adverb/ ~ lower in rank

C2: played (36 senses) /verb/ ~ act or have effect in a specified way or with a specific effect or outcome

121. In April, the ANC pulled the plug on motor-mouth Youth League president Julius Malema.

CW: motor-mouth /noun/ ~ someone who talks incessantly

C1: motor (5 senses) /noun/ ~ a nonspecific agent that imparts motion

C2: mouth (11 senses) /noun/ ~ a spokesperson (as a lawyer)

122. The Western Cape was a **hotspot** for service delivery protests this year

CW: hotspot /noun/ ~ a place of political unrest and potential violence

C1: hot (21senses) /adjective/ ~ characterized by violent and forceful activity or movement, very intense

C2: spot (20 senses) /noun/ ~ situation

123. President Jacob Zuma pledged that the ANC would take "urgent and practical" steps to restore its "core values, stamp out factionalism and promote political discipline".

CW: stamp-out /verb/ ~ end or extinguish by forceful means

C1: stamp (18 senses) /verb/ ~ destroy or extinguish as if by stamping with the foot

C2: out (17 senses) /adverb/ ~ away from the central position

124. The film is shot through with lines of Jonker's poetry, which seems a fitting **showcase** to her talent.

CW: showcase /noun/ ~ a setting in which something can be displayed to best effect

C1: show (16 senses) /noun/ ~ something intended to communicate a particular impression

C2: case (22 senses) /noun/ ~ a special set of circumstances

125. Despite being one of the poorest provinces with high infrastructure **backlogs**, it has the highest retention rate in the country of pupils between Grade 10 and Grade 12.

CW: backlogs /noun/ ~ an accumulation of jobs not done or materials nor processed that are yet to deal with

C1: back (28 senses) /adjective/ ~ of an earlier date

C2: logs (7 senses) /noun/ ~ a written record of messages sent or received

126. Perhaps we should fix the pass rate at a target of 75 percent, and emphasise annually improving targets for reducing **dropout**, while the pass rate remains constant.

CW: dropout /noun/ ~ someone who quits school before graduation

C1: drop (32 senses) verb/ ~ terminate an association with

C2: out (17 senses) /adverb/ ~ away from the central position or northerly place

127. It's like having to come out over and over again.

CW: come out /verb/ to state openly and publicly one's homosexuality

C1: come (22 senses) /verb/ ~ issue forth

C2: out (17 senses) /verb/ ~ reveal, be made known

128. What happens if you fall out with your donor?

CW: fall out /verb/ ~ have a breach in relation

C1: fall (44 senses) /verb/ ~ issue

C2: out  $(17 \text{ senses}) / \text{verb} / \sim \text{reveal}$ 

129. Or if you split up?

CW: split up /verb/ ~ get a divorce, formally terminate a marriage

C1: split (19 senses) /verb/ ~ discontinue an association

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ to a later time

130. In 2009, Stephen Scott, director of research at the UK National Academy for Parenting, found himself drawn into a controversy when he told the think-tank Demos that

"lesbians make better parents than a man and a woman".

CW: think-tank /noun/ ~ a company that does research for hire and issues reports on the

implications

C1: think (14 senses) /verb/ ~ use or exercise the mind or one's power of reason in order to

make inferences, decisions or arrive at a solution or judgement

C2: tank (8 senses) /noun/ ~ a large vessel for storing

131. It's the anti-thesis of what one would expect a photographer to demand.

CW: antithesis /noun/ ~ exact opposite, the juxtaposition of contrasting words or ideas to give

a feeling of balance

C1: anti (2 senses) /noun/ ~ a person who is opposed

C2: thesis (2 senses) /noun/ ~ an unproved statement put forward as a premise in an argument

132. You could argue that his images of impoverished subjects satiate **stereotypical** notions

of Africa.

CW: stereotypical /adjective/ ~ lacking spontaneity or originality or individuality

C1: stereo (3 senses) /noun/ ~ reproducer

C2: typical (3 senses) /adjective/ ~ conforming to a type

*133*. However, Mthethwa employs a number of devices to foreground the inventive ways in

which they respond to difficult circumstances.

CW: foreground /verb/ ~ highlight to make more visible or prominent

C1: fore (3 senses) adjective/ ~ front part

C2: ground (19 senses) /noun/ ~ a rational motive for a belief or action

*134*. With a focus on subjects inside their makeshift homes, the series was

dubbed Interiors.

CW: makeshift /noun/ ~ something contrived to meet an urgent need or emergency, made or

done using whatever available

C1: make (51 senses) /verb/ ~ create or manufacture a man-made product

C2: shift (23 senses) /noun/ ~ the act of changing one thing or position for another

135. This has manifested in a brand of art in which the artists figure themselves in

photographic images, where they are adorned in outfits that confuse and deflect their

identity.

CW: outfits /noun/ ~ a set of clothing

C1: out (17 senses) /adjective/ ~ external

C2: fits (16 senses) /verb/ ~ provide with something usually for a specific purpose

154

136. Mthethwa's interest in the informal and spontaneous uniforms that emerge from

particular groups of people underpinned the Sugar Cane and Brick Ladies series, portraits

of women who reclaim disused bricks.

CW: underpinned /verb/ ~ support with evidence or authority or make more certain or

confirm

C1: under (10 senses) /adverb/ ~ into a state of subordination or subjugation

C2: pinned (15 senses) /verb/ ~ attach and fasten

137. Each photographic series he undertakes features individuals in similar

circumstances, and most often they are manual labourers.

CW: undertakes /verb/ ~ enter upon an activity

C1: under (10 senses) /adjective/ ~ below

C2: takes (44 senses) /verb/ ~ admit into a group or community

138. It's a device to **underscore** their status within a community, he says.

CW: underscore /verb/ ~ give extra weight to (a communication)

C1: under (10 senses) /adverb/ ~ further down

C2: score (18 senses) /verb/ ~ assign a grade

139. Alliance partners need an overhaul.

CW: overhaul /noun/ ~ the act of improving by renewing and restoring

C1: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ throughout the area

C2: haul (4 senses) /verb/ ~ the act of drawing

140. It also serves as a warning to those in the ANC who thought they could stage comebacks after the Mangaung conference through a youth league that was about to get a

CW: comebacks /noun/ ~ return by a celebrity to some previously successful activity

C1: come (22 senses) /verb/ ~ move forward

facelift.

C2: backs (19 senses) /noun/ ~ counter clockwise direction

141. More so Zuma, and many of his acolytes, were all too aware of the **flip-flop** politics of the league as many of its remaining leaders sought to re-engineer their survival after Mangaung.

CW: flip-flop /noun/ ~ a decision to reverse an earlier decision

C1: flip (13 senses) /verb/ ~ turn upside down,

C2: flop (9 senses) /noun/ ~ total failure

142. The league found Masoga guilty of "grave and serious" offences after he fell out with his **erstwhile** comrades in the league.

CW: erstwhile /adjective/ ~ belonging to some prior time

C1: erst (1 sense) /adverb/ ~ at a previous time

C2: while (1 sense) /noun/ ~ a period of indeterminate length

143. In 2011, Gauteng youth league leader Lebogang Maile did a Lungisa and also fell on

his sword, retreating from contesting Malema after reportedly taking advice from ANC

Gauteng chairman Paul Mashatile, who warned against going toe to toe with Malema.

CW: toe to toe /adverb/ ~ in close combat or at close quarters

C1: toe (9 senses) /noun/ ~ one of the digits of the foot

C2: (to) toe (9 senses) /adverb/ ~ to one of the digits of the foot

144. It seems the conflict in Syria may break into a full-blown war.

CW: full-blown /adjective/ ~ having or displaying all the characteristics necessary for

completeness

C1: full (13 senses) /adverb/ ~ entirely

C2: blown (22 senses) /verb/ ~ cause to be revealed

145. There are blissfully happy couples out there whose union defies simple analysis: the

clever can marry the stupid, the wealthy hitch up with the poverty-stricken and beauties live

happily ever after with beasts (the dazzling Cate Blanchett and her homely-looking hubby

Andrew Upton come to mind).

CW: hitch up /verb/ ~ pull up

C1: hitch (12 senses) /verb/ ~ connect to

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ nearer to the speaker

146. The numbers applying for the second language course far outstripped those of the mother-tongue course, with the university seeing 300 students registering at the Durban campus, between 150 and 200 at Pietermaritzburg and a further 150 at the Westville Campus per semester, Mathonsi said.

CW: mother-tongue /noun/  $\sim$  one's native language, the language learned by children and passed from one generation to the next

C1: mother (7 senses) /noun/ ~ a woman who has given birth to a child

C2: tongue (10 senses) /noun/ ~ a human written or spoken language by a community

147. Even though the debt went back many years, the institution did not write off student debt and held on to student records.

CW: write off /verb/ ~ concede the loss or cancel the debt

C1: write (10 senses) /verb/ ~ communicate in writing

C2: off (9 senses) /adverb ~ away from

148. The overdue balances are **carried over** a period of two years from the last academic year of registration.

CW: carried over /verb/ ~ transfer form one time to the next

C1: carried (40 senses) /verb/ ~ be conveyed over

C2: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ at or to a point of intervening space

149. Thereafter the accounts are written off and handed over to a debt collector.

CW: handed over /verb/ ~ to surrender something or someone to another

C1: handed (3 senses) /verb/ ~ place in custody of

C2: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ at or to a point of intervening space

150. "The university continues to collect any **shortfall** throughout the year and does not permit a student to escalate their debt through a further year of registration.

CW: shortfall /noun/ ~ the property of being an amount by which something is less than expected or required

C1: short (23 senses) /adjective/ ~ less than the correct or legal or full amount often deliberately so

C2: fall (44 senses) /verb/ ~ a sudden sharp decrease in some quality

151. According to executive director of communication and marketing Gerda Kruger, they have a small percentage of **outstanding** debt and just more than 1 percent of fees raised in 2011 was outstanding by March last year.

CW: outstanding /adjective/ ~ owed as a debt

C1: out (17 senses) /adjective/ ~ from one's possession

C2: standing (4 senses) /verb/ ~ remain in force

152. Institutions such as the Walter Sisulu University have used the helping hand by the department. Spokeswoman for the university, Angela Church, said "longstanding debt has been taken care of in various ways".

CW: longstanding /adjective/ ~ having existed for a long time

C1: long (12 senses) /adverb/ ~ for an extended time

C2: standing (4 senses) /noun/ ~ social, professional, financial or reputation status

153. An emotional anorexic will indulge in constant low-grade put-downs of the spouse.

CW: put-downs /noun/ ~ a crushing remark

C1: put (10 senses) /verb/ ~ cause to be in a certain state

C2: downs (26 senses) /adjective/ ~ less in value

154. Anybody in a long-term relationship will recognise a few of these behaviours after the initial **honeymoon** period is over.

CW: honeymoon /noun/ ~ a holiday taken by a newly married couple

C1: honey (4 senses) /noun/ ~ a beloved person, used as an endearment

C2: moon (9 senses) /verb/ ~ be idle in a listless or dreamy way

155. The Opera is the **brainchild** of acclaimed local composer Bongani Ndodana-Breen and award-winning filmmaker Warren Wilensky.

CW: brainchild /noun/ ~ a product of your creative thinking and work

C1: brain (7 senses) /noun/ ~ mental ability

C2: child (4 senses) /noun/ ~ a member of a clan or tribe

156. From the original art works in the spacious lounges to the chic and innovative finishes, style, elegance and comfort are the watchwords.

CW: watchwords /noun/ ~ a slogan used to rally support for a cause

C1: watch (13 senses) / noun/ ~ a purposeful surveillance

C2: words (10 senses) / noun/ ~ promises

157. This would give Saracen a **foothold** in the resources-for-arms trade that characterised Executive Outcomes' military adventures in Angola and Sierra Leone among other trouble spots in the 1990s.

CW: foothold /noun/ ~ an initial accomplishment that opens the way for further developments

C1: foot (14 senses) /noun/ ~ base, foundation

C2: hold (35 senses) / verb/ ~ maintain

158. This should be the case with the rest of the assets because the private sector can help bring the much-needed capital and business expertise, while working with non-governmental

organisations can also ensure the provision of fundraising experience and conservation technical **know-how**," Mokuku said.

CW: know-how /noun/ ~ the technical knowledge and skill required to do something

C1: know (12 senses) /verb/ ~ have knowledge of status, situation, emotions or sensations

C2: how (7 senses) /adverb/~ in what way

The above section presented the data collected from a corpus of four newspapers, two from Lesotho and two from South Africa and has analysed it to reveal the meaning of an exocentric compound word in context. In addition, the analysis has presented the relevant sense per each constituent in the makeup of the stated compound word. The data for the present study showed varying structures of compound words, ranging from closed compound words such as *logjam*, open compound word such as *white wash*, hyphenated compound words such as *think-tank* and string-like compound words such as *state-of-the-art* structures. In support of these varying structures of compound words, Crystal (2003: 34) brushes away the question on structure of compound words by relating it to spelling and not to morphology. The author abridges this point by stating that compound constituents are simply associated with each other since it is much harder to pin down precisely their meanings in relation to each other.

#### 4.3. Data Analysis and Findings

This section analyses the data presented in the previous section, taking into consideration the relations between the compound constituents and the compound entities, as well as the patterns that exist within exocentric compound words. It also presents neologisms identified within the corpus together with their patterns.

#### 4.3.1. Relations between Compound Constituents and Compound Entities

Anderson (1992), Katamba (1993) and Bauer (2003) state that compound words provide names of entities, properties and actions; hence there may be classes of compound words consisting of compound nouns, compound verbs, compound adjectives and compound adverbs. This classification makes compound words enjoy independent status in the way simple lexemes do. Findings for this study also aligned with this observation that compound words are classified according to the role that they play in context. Scalise and Quevara (2006) and Gagne and Spalding (2006) affirm that classification and interpretation of words are derived from syntactic, semantic and pragmatic context of their use, or by direct instruction, as in, by reading or being told a definition or sometimes by analogy with similar words. As revealed earlier in this study, if compound words were not interpreted in context, many would be wrongly classified and misinterpreted because it is observed that when words are interpreted in usage, they possess 'chameleon behaviour' hence various relations. Thus a compound word that denotes an action may function as an agent or time reference.

With application of pragmatic theory, the following section presents relations that hold between constituents that make up compound words and the entities of the compound words that they appear in. The data presented in section 4.2 revealed that meanings of constituents interrelate and yield different meanings of a compound word which is different from that of constituents in isolation. Such an observation is highly appreciated in this study because if words would be used separately, it is inevitable that they would yield different meanings. But once the words are bound together to serve as one particular word class, there has to be a relation between them and what they are used to refer to. The present study aligns with Anderson's (1992: 294) statement that 'a newly formed compound word now occupies a new lexical category and so a new meaning'.

Bauer (1994) and Aronoff (1993) to mention just a few, interpreted relations between constituents that make up a compound word as being relations of: Condition, metaphor, position, time-reference, attribution, part-whole, type, property, location, topic, theme, temporal and beneficiary. The most recent study by Rallapalli and Soma (2012) add relations such as source-cause, purpose-topic, object-topic, cause-instrument, content-property and equative.

The present study has developed the relations to a significant extent. It is worth-noting that the relationship that hold between the constituents and the entity of an exocentric compound word in which they appear, does not radiate from the constituent that occupies the head position (as it is a case with endocentric compound words), but any other constituent irrespective of its position in the exocentric compound word may contribute considerably to the exocentric compound word meaning.

#### 1. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Transition

The constituents here hold transition relation. That is, they facilitate change of status or system, from one stage to another.

Table 2: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Transition

Relation	Compound Example
Transition	Undergo
	Stepping-up

In the exocentric compound word *undergo* "pass through", the first constituent *under* "through" relates to the verb reflected in the compound word as a whole in denoting movement from one point to another and the second constituent *go* "progress by being changed" also denotes movement. The two constituents brought together result into "that

which is transformed". Looking at sentence below, 240 men changed from the status of being

uncircumcised men to that of circumcised men.

Up to 240 men undergo circumcision at the Lesotho Planned Parenthood Association

Male Clinic in Maseru every month, a positive development showing more men now

realise the importance of **stepping-up** sexually transmitted diseases prevention efforts,

according to LPPA Programme Officer, Tefo Lepheana.

The exocentric compound word in this example can be analysed as follows:

CW: undergo /verb/ ~ pass through

C1: under (10 senses) /adverb/ ~ through

C2: go (35 senses) /verb/ ~ progress by being changed

Stepping-up as an exocentric compound word is analysable as shown below.

CW: stepping-up /verb/ ~ speed up

C1: stepping (10 senses) /verb/ ~ proceed or move as if by steps into a new situation

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ to a greater intensity

2. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-cause

Exocentric compound constituents in this category hold an action-cause relation as

exemplified in the examples below.

165

Table 3: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-cause

Relation	Compound Example
Action-cause	Enterprise
	Outline

The constituents in the compound words above show the relation of action-cause. That is, as first constituent *enter* in the exocentric compound word *enterprise*, denotes an activity of setting out on a mission, the second constituent *prise* denotes a cause which is 'making an uninvited or audacious inquiry'. This means the resultant expressed in the compound word as a whole follows from the inquiry denoted in the second constituent, which in turn facilitates the action denoted in the first constituent. Therefore the two constituents brought together relate to the entity of the whole compound word in the sense that they mirror an action and the cause reflected in the compound word as a whole.

a) But with their ambitions to make it in the poultry business bigger than their fears, the women have persistently refused to wilt with age while surmounting the enormous challenges that come with free enterprise.

The analysis of the exocentric compound word *enterprise* is as follows:

CW: enterprise /noun/ ~ a purposeful or industrious undertaking, especially one that requires effort or boldness

C1: enter (9 senses) /verb/ ~ set out on (an enterprise or subject of study)

C2: prise (3 senses) /verb/ ~ make an uninvited or presumptuous inquiry

b) Following an extensive consultative process with various stakeholders, the framework was able to also **outline** the minimum requirements and grading criteria.

The exocentric compound word outline can be analysed in the following manner:

CW: outline /verb/ ~ describe roughly or briefly or give the main points or summary of

C1: out (17 senses) /verb/ ~ reveal

C2: line (36 senses) /verb/ ~ make a mark

# 3. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Result-cause

The exocentric compound words in this category are formed from constituents that hold result-cause relation. That is, one constituent denotes a phenomenon that follows having been caused by some previous phenomenon while the other constituent denotes an entity that produces an effect or is responsible for events or results. Consider the examples below.

Table 4: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Result-cause

Relation	Compound example
Result-cause	Bigheaded
	Highlight
	Spotlight
	Blacklisted
	Bottle necks
	Logjam
	Cross-roads
	Outcry
	Paying off

Taking an exocentric compound word *logjam*, *log* denotes result of being blocked, while cause is reflected in the second constituent *jam*. Hence an entity of the whole compound word *logjam* is (any stoppage attributable to unusual activity). The same thing aspires even for the

other compound words under this relation. Note the subtle distinction between the constituent *light* in both *highlight* and *spotlight* denoting 'cause' even though it is in different situations as demonstrated in the senses.

a) They said that for Brazil to break out of its current **logjam** of annual growth rates below 3 percent, President Dilma Rousseff's government would have to take bolder – and more difficult – steps to improve infrastructure and create a better investment climate.

The exocentric compound word in this phrase is analysed as follows:

CW: logjam /noun/ ~ any stoppage attributable to unusual activity

C1: log (7 senses) /noun/ ~ a segment of the trunk of a tree when stripped of branches

C2: jam (11 senses) /verb/ ~ block

b)"I got smarter and **big headed** because DJ Sechaba was now known at national level".

In (b), the exocentric compound word big-headed is analysed in the following way.

CW: big headed /adjective/ ~ used colloquially to mean overly conceited or arrogant

C1: big (17 senses) /adjective/ ~ in a boastful manner

C2: headed (13 senses) /verb/ ~ be the first or leading member of a group and excel

c) The year 2004 was the **highlight** of his career.

*Highlight* as an exocentric compound word in (c) is analysed as follows:

CW: highlight /noun/ ~ the most interesting or memorable part

C1: high (18 senses) /adjective/ ~ standing above others in quality or position

C2: light (47 senses) / noun/ ~ a particular perceptive or aspect of a situation

#### d) **Spotlight** on abuse in families

The exocentric compound word *spotlight* in (d) can be analysed in the following manner.

CW: spotlight /noun/ ~ a focus of public attention

C1: spot (20 senses) /noun/ ~ an outstanding characteristic

C2: light (47 senses) /noun/ ~ public awareness

# 4. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Part-whole

The relation in this section was also reflected in Bauer's (1994) study where constituents were interpreted as contributing to the entity in part-whole relation. One constituent denotes something determined in relation to something that includes it or that which concerns a person with regard to a particular role or situation as shown in the following examples.

Table 5: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Part-whole

Relation	<b>Compound Example</b>
Part-whole	Counterparts
	Grandparents

In the exocentric compound word *counterparts* (a person or thing having same function or characteristics as another), the first constituent *counter* means indicating opposition, an aspect that is embedded in the entity referred to by the whole compound word while *part* relates to the entity in that it denotes something determined in relation to something that

includes it. That is, it is possible to realize something as 'part of' because there is existence of something which is a whole of that part.

a) The Maseru-based male clinic was established in 2007 after the LPPA realised most men were uncomfortable to queue for reproductive health services with their female counterparts.

Similarly, counterparts as an exocentric compound word in the above example is analysed as follows.

CW: counter-part /noun/ ~ a person or thing having same function or characteristics as another

C1: counter (13 senses) /adjective/ ~ indicating opposition or resistance

C2: part (19 senses) /noun/ ~ something determined in relation to something that includes it

b) Cases of grandparents who are struggling to look after their orphaned grandchildren may not be a new story.

The exocentric compound word *grandparents* above, has the following analysis.

CW: grandparents /noun/ ~ parent of your father or mother

C1: grand (10 senses) /adjective/ ~ of behaviour that is impressive and ambitious in scale and scope

C2: parents (3 senses) /noun/ ~ an organism from which younger ones are obtained

## 5. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Attribution

Data presented here revealed that constituents both assign some quality to an entity referred to by the whole compound. Consider the following examples.

Table 6: Constituent-Compound Entity Relation of Attribution

Relation	<b>Compound Example</b>
Attribution	Antithesis
	Reinforced
	Outright

In the exocentric compound word *reinforced* for example, the first constituent *rein* "control and direct with" denotes as aspect of strength because one may not control something if weak; the second constituent *forced* "to cause to do through pressure or necessity, by physical, moral or intellectual means" in the same manner denotes an aspect of strength. In this case, the constituents assign equally an attribute of strength towards the entity referred to by the exocentric compound word as a whole. Another example is an exocentric compound *anti-thesis* "exact opposite". The first constituent *anti* "a person who is opposed" denotes opposition reflected in the entity of the whole compound and *thesis* "an unproved statement put forward as a premise in an argument", even though not as conspicuously as the sister constituent, also denotes opposition because unapproved has both notions of proposition and opposition.

It is observed that the two relations of part-whole and attribution demonstrate a thin boundary. Both relations may be explained to possess some similar dimension of 'that' which is referred to in a compound word; however, the difference is that in the former relation, one

constituent hold part of what characterizes the entity. The latter relation accommodates

constituents that contribute equally in 'that' which makes the whole entity.

a) Recently, the health ministry **reinforced** its need to scale up circumcision by saying it

would introduce an optional infant circumcision in all hospitals.

Reinforced can be analysed as follows.

CW: reinforced /verb/ ~ strengthen and support with rewards

C1: rein (6 senses) /verb/ ~ control and direct with

C2: force (18 senses) /verb/ ~ to cause to do through pressure or necessity, by physical,

moral or intellectual means

b) We give a political balance sheet of a veteran politician who has been through thick

and thin of the pros and cons of Lesotho politics, Prime Minister Dr Thomas

Motsoahae Thabane, now the chief executive of the coalition government founded on

June 8, 2012 after a historic election of May 26 that had born no outright winner,

compelling contesting political parties to forge strategic alliances.

In example (b), the exocentric compound word *outright* can be analysed in the following

way.

CW: outright /adjective/~ without reservation or exception

C1: out (17 senses) /adjective/ ~ out of power, especially having been unsuccessful in

an election

172

C2: right (36 senses) /adjective/ ~ in or of satisfactory condition

c) It's the anti-thesis of what one would expect a photographer to demand.

The exocentric compound word *antithesis* is analysable as follows.

CW: antithesis /noun/ ~ exact opposite, the juxtaposition of contrasting words or ideas to give a feeling of balance

C1: anti (2 senses) /noun/ ~ a person who is opposed

C2: thesis (2 senses) /noun/ ~ an unproved statement put forward as a premise in an argument

## 6. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Purpose

The constituents here show the relation of purpose towards the entity referred to by the compound word as a whole as demonstrated in the following examples.

Table 7: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Purpose

Relation	<b>Compound Example</b>
Purpose	Outset
	Open-air
	Watch words
	War-cry

In the exocentric compound word *watchword*, the first constituent *watch* denotes a purposeful surveillance while the second constituent *words* denotes promises. The two facilitate the entity of rallying support reflected in the compound word as a whole.

a) From the original art works in the spacious lounges to the chic and innovative finishes, style, elegance and comfort are the watchwords.

CW: watchwords /noun/ ~ a slogan used to rally support for a cause

C1: watch (13 senses) / noun/ ~ a purposeful surveillance

C2: words (10 senses) / noun/ ~ promises

b) Avoid alcohol if you can: From the **outset** in 2006 Thabane has been thrashed from the right for his seeming condolence of alcohol abuse and applauded from the left for his presumed appreciation of the value of reasonable consumption of the product.

In the same light, the exocentric compound word *outset* in (b) is analysable in the following manner.

CW: outset /noun/ ~ the time at which something is supposed to begin

C1: out (17 senses) /adverb/ ~ moving or appearing to move away from a place

C2: set (45 senses)/verb/ ~ a relatively permanent inclination to react in a particular way

c) When he wasn't battling from the platform of another's party, Thabane made it a landmark point to read the Bible at the beginning of literally every one of the ABC's indoor conferences and **open-air** rallies.

In (d), the exocentric compound word *open-air* can be analysed as follows.

CW: open-air /adjective/ ~ in the open air

C1: open (36 senses) /adjective/ ~ in view of all, accessible to all

C2: air (15 senses) /verb/ ~ make public

#### 7. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Purpose-action

The compound constituents in this category have a relation of an anticipated outcome that is intended or that guides a planned action as illustrated in the examples below.

Table 8: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Purpose-action

Relation	Compound Example
Purpose-action	Tagline

In the exocentric compound word *tagline*, the first constituent *tag* "a label associated with something for the purpose of identification" serves a purpose of identification while the second constituent *line* denotes "something done". Combination of the two constituents yields the entity of "laugh line, the point of a joke or humorous story" in the compound word.

Maqutu explained previous efforts to boost tourist arrivals had been hampered by moving away from, "our strong internationally accepted **tag-line** of the 'Kingdom in the Sky' moniker" which he said may not have been a good move.

The exocentric compound word *tagline* is analysable as indicated.

CW: tagline /noun/ ~ laugh line, the point of a joke or humorous story

C1: tag (10 senses) /noun/ ~ a label associated with something for the purpose of identification

C2: line (36 senses) /noun/ ~ a mark on the surface

## 8. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Location-purpose

The constituents here relate to the entity in the exocentric compound in that the first constituent reflects the location while the second one justifies the existence of the location. Consider the following examples.

Table 9: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Location-purpose

Relation	Compound Example
Location-purpose	Households
	Foothold

In the exocentric compound *household*, *house* "a building in which something is sheltered or located" denotes location, while *hold* "containing something or having something within" denotes the purpose of a *house*, hence an entity of "a social unit living together" when the two constituents are brought together. Similarly, in the exocentric compound word foothold show same relation.

a) A mother-of-five, Jafeta said women should find ways to gain economic independence in order to contribute towards breaking the cycle of poverty experienced by many households not only in Mafeteng but throughout Lesotho.

CW: household /noun/ ~ a social unit living together

C1: house (14 senses) /adjective/ ~ a building in which something is sheltered or located

C2: hold (45) /verb/ ~ have within, contain

b) This would give Saracen a **foothold** in the resources-for-arms trade that characterised Executive Outcomes' military adventures in Angola and Sierra Leone among other trouble spots in the 1990s.

CW: foothold /noun/ ~ an initial accomplishment that opens the way for further developments

C1: foot (14 senses) /noun/ ~ base, foundation

C2: hold (35 senses) / verb/ ~ maintain

# 9. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Receiver-action

The constituents in this section relate to the entity of the compound word as a whole in such a way that one constituent marks the semantic role of the entity that is passively involved in the happening denoted by the verb in the compound word. Consider the following examples.

Table 10: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Receiver-action

Relation	<b>Compound Example</b>
Receiver-action	Landmark
	Backfired

In the exocentric compound word *landmark*, the first constituent *land* "the people who live in a nation or country" denotes the receiver of the action reflected in the compound word while the second constituent *mark* "the impression created by doing something usual or extraordinary that people notice and remember" denotes an action of that which is received by *land* meaning "people".

a) The Mafeteng Poultry Cooperative Society members have taken their initiative to a whole new level by establishing Lesotho's first chicken abattoir in a landmark development that will benefit the country's entire farming community

The exocentric compound word *landmark* is analysed as follows.

CW: landmark /noun/ ~ an event marking a unique or important historical change of course or one on which important development depends

C1: land (18 senses) /noun/ ~ the people who live in a nation or country

C2: mark (30 senses) /noun/ ~ the impression created by doing something usual or extraordinary that people notice and remembers

b) Thabane's political approach to try and sort out problems within the country's judiciary backfired and turned out to be interference in the independence of the courts.

In the above example *backfire* as an exocentric compound word is analysable as follows.

CW: backfired /verb/ ~ comes back to the originator of an action with an undesired effect

C1: back (28 senses) /adverb/ ~ in or to or toward an original condition

C2: fired (10 senses) /verb/ ~ went off or discharged

## 10. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-receiver

The constituents in this section relate to the entity of the compound word as a whole in such a way that one constituent marks the action denoted by the verb in the compound word while the second constituent denotes the semantic role of the entity that is passively involved in the happening. Consider the following example.

Table 11: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-receiver

Relation	<b>Compound Example</b>
Action-receiver	Stepping-stone

In the exocentric compound word *stepping stone*, the first constituent stepping "moves or proceed into a new situation" denotes an action of that which is received by *stone* meaning "a crystalline rock that can be cut and polished for jewellery".

While the local industry is slowly growing, I'm aiming the South African market because it is my stepping stone to go international.

Stepping stone in the example above is analysable as follows.

CW: stepping stone /noun/ ~ any means of advancement

C1: stepping (10 senses) /verb/ ~ moves or proceed into a new situation

C2: stone (16 senses) /noun/ ~ a crystalline rock that can be cut and polished for jewellery

## 11. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position

The constituents here reflect a particular portion of space occupied by the entity referred to by the compound word as a whole. Consider the following examples.

Table 12: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position

Relation	Compound Example
Position	Understand
	Down-to-earth
	Back-up
	Infrastructure
	Down stream
	Landscape
	Desktop
	In-line
	Facelift
	Backdrop

Looking at the first constituent in the compound *in-line*, it is observed that *in* denotes the inward position while the second constituent *line* at the same time also positions that which is talked about in the compound word. Again, in the exocentric compound word *backdrop*, *back* "related to or located at the back" denotes position in which that which is talked about in the compound word is in, while *drop* "a curtain that can be lowered and raised onto a stage from the flies" creates a notion of downward position.

a) "We also need to financially strengthen the current youth development programmes to make them more responsive to challenges, beef-up the numbers of youth development officers in the districts and at the same time, amend the National Youth Policy of 2003 to bring it **in-line** with current demands.

The analysis of the exocentric compound word *in-line* is as follows.

CW: in-line /adverb/ ~ one behind another in a line or queue, be next in a line of succession

C1: in (7 senses) /adjective/ ~ directed or bound inward

C2: line (36 senses) /noun/ ~ a formation of people or things one behind another

b) However, the process also came at the **backdrop** of an accommodation sector that had, for many decades, largely operated without any standard guidelines to follow in its tourist-experience offering.

Exocentric compound word *backdrop* is analysable in the following manner.

CW: backdrop (noun) ~ background, backcloth as scenery hung at back of stage

C1: back (28 senses) /adjective/ ~ related to or located at the back

C2: drop (32 senses) /noun/ ~ a curtain that can be lowered and raised onto a stage from the flies

c) We feel that an array of strategies could be used to achieve this and a few areas to mention that needs re-development are Hoohlo, Thibella and Seapoint. They need a serious facelift."

The exocentric compound word *facelift* can be analysed as follows.

CW: facelift /noun/ ~ a renovation that improves the outward appearance (as of a building)

C1: face (22 senses) /noun/ ~ the general appearance of something

C2: lift (36 senses) /verb/ ~ rise in rank or condition

d) MAFETENG- They have come a long way and understand the pain and joy that comes with being a mother, grandmother and mother-in-law.

In (d), the exocentric compound word *understand* is analysable as follows.

CW: understand /verb/ ~ know and comprehend the nature or meaning of

C1: under (10 senses) /adverb/ ~ in or into a state of subordination or subjugation

C2: stand (24 senses) /verb/ ~ be in some specified state or condition

e) Given his down-to-earth character and ability to maintain friendship, the boy from dusty Ha Abia on the outskirts of the city can mingle with town dwellers and rural dwellers and form friendship with anyone regardless of social status.

The exocentric compound word *down-to-earth* is analysed in the following manner.

CW: down-to-earth /adjective/ ~ sensible and practical

C1: down (26 senses) /adjective/ ~ being or moving lower in position

C2: (to) earth (9 senses) /noun/ ~ ground

f) "We want the local communities to actively participate in the development of the area while we also expect a certain percentage of proceeds generated by the park to go towards community infrastructure development," Morojele said.

The exocentric compound word *infrastructure* in (f) above can be analysed as follows.

CW: infrastructure /noun/ ~ the stock of basic facilities and capital equipment needed for the functioning of a country or area

C1: infra (1 sense) /adverb/ ~ below

C2: structure (6 senses) /noun/ ~ a complex entity constructed of many parts

# 12. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position-action

Data here demonstrate that the action perceived in the compound word takes place at a particular place as illustrated in the following examples.

Table 13: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position-action

Relation	Compound Example
Position-action	Foresee
	Groundwork
	Offspring
	Takeover
	Sidelined
	Breakdown
	Downplayed
	Dropout
	Foreground
	Website
	Underpinned
	Forecast
	Undertakes
	Underscore
	Undercover
	Write off
	Shortfall

In the exocentric compound word groundwork, the first constituent ground "a relation that

provides the foundation for something" denotes the position of the activity in the compound

word, which is "preparation stage" while the second constituent work denotes activity

directed toward making the preparations.

a)A lot of groundwork has been done, which includes the establishment of a Bilateral

Steering Committee and National Coordination Committee but more still needs to be

done in terms of operating the park sustainably.

The exocentric compound word groundwork above is analysed as follows.

CW: groundwork /noun/ ~ preliminary preparation as a basis or foundation,

fundamental assumption from which something is begun or developed or calculated or

explained

C1: ground (23 senses) /noun/ ~ a relation that provides the foundation for something

C2: work (34 senses) /noun/ ~ activity directed toward making or doing something

b) We foresee that eventually, as supply increases and the prices of smart devices fall,

more people will have access to these devices to be able to transact using our digital

channels."

In (b), exocentric compound word *foresee* is analysed in the following manner.

CW: foresee /verb/ ~ realise before hand

C1: fore (3 senses) /adverb/ ~ front part

C2: see (25 senses) /verb/ ~ perceive an idea or situation mentally

184

c) It had never been this unemployed rural couple's plan to have so many children but because of the need to secure the family name through a male **offspring**, 'Makatiso had continued falling pregnant with the persistence finally paying off at the eighth attempt.

The exocentric compound word offspring is given in the following analysis.

CW: offspring /noun/ ~ the immediate descendents of a person

C1: off (9 senses) /adverb/ ~ no longer on or in contact or attached

C2: spring (11 senses) /verb/ ~ develop into a distinctive entity

d)And speakers generally **downplayed** the effect of the currency's 16 percent depreciation against the dollar since March, saying it was helpful but not a game changer.

In (d), the exocentric compound word downplayed is analysed as follows.

CW: downplayed /verb/ ~ represent as less significant or important

C1: down (26 senses) /adverb/ ~ lower in rank

C2: played (36 senses) /verb/ ~ act or have effect in a specified way or with a specific effect or outcome

#### 13. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-position

What happens under this section is a turnabout of the relation of position-action. Thus, the first constituent reflects the action in the compound word while the second one marks the position on which that action takes place. Consider the examples below.

Table 14: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-position

Relation	Compound Example
Action-position	Takeover
	Tie-ups
	Breakdown
	Dropout
	Website
	Born out
	Write off

In the exocentric compound word *tie-ups*, *tie* denotes an action of "creating social or emotional bond) while *ups* denotes a notion of spatial relation of those who are in this relationship hence an entity of "a social or business relationship".

a) The project will support **tie-ups** with external investment promotion agencies and the Basotho Diaspora for business development.

The analysis of the exocentric compound word *tie-ups* is given below.

CW: tie-ups /noun/ ~ a social or business relationship

C1: tie (18 senses) /verb/ ~ create social or emotional bond

C2: ups (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ nearer to the speaker

b) Perhaps we should fix the pass rate at a target of 75 percent, and emphasise annually

improving targets for reducing **dropout**, while the pass rate remains constant.

The exocentric compound word *dropout* is analysed in the following manner.

CW: dropout /noun/ ~ someone who quits school before graduation

C1: drop (32 senses) verb/ ~ terminate an association with

C2: out (17 senses) /adverb/ ~ away from the central position or northerly place

c) Our customs do not interpret marriage as something that can be forced or be imposed

on any person but that which is **born out** of mutual agreement."

The exocentric compound word born out is analysable as follows.

CW: born out /verb/ ~ support with evidence or authority or make more certain or

confirm

C1: born (16 senses) /verb/ ~ bring forth

C2: out (17 senses) /adverb/ ~ away from one's possession

14. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-position

The relation here is that the first constituent demonstrates an active and efficient cause or that

which is capable of producing a certain effect. The second constituent denotes position

187

occupied by that which occupies a position. This can be exemplified using the following examples.

Table 15: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-position

Relation	Compound Example
Agent-position	Line up

In the exocentric compound *line-up*, the two constituents brought together reflect the entity of "a line of persons one after the other". Therefore the relation here is that of agent-position.

a) The line-up will also boast locals Painkiller, Trer, Atrax and Case-Closed.

CW: line-up /noun/ ~ a line of persons arranged in ranks

C1: line (36 senses) /noun/ ~ a formation of people or things one behind another

C2: up (14 senses) /adjective/ ~ being or moving higher in position or greater in some value

#### 15. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position-agent

The relation here is that the first constituent demonstrates a particular portion of space occupied by the entity referred to by the compound word as a whole while the second constituent demonstrates an active and efficient cause or that which is capable of producing a certain effect. The examples below illustrate this.

Table 16: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position-agent

Relation	Compound Example
Position-agent	On-lookers

For example, the first constituent *on* in the exocentric compound *on-lookers* denotes position occupied by people while the second constituent *lookers* denotes close observer.

We see this through the South African tour operators daily come into Lesotho with droves of tourists while our private sector operators remain as just **on-lookers** as their neighbours reap the handsome economic rewards.

CW: on-lookers /noun/ ~ someone who looks on

C1: on (5 senses) /adjective/ ~ in operation or operational

C2: lookers (2 senses) /noun/ ~ witness, a close observer

# 16. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Instrument-position

The relation that holds here is that of instrument-position. That is, one constituent denotes the instrument used as a means of carrying out an action embedded in the exocentric compound word while the other constituent denotes a condition the carrier of the action perceived in the compound word. The following example demonstrates this relation.

Table 17: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position-instrument

Relation	Compound Example
Instrument-position	Spear-headed

In the exocentric compound *spear-headed*, *spear* "a long pointed rod used as a tool or weapon" denotes the tough means of how the leading was carried out and the *headed* "be in charge" denotes the upfront standing of the person who carried out the action in the compound word.

The tenacity with which he **spearheaded** that September 1998 South Africa's military invasion, the scuppering of the all-party covenants, and the hounding of the real or perceived conspirators against the state and mutineers as well as the unremitting committal of these categories to lengthily imprisonment and to effective banishment from the public sphere, all speak to this profile.

CW: spearheaded /verb/ ~ lead

C1: spear (4 senses) /noun/ ~ a long pointed rod used as a tool or weapon

C2: headed (13 senses) /verb/ ~ be in charge of

#### 17. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Time

The constituents here demonstrate reference to time towards the event reflected in the compound word as demonstrated in the following examples.

Table 18: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Time

Relation	Compound Example
Time reference	Set up
	Overdue
	Overnight
	Erstwhile
	Nightmare

In the exocentric compound *erstwhile* "belonging to some prior time" *esrt* "at a previous time" and *while* "a period of indeterminate length" denotes instances or single occasion for some event at a previous time.

a) The league found Masoga guilty of "grave and serious" offences after he fell out with his erstwhile comrades in the league.

The exocentric compound word *erstwhile* in the above example can be analysed in the following manner.

CW: erstwhile /adjective/ ~ belonging to some prior time

C1: erst (1 sense) /adverb/ ~ at a previous time

C2: while (1 sense) /noun/ ~ a period of indeterminate length

b) Following weeks of planning and obviously sleepless night, the women this week saw yet another dream come true following the establishment of their own poultry abattoir in Mafeteng—the first-ever such business to be **set-up** in Lesotho.

The analysis of *set-up* as an exocentric compound word is as follows.

CW: set-up /verb/ ~ gets ready for a particular purpose or event

C1: set (45 senses) /verb/ ~ make ready or suitable or equip in advance for a particular purpose or for some use, event

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ to a later time

c) The grading process was long **overdue** because global hospitality trends demanded we took the grading route for the sector to survive and grow.

The exocentric compound word *overdue* in the above example is analysed in the following way.

CW: overdue /adjective/ ~ past due, not paid at the scheduled time

C1: over (7 senses) /adjective/ ~ complete

C2: due (7 senses) /noun/ ~ that which is deserved or owed

d) "The next challenge now is productivity," Meirelles said. "Some say Brazil will never (tackle) that, (but) I think it will. It's not something that takes place **overnight**."

In (d), overnight as an exocentric compound word is analysed as follows.

CW: overnight /adverb/ ~ happening in a short time or with great speed

C1: over (7 senses) adjective/ ~ having come or brought to a conclusion

C2: night (8 senses) /noun/ ~ time unit

### 18. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Time-place

The constituents here show the relation of time-place as the example below.

Table 19: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Time-place

Relation	Compound Example
Time-place	After-world

In the exocentric compound word *after-world*, the first constituent, *after*, denotes an instance of happening at the time subsequent to a reference time while *world* denotes any area set aside for a particular purpose as shown in the sense of the constituent *world* "the concerns of this life as distinguished from heaven and the afterlife".

'Mamolise Letsa, one of the Mafeteng Poultry Cooperative Society members, said the last time she visited her husband in 1997, she almost joined her ancestors in the after-world.

The exocentric compound word in the above example is analysed as follows.

CW: after-world /noun/ ~ the place where you are after you die

C1: after (3 senses) /adjective/ ~ happening at the time subsequent to a reference time

C2: world (9 senses) /noun/ ~ the concerns of this life as distinguished from heaven and the afterlife

#### 19. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Time-action

The constituents demonstrate the relation of time-action as demonstrated in the example below.

Table 20: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Time-action

Relation	Compound Example
Time-action	Backlogs

In the exocentric compound *backlogs*, the first constituent *back* denotes an instance or single occasion for some event of 'an earlier date' while the second constituent *logs* denotes the trait of being active which is 'recording or receiving messages'.

Backlogs as an exocentric compound word in the above example, is analysable in the following way.

Despite being one of the poorest provinces with high infrastructure **backlogs**, it has the highest retention rate in the country of pupils between Grade 10 and Grade 12.

CW: backlogs /noun/ ~ an accumulation of jobs not done or materials nor processed that are yet to deal with

C1: back (28 senses) /adjective/ ~ of an earlier date

C2: logs (7 senses) /noun/ ~ a written record of messages sent or received

# 20. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-time

This is a turnabout of the section above – relation of time-action- as exemplified below.

Table 21: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-time

Relation	Compound Example
Action-time	Take-up
	Split up

a) Most of them were running other programmes and waiting for their completion before they could **take-up** other projects," Hatase explained.

The exocentric compound word *take-up* is analysed as follows. The first constituent denotes action while the second constituent denotes time.

CW: take-up /verb/~ pursues or resume

C1: take (44 senses) /verb/~ proceed along

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~to a later time

b)Or if you split up?

In (b), the exocentric compound word *split up* is analysable in the following manner.

CW: split up /verb/ get a divorce, formally terminate a marriage

C1: split (19 senses) /verb/ ~ discontinue an association

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ to a later time

21. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-condition

The constituents show the relation of action-condition. Thus, the first constituent denotes the

action of causing someone or something to be in a certain state while the second constituent

denotes the specific state one is in at a particular time. The example below illustrates this

relation.

Table 22: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-condition

Relations	Compound Example
Action-condition	Putdowns

An emotional anorexic will indulge in constant low-grade put-downs of the spouse.

When used as a compound word, *putdown* denotes the entity of "a crushing remark" and the exocentric compound word is analysable in this manner.

CW: put-downs /noun/ ~ a crushing remark

C1: put (10 senses) /verb/ ~ cause to be in a certain state

C2: downs (26 senses) /adjective/ ~ less in value

#### 22. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Activity-oriented

Both the constituents here denote the state of being active which result into the entity expressed by the compound word as shown in the examples below.

Table 23: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Activity-oriented

Relation	Compound Example
Activity-oriented	Networks
	Budgets
	Mandate

In the exocentric compound word *networks*, *net* denotes an activity of constructing or forming a web as if by weaving while *works* denotes a finished product accomplished through the effort or activity or agency of a person or thing.

a) With two music videos Look At Me featuring Mustar and We On Again featuring

Dunamis and Pasco, doing well on local TV, social networks and Youtube, Lethunya

said he was working towards getting paid for his efforts and hard work.

The analysis of networks as an exocentric compound word is the following.

CW: networks /noun/ ~ an interconnected system of things or people

C1: net (12 senses) /verb/ ~ constructs or forms a web as if by weaving

C2: works (34 senses) /noun/ ~ a product produced or accomplished through the effort or activity or agency of a person or thing

b) Large numbers of those affected by HIV and Aids, she said, would mean large spending in the health sector while high crime incidence would also mean big **budgets** for the police, the judiciary and correctional service.

In (b), *budgets* is an exocentric compound word analysed as follows.

CW: budgets /noun/ ~ a summary of intended expenditure along with proposals on how to meet them

C1: bud (4 senses) /verb/ ~ start to grow or develop

C2: gets (37 senses) /verb/ ~ acquire as a result of some effort or action

c) "As She-hive, our **mandate** is to end domestic violence by breaking the silence and urging victims to seek help."

An exocentric compound word mandate in (c) is analysable as follows.

CW: mandate /noun/ ~ a document giving an official instruction or command

C1: man (14 senses) /verb/ ~ provide with workers

C2: date (13 senses) verb/ ~ provide with a dateline

# 23. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Status

The constituents here show a state of some entity at a particular time or a relative position or standing of things. This is exemplified in the examples below.

Table 24: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Status

Relation	Compound Example
Status	Heavyweights
	Hip hop
	Make-up
	Undermining
	Outstanding
	Longstanding
	Run-down

In the exocentric compound word *heavy weight*, for instance, the first constituent *heavy* constitutes that of "great intensity or power or force" while *weight* denotes "relative importance granted to something". The two constituents brought together reflect the status of a person of exceptional importance and reputation.

a) Institutions such as the Walter Sisulu University have used the helping hand Schaba said from his Club Absolute days he has since brushed shoulders with South Africa's heavy weights.

The exocentric compound word heavy weights is analysed into the following components.

CW: heavy weights /noun/ ~ a person of exceptional importance and reputation

C1: heavy (28 senses) /adjective/ ~ of great intensity or power or force

C2: weights (10 senses) /noun/ ~ the relative importance granted to something

b) Born Mokebe Mohasoa, Skebza D has had his fair share of the lime light including winning a HHP, South Africa's hip hop giant's hip hop competition in 2008.

Hip hop is an exocentric compound word above analysed as follows.

CW: hip hop /noun/ ~ genre of African-American music of the 1980s and 1990s in

which rhyming lyrics are chanted to a musical accompaniment

C1: hip (6 senses) /adjective/ ~ informed about the latest trends

C2: hop (9 senses) /noun/ ~ an informed dance where popular music is played

c) Spokeswoman for the university, Angela Church, said "longstanding debt has been

taken care of in various ways".

In (c), an exocentric compound word longstanding is analysed into the following

components.

CW: longstanding /adjective/ ~ having existed for a long time

C1: long (12 senses) /adverb/ ~ for an extended time

C2: standing (4 senses) /noun/ ~ social, professional, financial or reputation status

24. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-agent

The constituents here reflect an active and efficient cause of what is referred to by the

exocentric compound word as a whole. The examples below are used to illustrate this

relation.

199

Table 25: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-agent

Relation	Compound Example
Agent-agent	Motor-mouth
	Cell phones
	Disc jockey

In the exocentric compound word, *motor* in *motor-mouth* denotes a nonspecific agent that imparts motion while *mouth* denotes a spokesperson. The two constituents brought together refer to someone who talks ceaselessly.

a) In April, the ANC pulled the plug on motor-mouth Youth League president Julius Malema.

The exocentric compound word motor-mouth is analysed as follows.

CW: motor-mouth /noun/ ~ someone who talks ceaselessly

C1: motor (5 senses) /noun/ ~ a nonspecific agent that imparts motion

C2: mouth (11 senses) /noun/ ~ a spokesperson (as a lawyer)

b) Known as Smartphone Banking App, the software functions on compatible cellphones without requiring network providers or data-integration. Smartphone Banking App is supported by cellphone models such as iOS Apple, BlackBerry10 as well as Android Smartphones and is available as a free download from the App stores.

In the example above, *cellphone* as an exocentric compound word is analysable in the following way.

CW: cellphones /noun/ ~ a hand-held mobile radiotelephone for use in an area divided into small sections, each with its own short-range

C1: cell (7 senses) /noun/ ~ a device that delivers an electric current as the result of a chemical reaction

C2: phones (4 senses) /noun/ ~ electro-acoustic transducer for converting electric signals into sounds

c) The **disc jockey** said his love for music gained him popularity with the guys.

In (c), disc jockey as an exocentric compound word has the following analysis.

CW: disc jockey /noun/ ~ a person who announces and plays popular recorded music

C1: disc (4 senses) /noun/ ~ used to reproduce music by rotating while a phonograph needle tracks in the groove

C2: jockey (5 senses) /noun/~ an operator of some vehicle or machine or apparatus

#### 25. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Status-agent

The constituents here portray the relation of status-agent of the entity of the exocentric compound word as a whole as depicted in the examples below.

Table 26: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Status-agent

Relation	Compound Example
Status	Archbishop
	Software
	Non-starter

For example, the compound word *archbishop* has *arch* as its first constituent, to denote the status of supreme while *bishop* is a senior member of the Christian clergy having spiritual and administrative authority, hence an agent.

a) "We have introduced two stooges called Helpful and Helpful 2 –though nobody ever calls them by their names, the **archbishop** and nanny Hallowpenny, Queen Cynthia and King Robert.

The exocentric compound word *archbishop* is analysed as follows.

CW: archbishop /noun/ ~ a bishop of highest rank

C1: arch (5 senses) /adjective/ ~ supreme

C2: bishop (3 senses) noun/ ~ a senior member of the Christian clergy having spiritual and administrative authority

b) MASERU-First National Bank Lesotho will today (Thursday) introduce new banking software for smartphones in an effort to support its mobile banking service.

Software as an exocentric compound word can be analysed as follows.

CW: software /noun/ ~ written programmes or procedures or rules and associated documentation pertaining to operation of a computer system and that are stored in read/write memory

C1: soft (20 senses) /adjective/ ~ using evidence not readily amenable to experimental verification or refutation

C2: ware (3 senses) / noun/ ~ articles of the same kind or material, usually used in a combination

# 26. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-agent

The constituents here hold the relation of action-agent as the examples below illustrate.

Table 27: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-agent

Relation	Compound Example
Action-agent	Chairperson
	Spokesman

In the exocentric compound word *chairperson*, for instance, the first constituent, *chair* "lead" expresses the state of being active while the second constituent *person* "a human being" denotes an active and efficient cause of that which is reflected by the compound word as a whole.

It is not an easy task, according to the chairperson of the Maseru Senior Women Citizens Association, 'Makarabo Makhakhe.

CW: chairperson /noun/ ~ an officer who preside

C1: chair (7 senses) /verb/ ~ leads

C2: person (3 senses) /noun/ ~ a human being

#### 27. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Purpose-agent

The constituents here show purpose-agent relation. That means, one constituent denotes an anticipated outcome that is intended or that guides one's planned action while another constituent denotes an active and efficient cause of what is referred to as an entity of the whole compound word. The example below demonstrates this relation.

Table 28: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Purpose-agent

Relation	Compound Example
Purpose-agent	Livestock

In the exocentric compound *livestock*, *live* denotes support of oneself while *stock* denotes that which facilitates the intended outcome; therefore, the two constituents brought together refer to any animals kept for use or profit.

a) Sheriff also enjoyed herding **livestock**, preferred wearing boys' clothes despite having all the physical features of a girl, and playing with boys his age in Maphotong, Ha-Elia village where he lived with his grandparents.

The exocentric compound word *livestock* is analysed as follows.

CW: livestock /noun/ ~ any animals kept for use or profit

C1: live (19 senses) /verb/ ~ support oneself

C2: stock (27 senses) /noun/ ~ a special variety of domesticated animals within a species

# 28. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-condition

The constituents here demonstrate the relation of agent-condition as in the following examples.

Table 29: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-condition

Relation	Compound Example
Agent-condition	Stereotypical
	Honeymoon

In the exocentric compound word *honeymoon* (a holiday taken by a newly married couple) *honey* denotes a beloved person while the second constituent *moon* denotes a certain state of being idle in a listless or dreamy way one feels after wedding.

a) Anybody in a long-term relationship will recognise a few of these behaviours after the initial **honeymoon** period is over.

The analysis of *honeymoon* as an exocentric compound word is as follows.

CW: honeymoon /noun/ ~ a holiday taken by a newly married couple

C1: honey (4 senses) /noun/ ~ a beloved person, used as an endearment

C2: moon (9 senses) /verb/ ~ be idle in a listless or dreamy way

b) You could argue that his images of impoverished subjects satiate **stereotypical** notions of Africa.

In (b), the exocentric compound word *stereotypical* is analysed in the following way.

CW: stereotypical /adjective/ ~ lacking spontaneity or originality or individuality

C1: stereo (3 senses) /noun/ ~ reproducer

C2: typical (3 senses) /adjective/ ~ conforming to a type

#### 29. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-output

The relation between the constituents and the entity here is that of agent-output. That is, one constituent denotes an active and efficient cause of what is referred to in the compound word while the other one denotes a final product of what is reflected in the compound word. The example below illustrates this relation.

Table 30: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Agent-output

Relation	Compound Example
Agent-output	Mother-tongue

An exocentric compound word *mother-tongue* refers to one's native language, the language learned by children and passed from one generation to the next and *mother* in that compound word denotes an agent which is a woman who has given birth to a child who speaks the language while *tongue* denotes a human written or spoken language by a community.

a) The numbers applying for the second language course far outstripped those of the mother-tongue course, with the university seeing 300 students registering at the Durban campus, between 150 and 200 at Pietermaritzburg and a further 150 at the Westville Campus per semester, Mathonsi said.

Mother tongue as an exocentric compound word is analysable in the following way.

CW: mother-tongue /noun/  $\sim$  one's native language, the language learned by children and passed from one generation to the next

C1: mother (7 senses) /noun/ ~ a woman who has given birth to a child

C2: tongue (10 senses) /noun/ ~ a human written or spoken language by a community

### 30. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Intensity

The constituents here demonstrate the level or amount or degree of energy transmitted as the example below shows.

Table 31: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Intensity

Relation	Compound Example
Intensity	Fever-pitch
	Upside-down
	Full-length

In the exocentric compound word *fever-pitch*, *fever* expresses a state of extreme excitement while *pitch* also sets a level of character of some entity. Therefore the two constituents denote intensity.

MASERU- Days before Kate delivered the Prince of Cambridge on Monday this week, the media frenzy was already **fever-pitch** as speculation continued to mount over the gender of the unborn child.

The exocentric compound word fever-pitch is analysable in the following manner.

CW: fever-pitch /noun/ ~ a state of extreme excitement

C1: fever (2 senses) /noun/ ~ intense nervous anticipation

C2: pitch (22 senses) /verb/ ~ set the level or character of

### 31. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-intensity

The constituents here show the relation of action-intensity. The first constituent expresses the action that is taking place in the compound word while the second constituent expresses the amount of energy transmitted to carry out the action in the compound word. The following examples demonstrate this relation.

Table 32: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Action-intensity

Relation	Compound Example
Action intensity	Streamlining
	Beef up
	Spill over
	Kick started
	Caught up

The exocentric compound word *beef-up* denotes making strong or stronger. The first constituent *beef* denotes an action of complaining while *up* denotes the level of energy used to carry out that activity hence the entity mentioned above.

a) "We also need to financially strengthen the current youth development programmes to make them more responsive to challenges, **beef-up** the numbers of youth development officers in the districts and at the same time, amend the National Youth Policy of 2003 to bring it in line with current demands."

The analysis of the exocentric compound word *beef-up* is as follows.

CW: beef-up /verb/ ~ make strong or stronger

C1: beef (4 senses) /verb/ ~ complain

C2: up (14 senses) /adjective/ ~ getting higher or more vigorous

b) "I moved out because our children were also caught-up in the violence.

In (b), caught-up as an exocentric compound word is analysed in the following way.

CW: caught-up /adjective/ ~ having become involved involuntarily

C1: caught (29 senses) /verb/ ~ to hook or entangle

C2: up (14 senses) /adverb/ ~ to a higher intensity

c) "We are now more inclined to **streamlining** our operations as seen by the merging of the strategic marketing and the investment promotion departments.

The analysis of an exocentric compound word streamlining is as follows.

CW: streamlining /verb/ ~ contours economically or efficiently; form features of complex structure

C1: stream (10 senses) /noun/ ~ continuous progress

C2: lining (10 senses) /verb/ ~ fill plentifully

#### 32. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Intensity-action

Here, the relation is a turnabout of the previous relation, as shown in the following examples.

Table 33: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Intensity-action

Compound Example
Overshadowed
Overhaul
Overlooking
Overrides
Overreaching
Full-blown

a) Kleargear seems to have lost this one by overreaching.

The analysis of overreaching as an exocentric compound word is as follows.

CW: overreaching /verb/ ~ fail by aiming too high or trying too hard

C1: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ beyond the top

C2: reaching (11 senses) /verb/ ~ to extend as far as

b)It was he who studied human behaviour by observing hand movements, habit and overall behaviour when using a smartphone.

The exocentric compound word *overall* is analysable in the following manner.

CW: overall /adjective/ ~including everything

C1: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ throughout an area

C2: all (3 senses) /adverb/ ~ to a complete degree or to the full or entire extent

c) On the benches outside the pub **overlooking** the cricket greens at Harare Sports Club, they hunch over laptops, selling ideas as diverse as how to sell cattle and how to help urban dwellers cook traditional meals.

Overlooking as an exocentric compound word is analysed as follows.

CW: overlooking /verb/ ~ dominating

C1: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ throughout the entire area

C2: looking (13 senses) /verb/ ~ takes charge of or deal with

d) "Initially, we focused on pure innovation in terms of technology and utility, but this has evolved into a more practical approach where strong market potential **overrides** technology that is used just for the sake of using cool technology," Makani says.

In the above example, exocentric compound word *overrides* is analysed as thus.

CW: overrides /verb/ ~ prevail over

C1: over (7 senses) /adjective/ ~ beyond or throughout

C2: rides (16 senses) /verb/ ~ continue undisturbed or without interference

e) The provincial task team (PTT) brought change in certain areas, although there were more challenges that **overshadowed** their successes to date, the African National Congress in Limpopo said in a statement.

In (e), overshadowed as an exocentric compound word is analysable in the following way.

CW: overshadowed /verb/ ~ make appear small by comparison

C1: over (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ throughout

C2: shadowed (12 senses) /verb/ ~ to dominate with pervasive presence

#### 33. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position-intensity

The constituents in the exocentric compound word below hold the relation of position—intensity as shown in the example below.

Table 34: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Position-intensity

Relation	Compound Example
Position-intensity	Root out

The exocentric compound word *root-out* denotes the spatial property of a place where something is situated, a notion is expressed in the first constituent *root* "the place where something begins" while the second constituent *out* "not allowed to continue" denotes the degree onto which that which is expressed in the compound word happens.

However, Ntene said her office is conducting awareness campaigns in various districts and she hopes such programmes would help **root out** social ills usually disguised as Basotho traditions, morals and values.

The exocentric compound word *root out* is analysed as follows.

CW: root out /verb/ ~ destroy completely, as if down to roots

C1: root (14 senses) /noun/ ~ the place where something begins

C2: out (17 senses) /adjective/ ~ not allowed to continue

#### 34. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Outcome-intensity

The constituents here show the relation of outcome-intensity. The first constituent denotes a phenomenon that follows and is caused by some previous phenomenon, while the second constituent denotes the level of the activity expressed by the compound word as a whole. The example below illustrates this relation.

Table 35: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Outcome-intensity

Relation	Compound Example
Outcome Intensity	Breakthrough

In the exocentric compound word *breakthrough*, *break* denotes "an unexpected piece of good luck" and *through* denotes "the entire extent".

a) Historic breakthrough for Lesotho tourism

The exocentric compound word *breakthrough* is analysed in the following manner.

CW: breakthrough /noun/ ~ a productive insight; an important discovery

C1: break (75 senses) /noun/ ~ an unexpected piece of good luck

C2: through (7 senses) /adverb/ ~ the entire extent

# 35. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Intensity-outcome

The relation here is a turnabout of the previous section – Outcome-intensity as shown in the following example.

Table 36: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Intensity-outcome

Relation	Compound Example
Outcome Intensity	Flip-flop

More so Zuma, and many of his acolytes, were all too aware of the **flip-flop** politics of the league as many of its remaining leaders sought to re-engineer their survival after Mangaung.

The exocentric compound word flip-flop is analysed as follows.

CW: flip-flop /noun/ ~ a decision to reverse an earlier decision

C1: flip (13 senses) /verb/ ~ turns upside down,

C2: flop (9 senses) /noun/ ~ total failure

In the exocentric compound word *flip-flop*, the first constituent *flip*, denotes the level of the activity expressed by the compound word, while the second constituent *flop* denotes a phenomenon that follows and is caused by some previous phenomenon

#### 36. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Metaphor

The constituents here portray a figure of speech in which an expression is used to refer to something that it does not literally denote in order to suggest a similarity. The findings here are supported by Bauer (2009) and Benczes (2006) that exocentric compound words may be accounted figuratively. The example below is used to illustrate this relation.

Table 37: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Metaphor

Relation	<b>Compound Example</b>
Metaphor	White-collar

Criminals across all sectors from white collar, to robbers, car thieves and stock thieves now find Lesotho a cold place for them, with a 'shoot to kill' to those who are armed and resist arrest.

The exocentric compound word white collar is analysable in the following manner.

CW: white collar /adjective/ ~ of or designating salaried professional or clerical work or workers

C1: white (25 senses) /adjective/ ~ being of the achromatic colour of maximum lightness

C2: collar (12 senses) /noun/ ~ anything worn and placed about the neck

### 37. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Output-input

Here the constituents show the relation of output-input as exemplified in the sentences below.

Table 38: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Output-input

Relation	Compound Example
Output-input	Workforce
	Newborn

In the exocentric compound *workforce*, the first constituent *work* denotes occupation which is

regarded as output in that it is a final product produced by some effort that came before it.

The second constituent *force* (group of people willing to obey orders) denotes input in that it

expresses that which is needed in order to achieve something. The two constituents brought

together in a compound word refer to people brought together to perform some duty.

a) Failure by the coalition to increase salaries of factory workers has not gone down

well with the industry that boasts almost 35 000 workforce.

In (a), workforce as an exocentric compound word can be analysed as follows.

CW: workforce /noun/ ~ the force of workers available

C1: work (34 senses) /noun/ ~ the occupation for which you are paid

C2: force (19 senses) /noun/ ~ group of people willing to obey orders

b) Tell me how I am going to support this **newborn** alone.

The exocentric compound word *newborn* is analysed in the following way.

CW: newborn /noun/ ~ a baby from birth to four weeks

C1: new (12 senses) /adjective/ ~ original and of a kind not seen before

C2: born (15 senses) /adjective/ ~ brought into existence

216

## 38. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Input-output

This relation is a turnabout of the output-input relation whereby the first constituent now becomes an input and the second one becomes an output. This is illustrated in the following examples.

Table 39: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Input-output

Relation	Compound Example
Input-output	Aftermath
	Timeframe
	Showcase
	Rubber-stamp

Tau told journalists in Cape Town that the multiparty committee – and the NCOP – would not "rubber-stamp" the bill, but would invite submissions from interested parties during its deliberations.

In the example above, an exocentric compound word *rubber-stamp* is analysed as follows.

CW: rubber-stamp /verb/ ~ approve automatically

C1: rubber (7 senses) /verb/ ~ erases

C2: stamp (18 senses) /noun/ ~ impression

## 39: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Input-input

The constituents here hold the relation of input-input. The two constituents express that which stimulates information or event. The two constituents brought together denote the entity reflected in the compound word as a whole. The examples below illustrate this relation.

Table 40: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Input-input

Relation	Compound Example
Input-input	Wholesome
	Come out
	Fall-out
	Makeshift
	Database

The first constituent of the exocentric compound *wholesome* denotes input of components while the second constituent denotes input of quantities. When combined into a compound word both constituents express that which arouses action.

a) The practice robs the woman of her dignity, pride and essential life elements that fulfil and make her a wholesome human being."

The exocentric compound word wholesome is analysed as follows.

CW: wholesome /adjective/ ~ conducive to or characteristic of physical or moral well-being

C1: whole (8 senses) /adjective/ ~ including all components without exception

C2: some (5 senses) /adjective/ ~ of quantities

b) It's like having to come out over and over again.

In (b), the exocentric compound word *come out* is analysed in the following manner.

CW: come out /verb/ ~ to state openly and publicly one's homosexuality

C1: come (22 senses) /verb/ ~ issue forth

C2: out (17 senses) /verb/ ~ reveal, be made known

c) What happens if you fall out with your donor?

Fall out as an exocentric compound word in (c), is analysable in the following manner.

CW: fall out /verb/ ~ have a breach in relation

C1: fall (44 senses) /verb/ ~ issue

C2: out (17 senses) /verb/  $\sim$  reveals

d) With a focus on subjects inside their **makeshift** homes, the series was dubbed Interiors.

In (d), the exocentric compound word *makeshift* is analysable as follows.

CW: makeshift /noun/ ~ something contrived to meet an urgent need or emergency, made or done using whatever available

C1: make (51 senses) /verb/ ~ create or manufacture a man-made product

C2: shift (23 senses) /noun/ ~ the act of changing one thing or position for another

e) Each animal you choose and buy can be ear tagged, branded, entered into a national database, kept at one of our partner farms, looked after."

The exocentric compound word database in (e), is analysed as thus.

CW: database /noun / ~ an organized body of related information

C1: data (2 senses) /noun/ ~ collection of facts from which conclusions may be drawn

C2: base (30 senses) /noun/ ~ the fundamental assumptions from which something is begun and developed or calculated or explained

## 40. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Output-distance

The constituents here demonstrate the relation of output-distance. The first constituent denotes the final product reflected as the entity of the compound word as a whole. The second constituent denotes position held by that which is expressed in the compound word which is 'less in significance'. This relation is reflected in the example below.

Table 41: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Output-distance

Relation	Compound Example
Output-distance	Crackdown

Crackdown on illegal clinics loom.

The exocentric compound word *crackdown* is analysed as follows.

CW: crackdown /noun/ ~ severely repressive actions

C1: crack (24 senses) /verb/ ~ makes a very explosive sound

C2: down (26 senses) /adjective/ ~ being or moving lower in position or less in some value

In the exocentric compound word *crackdown*, the first constituent *crack* denotes an activity expressed by the verb in the compound word, while the second constituent *down* denotes a position held by the entity referred to by the exocentric compound word as a whole.

### 41. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Personality

The constituents here reflect the personality found in the entity of the compound word as a whole. The following examples are used to reveal this relation.

Table 42: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Personality

Relation	<b>Compound Example</b>
Personality	Witchcraft
	Lone-wolf
	Like-minded
	Standalone
	Non-starter

The exocentric compound word *lone-wolf* denotes the character of a person who avoids the company or assistance of others. This character is expressed in both constituents as the first one denotes characterized by or preferring solitude and the second constituent denotes a cruelly greedy person. In a similar way, in the exocentric compound word *standalone*, *stand* denotes a mental position from which things are viewed, while *alone* denotes being exclusive of anyone or anything else. The two constituents reflect the aspect of solitude experienced by that which is referred to in the exocentric compound word.

a)Do what you know/think is right: Thabane can swim against the tide of collective vision, and act as a lone-wolf, without submitting to either majoritarian principle or reverting to contrary majority opinion.

The exocentric compound word *lone-wolf* is analysed as follows.

CW: lone-wolf /noun/ ~ a person who avoids the company or assistance of others

C1: lone (3 senses) /adjective/ ~ characterized by or preferring solitude

C2: wolf (6 senses) /noun/ ~ a cruelly rapacious person

b) While crime is decreasing, especially stock theft and armed robbery, there is an increase in witchcraft killings and white-collar crime.

The exocentric compound word witchcraft is analysed in the following way.

CW: witchcraft /noun/ ~ the art of sorcery

C1: witch (5 senses) /noun/ ~ a being (usually a female) imagined to have special powers derived from the devil

C2: craft (6 senses) /noun/ ~ shrewdness as demonstrated by being skilled in deception

c) A strong political debater, Thabane's opponents earlier dismissed him as non-starter elite who cannot appeal to rural folk, because of his academic language on poverty alleviation, and it turned out to be true as he was beaten white wash in the rural constituencies.

*Non-starter* as an exocentric compound word in the above example is analysed as follows.

CW: non-starter /noun/ ~ a person with a record of failing, someone who loses consistently

C1: non (1 sense) /adverb/ ~ negation of a word or group of words

C2: starter (7 senses) /noun/ ~ any new participant in some activity

d) "We are providing a platform to celebrate Christ with other like-minded people from even far beyond their national boundaries, as you can see the line-up features artistes from USA and other African countries," Mahase noted.

The exocentric compound word *like-minded* above is analysed as follows.

CW: like-minded /adjective/ ~ of the same turn of mind

C1: like (11 senses) /adjective/ ~ having the same or some of the characteristics, used in combination

C2: minded (8 senses) /adjective/ ~ used in combination to mean mentally oriented toward something specified

e) Maqutu also explained that the country's challenging environment for lovers of adventure, was another **standalone** tourism feature, particularly for backpackers and those who seek to enjoy the mountain trails.

In (e), standalone as an exocentric compound word is analysable as follows.

CW: standalone /adjective/ ~ capable of operating independently

C1: stand (24 senses) /noun/ ~ a mental position from which things are viewed

C2: alone (6 senses) /adjective/ ~ exclusive of anyone or anything else

## 42. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Movement

The constituents show the relation of movement involved in the entity of the compound word as illustrated in the following examples.

Table 43: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Movement

Relation	Compound Example
Movement	Comebacks
	About turn

The exocentric compound *about-turn* expresses the act of changing the location of something, therefore, it involves movement. Similarly, comebacks involve movement of celebrity from the presently occupied place to the original place or position.

a) The recent proposals also threatened an **about-turn** in South Africa from the rule of law, towards authoritarian attitudes of the past.

The exocentric compound word *about-turn* is analysed as thus.

CW: about-turn /noun/ ~ the act of pivoting 180 degree, especially in a military formation

C1: about (8 senses) /adjective/ ~ on the move

C2: turn (38 senses) /noun/ ~ a movement in a new direction

b)It also serves as a warning to those in the ANC who thought they could stage

comebacks after the Mangaung conference through a youth league that was about

to get a facelift.

Comebacks as an exocentric compound word can be analysed as follows.

CW: comebacks /noun/ ~ returns by a celebrity to some previously successful activity

C1: come (22 senses) /verb/ ~ move forward

C2: backs (19 senses) /noun/ ~ counters clockwise direction

## 43. Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Measurement

The constituents here hold the relation of measurement, thus, any manoeuvre made as part of progress towards a goal. The example below illustrates this relation.

Table 44: Constituent-compound Entity Relation of Measurement

Relation	<b>Compound Example</b>
Measurement	Scale up

The new project is designed to scale-up this initiative by expanding to new areas and strengthening the capacity of local on-farm technical support services.

The analysis of an exocentric compound word *scale-up* is as follows.

CW: scale-up /verb/ ~ increase proportionally

C1: scale (18 senses) /verb/ ~ size or measure according to a scale

C2: up (14 senses) / adverb/ ~ raise

In the exocentric compound word, the first constituent scale denotes "size or measure

according to some expectation" while the second constituent up also denotes "raise".

Based on the findings on the relations between compound constituents and compound

entities, it is arguable that when words are interpreted in context, they acquire chameleon

behaviour, hence various relations presented above. The study has revealed that compound

words may be interpreted following pragmatic theory as illustrated in this study. Adopting

Kim and Baldwin's (2005) analysis method of WordNet Similarity, the study has

demonstrated comprehensible relations that hold between constituents of exocentric

compound words. It generally aligns with Benczes (2002: 22) that exocentric compound

words are analysable just as endocentric compound words are. The major difference between

Benczes's (ibid.) study and the present study is that the former advocates for metaphorical,

metonymic and blending tools so as to analyse relations between constituents, while the latter

has shown diverse relations that constituents of exocentric compound words and their entities

could have.

4.3.2. Patterns of Exocentric Compound Words

The following section outlines patterns that are found in constituents that make up exocentric

compound words identified in Southern African newspapers. Radfort (2009) propose that

compound words may involve the following lexical categories combinations:

Adjective + Adjective

Adjective + Noun

Noun + Adjective

Noun + Noun

Verb + Noun

Noun + Verb

This study reveals a significant development on the patterns of exocentric compound words found in newspapers. It echoes Scalise et al.'s (2009: 12) suggestion that exocentric structures can be different from each other and that all lexical categories are involved in structuring these compound words. The patterns here are tabled according to the exocentric compound word function in the sentence in which it appears.

### 4.3.2.1. Compound Nouns

Compound nouns function as nouns in a sentence. A working definition of a noun taken from WordNet Similarity is a content word that can be used to refer to a person, place, thing, quality or action. Fromkin and Rodman (1988: 124) add that nouns make the largest part of English vocabulary. He goes on to say that they are called content words or open class of lexical items because language users can and regularly do add new words to them. The data in this study demonstrates that compound nouns may involve the following patterns:

#### a) Noun + Noun

Compound nouns under this pattern are formed from nouns. Each of the constituents in the compound word functions as a noun in the formation of that compound word as in the following examples: landscape, rainbow, groundwork, website, desktop, database, nightmare, tagline, spotlight, crossroads, timeframe, bottleneck, motor mouth, showcase, antithesis, powerbrokers, mother tongue, brainchild and watchwords.

### b) Adjective + Noun

The first constituents in the compound nouns below qualify the second constituent which functions as a noun in the formation of the compound word. This is illustrated with the following examples: *counterparts, backdrop, grandparents, on-lookers, aftermath, deadline, about-turn, standstill, hotspot, backlogs, after-world, heavyweights, highlight, background* and *lone wolf.* 

### c) Noun + Adjective

The first constituent in the compound word functions as a noun qualified by an adjective in the second constituent. For example in the exocentric compound noun *breakthrough* meaning 'a productive sight' *break* is a noun meaning 'an unexpected piece of good luck' while *through* is an adjective modifying the noun to mean 'complete'. *Breakthrough* is one such example.

#### d) Verb + Noun

The first constituent in these compound nouns are formed from words that denote an action, occurrence or state of existence while the second constituent denote an entity of a person, place, thing, quality or action. The examples below show instances of the verb + noun pattern: *step-parents, chairperson, logjam, think-tank, makeshift, comebacks* and *flip-flop*.

### e) Absolute Categorical Exocentricity

The present data also revealed compound nouns that are 'absolute categorical exocentric' (Scalise et al. 2009). The category occupied by the compound word as a whole is different from constituents' categories that make up the compound word. According to the standard structure's assumption, it would be expected that from a structure of Verb + Noun, the projected compound word would be either a verb or a noun. In a situation where this is not

the case, there is a case of absolute categorical exocentricity. The following patterns illustrate this point.

#### i) Verb + Adverb

Even though the compound words here still function as nouns when used in sentences, neither of their make-up constituents is a noun as reflected in the constituents' analysis. The analysis displayed the first constituent denoting an action while the second constituent is modifying the first constituent. Examples of this pattern include: *start-ups*, *feedback*, *putdown*, *tie-ups* and *spill-over*.

### ii) Verb + Verb

These compound nouns are made up of a combination of verb plus verb. That is, each of the constituents denotes an action as reflected in the analysis. For example, the exocentric compound noun *mandate* meaning "a document giving an official instruction or command" results from verb *man* which means "provide with workers or take charge of a certain job" while *date* means "assign a date to". The examples in this category are: *mandate*, *budgets* and *outcry*.

### iii) Adjective + Adjective

Some compound nouns are output of adjective plus adjective input categories. For instance, the compound word *newborn* is made of *new* as an adjective meaning original and of a kind not seen before while born also denotes an adjective meaning brought into existence. This *newborn* as a noun is a combination of two adjectives.

### iv) Adjective + Verb

Here the compound noun results from a combination of adjective plus verb. For instance, the compound noun *outfits* is made up of an adjective *out* meaning "outside or external" while *fits* is a verb that means "be agreeable or acceptable to". Two nouns made up of this combination were found in the present data and they are *outfits* and *shortfall* .

#### f) Suffixation

Again data revealed a noticeable class of nouns made from suffixes —ship, -hood and —age. Katamba (1993: 49) posits that these suffixes may change a concrete noun into an abstract noun. He mentions that in order to classify these nouns appropriately, it is important to know the base to which they are attached. If it would not be over-simplifying it; these suffixes reflect state or condition. Given Katamba's submission, Gagne and Spalding (2006) also state that words formed from these suffixes are understood through the known derivational and the inflectional additions because the suffixes themselves are morphemes which are themselves words. They submit that the contribution of these suffixes is not so transparent. Carroll (1994: 231) adds that the meanings of all words in kinship are specified exactly by considering a single aton in the first constituent. The following compound nouns illustrate this combination: entrepreneurship, friendship, partnership, membership, flagship, hardship, dictatorship, nationhood, livelihoods, motherhoods, spinsterhood, blockage and patronage.

### 4.3.2.2. Compound Verbs

Compound verbs behave like verbs in sentences. A working definition of a verb taken from WordNet Similarity tool is that a verb is a content word that denotes an action, occurrence or

state of existence. The compound words under this classification, therefore, function as verbs and they result from the following input categories:

#### a) Verb + Adverb

The compound verbs here are formed form the categories of a verb plus an adverb. For instance, the compound word *handed over* is made up of a verb in participle *handed* to mean "place into the hand or custody of" while *over* meaning "to or at a point across the intervening space" is an adverb used to express the extent of the verb. Therefore, the second constituent is used to modify the verb in the first constituent as shown in the following examples: *handed over, carried over, write off, stepping-up, step-up, take-up, take-over, cough up, taken-in, show-off, paying-off, looked-up, born-out, root-out, scale-up, split up and <i>hitch up*.

#### b) Adverb + Verb

Here the compound verb is formed from a combination of an adverb plus a verb. Consider overshadowed for illustration. The first constituent over meaning "throughout the entire area is an adverb that shows to what extent is the action expressed in the second constituent takes place, while the second constituent shadowed is a verb that means "to make appear small by comparison". The data in this study reveal the following examples that result from the similar combination as that of overshadowed: overreaching, overlooking, downplayed, downloaded underpinned, undergo, overwhelmed, understand, foresee and forecast.

#### c) Verb + Verb

The constituents in the compound words here denote either an action or occurrence. For example, in the compound verb *outline* "describe roughly or briefly or give the main points", the first constituent *out* means "be made known" while *line* means "describe". The following below were found in the data under study: *outline*, *come out* and *fall out*.

#### d) Noun + Verb

Here the first constituent is a noun while the second constituent is a verb, and the two combined give rise to compound verbs as shown in the following examples: *streamlining, mushroomed, bankrolled, spearheaded and kick started.* Consider *mushroomed* for illustration. The first constituent is a noun that means "any soft or soggy mass" while roomed in the second constituent is a verb that means "live in or at".

#### e) Absolute Categorical Exocentricity

There was also a case of absolute categorical exocentricity for compound verbs. The compound verb here resulted from input categories of adjective and noun as the example below reveals.

### Adjective + Noun

Foreground is a compound verb that is made up from a combination of an adjective fore, referring to that which is "situated at or towards" while ground is a noun that denotes "a rationale motive for a belief or action".

### 4.3.2.3. Compound Adjectives

Compound adjectives function in the way adjectives do in sentences. They qualify nouns. A working definition of an adjective as taken from WordNet Similarity tool is that an adjective

is a word that expresses an attribute of something. The following categories of compound adjectives were found.

### a) Adjective + Adjective

The compound adjectives here are formed from input categories of adjective plus adjective as reflected in the examples such as *overdue*, *outright and wholesome*. Consider *wholesome* for illustration. The first constituent *whole* is an adjective that denotes "including all components without exception" while *some* also is an adjective that expresses "relatively much but unspecified in amount or extent".

### b) Noun + Adjective

The compound adjectives here are formed from first constituent used as a noun and the second constituent is used as an adjective as shown in the following examples: *stereotypical*, *downstream* and *upside-down*. In the exocentric compound word upside-down, for instance, upside is a noun denoting "the highest or uppermost side of anything" while the second constituent down in the same compound adjective is used as an adjective denoting "being understood perfectly".

### c) Adjective + Noun

The following compound adjectives rise from a combination an adjective and a noun: *full-length* and *white collar*. An exocentric compound word *full-length*, for instance, has an adjective *full* "complete in extent" as its first constituent and *length* "the property of being the extent of something from the beginning to the end" as its second constituent.

#### d) Verb + Adjective

Finegan (2007: 383) mentions that verbs may be used as adjectives. Thus, they may be used in compound formations to modify nouns that come after them. The data under study demonstrates such instances as shown below whereby in the compound adjective *handsome*, the first constituent *hand* denotes a verb meaning "place into the hands or custody of" while *some* is an adjective meaning "relatively much but unspecified in extent". The examples include *handsome* and *run-down*.

#### e) Adjective + Verb

The data under study also demonstrate compound adjective formed from combination of an adjective and a verb as shown by these examples: *like-minded, big-headed, open-air, longstanding and outstanding*. The first constituent *open* in the exocentric compound word *open-air,* for instance, is an adjective denoting that which is "accessible to all" while *air* is a verb denoting "making something public".

## f) Absolute Categorical Exocentricity

Fabb (2007) and Finegan (2007) mention that compound adjectives may consist of absolutely different input categories. However, such combinations work as adjectives if they behave in the adjectival manner, thus, if they perform the same functions as adjectives when used in sentences. Examples of absolute categorical exocentricity found in the data for this study include:

i) Adverb + Adverb as in the compound adjectives *erstwhile* and *overall*.

For instance, the compound adjective erstwhile comes before the noun comrades in Sentence 143- The league found Masonga guilty of "grave and serious" offences after he fell out with his erstwhile comrades in the league. This makes it an adjective modifying the noun

*comrades* even though it is made up of adverb *esrt* that denotes "at a previous time" plus adverb *while* that denotes "indeterminate period".

ii) Adverb + Noun as in the compound adjective *underway*.

In Sentence 51- Plans are underway to come up with Moshoeshoe: The Mountain Kingdom Volume Two, underway as an exocentric compound word is an adjective that complements the noun plans but it has a combination of an adverb under denoting "through a range" and a noun way denoting "the condition of things generally".

iii) Verb + Adverb as in the word *caught-up*.

In Sentence 73- I moved out because our children were caught-up in the violence, the exocentric compound word functions as an adjective that complements the noun children. However, the first constituent caught is a verb that denotes being "hooked or entangled" while up is an adverb that denotes "to a higher intensity"

#### 4.3.2.4. Compound Adverb

The data in this study show one unproductive pattern of compound adverbs. A compound adverb behaves in the same way as an adverb does in a sentence. According to WordNet Similarity tool, an adverb is a word that modifies something other than a noun. Any category, especially nouns, can work as adverbs if they answer the questions 'where' and 'when' (Finegan, 2007:365). For instance, the compound adverb *overnight* answers the question when in *Sentence 119- "...Some people say Brazil will not tackle that, (but) I think it will. It's not something that takes place overnight."* This compound adverb has the structure of an adjective plus a noun in that the first constituent *over* is an adjective that denotes "throughout a period of time" while *night* is a noun that denotes "a period of ignorance or backwardness or gloom".

In a nutshell, the present study demonstrates a significant development on the patterns of

compound words as compared to previous studies. The present study reveals 9 possible

combinations for compound nouns, 5 possible combinations for compound verbs, 8 possible

combinations for compound adjectives and 1 possible combination for compound adverbs.

4.3.3. Neologisms

The section reveals new formations presented in bold, identified in the corpus. Katamba

(1993: 65) supports productivity in word-formation that morphological theorising

accommodates countless words used in conversation. He states that what is advocated for by

morphology is that speakers should understand not only 'real' words but also potential words

instantiated in use in utterances. The following sections present new compound words that

featured in the corpus according to their structures.

4.3.3.1. String-like Compound Words

The study adopted Montermini's (no date) word-based approach to identify compound words.

It also applied WordNet Similarity to help recognize them. Some of these compound words

were not recognised by the tool yet they captivated similar structure as that of compound

words. The findings for this study confirmed Montermini's claim that there are linguistic

sequences that shape compound structures. For instance, the following sentences carry

compound-like structures made up from strings of words as shown below:

The reviewer even went as far as to say the G2 can be favourably compared a

with Samsung's king-of-the-hill Galaxy S4 on many fronts.

CW: king-of-the-hill /noun/

*b*) This has led to some factory workers opting for the better-devil-you-know

than the friend you do not know.

CW: better-devil-you-know /noun/

c)This would give Saracen a foothold in the resources-for-arms trade that

characterised Executive Outcomes' military adventures in Angola and Sierra Leone

among other trouble spots in the 1990s.

CW: resources-for-arms /adjective/

However, a justifiable argument for such sequences as compound words is grounded on the

fact that they function in sentences as one particular lexical category, such as nouns and

adjectives as it is the case in the sentences above. On one hand, Fromkin and Rodman (1988:

135) add that new words may be formed by stringing together other words to create

compound words. The authors argue that there is no limit on the kinds of combinations that

occur in English. On the other hand, Bell (1995: 25) also mentions that media uses strings of

words to convey what could have been presented in long sentences because of space

constrains. That is why these constructions were nevertheless included in the corpus. The

meaning of these compound words relies on the native speaker of the language as that may

likely help to know the constituents of the compound word and that knowledge may help

determine the meaning of the compound word as a whole.

4.3.3.2. Pre-modified Compound Words

The data for the present study further reveals compound words made up of smallest units plus

a lexical word. Montermini (op.cit.), Anderson (1992) and Bauer and Renouf (2001) share

the same view that compound words may contain units that are either larger or smaller than a word. The researchers found out that instances of prefixes such as *un-, dis-* denote lack of or reverse of what is conveyed by the other constituent. Even in the case of this study, compound words in (a-d), express lack of the characteristic expressed by or in the other constituent. They (Arcodia et al. (op.cit) Anderson (op.cit) and Bauer and Renouf (op.cit)) share the same view that definition of 'word' accommodates even the smallest units of language as long as they are meaningful. Examples are *un-Coen, declassification, de-link* and *disused* in the following sentences.

a) So in a way this is the most **un-Coen** movie the maverick brothers have produced.

CW: un-Coen /adjective/ - unrecognized neologism

b) "This Bill seeks, quite correctly, to criminalise information peddling, pay-as-you-go information declassification, and the by-passing of what must now become clearly defined procedures for handling sensitive state information," they said. – Sapa

The compound word *declassification* is analysable as follows.

CW: declassification /noun/ ~ reduction or removal by the government of restrictions on a classified document or weapons

C1: de (1 sense) /noun/ ~ no match sense

C2: classification (4 senses) /noun/ ~ restriction imposed by the government on documents or weapons that are available only to certain authorized people.

c) "It has been a process that has been **de-linked** from the ordinary citizen.

In the above example, *de-link* is analysed in the following manner.

CW: de-linked /verb/ -unrecognized neologism

C1: de – unrecognized prefix

C2: linked (5 senses) /verb/ ~ associated with

d)Mthethwa's interest in the informal and spontaneous uniforms that emerge from

particular groups of people underpinned the Sugar Cane and Brick Ladies series,

portraits of women who reclaim disused bricks.

Disused as an exocentric compound word is analysed as follows.

CW: disused /adjective/ ~ no longer in use

C1: dis (1 sense) –no match sense

C2: used (9 senses) /verb/~ employed to accomplish something

**4.3.3.3.** Coinage Structures

Fromkin and Rodman (1988: 135) state that new words may also enter a language in a variety

of other ways as long as they are created to fit some purpose. In the data collected, there are

instances of coinage in the data as shown in the following instances. It is under the

leadership of Thabane that issues that are traditionally to be guarded classified secrets of

government are exposed willy-nilly, therefore causing media, the public and opposition

interfering in matters that are not yet of public consumption.

The exocentric compound word *willy-nilly* can be analysed in the following manner.

CW: willy-nilly /adverb/ ~ without having a choice

C1: willy – no match sense

C2: nilly – no match sense

a) The SACP said while the South African National Editors' Forum had "persuaded itself

and parts of the public that the Bill is primarily directed at the media", the real

challenge facing South Africa was factionalised intelligence and security services

embroiled in "palace politics and tender-preneuring rivalries".

CW: tender-preneuring /adjective/ -unrecognized neologism

b) So in a way this is the most un-Coen movie the maverick brothers have

produced.

CW: maverick / adjective/ ~ independent in behaviour or thought

The meaning of these words could only be deduced from context and knowledge of the

world. For instance, it was possible to reach at what willy-nilly in (a) mean when considering

the stems of the constituents, will and nil. Fabb (2007) finds this structure fits under

compounding process because the resulting word corresponds to an attested word. Finn

(1980:16) adds that in order to interpret new words the hearer has to model them on those

that are already in existence such as willy to will and nilly to nil.

4.3.3.4. Conceptual Meanings

The present study reveals a noticeable number of new words whose interpretation is activated

by the concept expressed in the compound word. Either the compound word itself was found

unfamiliar to the tool used to analyze the constituents, or one or all the constituents were

unfamiliar. The relations between the constituents and their entities could not be traced

explicitly. It should be noted that even though some of these words are full lexical words in

English lexicon, they have acquired new meaning depending on how they are used in the

context hence classified under neologisms. For instances, the constituents in the compound

words distant uncle, down-date, bucket-loads were first stripped off their status as compound

constituents and treated as separate entities in order to give a suitable meaning to the whole

compound word. The surrounding words were also considered so as to provide a wholesome

interpretation. Such words are presented as the following sections.

4.3.3.4.1. Constituent-based Meanings

The compound words here were not recognized by the tool used in this study; therefore, their

meanings could only be deduced from the analysis of their constituents.

a) "This is a serious matter because we have to work hard or risk being down-

**listed** as a world heritage site in danger.

The exocentric compound neologism *down-listed* is analysed as follows.

CW: down-listed /verb/ - unrecognized neologism

C1: down (26 senses) /adverb/ ~ from a higher to a lower level or position

C2: listed (6 senses) /verb/ ~ enumerate

b) With neither husband nor wife formally employed, the family was left with no

choice but to live off their piece of land which, according to 'Makatiso, does not always

yield enough food and money to send the children to school.

In (b), live off as an exocentric compound neologism is analysed in the following manner.

CW: live off /verb/ - unrecognized neologism

C1: live (19 senses) /verb/ ~ support oneself

C2: off (9 senses) /adverb/ ~ from a particular thing or place or position

c) Professor Sizwe Mabizela, the chairman of Umalusi, said in December that,

while our "education system still fails dismally to free the full potential of the majority

of our young people", we need to interpret our progress in an understanding of the

current state of education in South Africa and "resist the temptation of joining the

chorus of the cynics, the pessimists and the doomsayers who would have us believe that

ours is a lost cause".

Doomsayers is an exocentric compound neologism which is analysed as follows.

CW: doomsayers /noun/ - unrecognized neologism

C1: doom (4 senses) /verb/ ~make certain of failure or destruction of

C2: say(ers) (12 senses) /noun/ ~ the chance to speak

d) "He wanted to have visibility but in a sort of 'distant uncle' kind of way.

The exocentric compound neologism *distant uncle* is analysed as thus.

CW: distant uncle /adjective/ ~ unrecognized neologism

C1: distant (5 senses) /adjective/ ~ remote in manner

C2: uncle (2 senses) / noun/ ~ a source of help and advice and encouragement

e) I stick out as a sore thumb.

The analysis of the exocentric compound neologism *sore thumb* is as follows.

CW: sore thumb /noun/ - unrecognized neologism

C1: sore (4 senses) / noun/ ~ open skin infection

C2: thumb (6 senses) /noun/ ~ the thick short innermost digit of the forelimb

f) Hence, no doubt, mega-famous and mega-rich Harry Potter stars Emma Watson's difficulty finding a boyfriend.

The exocentric compound neologisms *mega-famous* and *mega-rich* are analysed respectively as follows.

CW: mega-famous /adjective/ - unrecognized neologism

C1: mega (3 senses) /adverb/ ~ extremely

C2: famous (1 sense) /adjective/ ~ widely known and esteemed

CW: mega-rich /adjective/ - unrecognized neologism

C1: mega (3 senses) /adverb/ ~ extremely

C2: rich (13 senses) /adjective/ ~ having an abundant supply of desirable qualities or substance

g) When female celebs try to **down-date**, it rarely seems to end happily: think of Britney and Kevin Federline, Cameron Diaz and Paul Sculfor, or Madonna and Carlos Leon.

Down-date as an exocentric compound neologism is analysable in the following manner.

CW: down-date /verb/ -unrecognized neologism

C1: down ((26 senses) /adjective/ ~ being lower in position or less in some value

C2: date (13 senses) /noun/ ~ a participant in a date

*h) Nevertheless, she certainly seems to have cultivated it in bucket-loads.* 

The analysis of the exocentric compound neologism bucket-loads is as follows.

CW: bucket-loads /adverb/ -unrecognized neologism

C1: bucket (4 senses) /noun/ ~ the quantity

C2: loads (14 senses) /noun/ ~ weight to be borne or conveyed

i) They are far much better-placed to explain age is nothing but a number and some have tales to tell of how motherhood has challenged and transformed them into becoming masters of innovation.

The exocentric compound neologism *better-placed* can be analysed as thus.

CW: better-placed /adjective/ -unrecognized neologism

C1: better (33 senses) /adjective/ ~ more highly skilled than another

C2: placed (18 senses) /adjective/ ~ put in position to other things

j) "There is lots of entertainment for everyone and all the humour is family-appropriate.

The exocentric compound neologism family-appropriate is analysed in the following manner.

CW: family-appropriate /adjective/ -unrecognized neologism

C1: family (8 senses) /noun/ ~ a social unit living together

C2: appropriate (3 senses) / adjective/ ~ suitable for a particular person or place or condition

k) He told Public Eye the **airplay** he is getting on local radio stations and fans was great "but I will be happy if one day all local artistes earn royalties for their sweat".

Airplay as an exocentric compound neologism is analysed in the following way.

CW: airplay /noun/ -unrecognized neologism

C1: air (15 senses) /noun/ ~ medium of radio and television broadcasting

C2: play (52 senses) /verb/ ~ be performed or presented for public

l) He also revealed he would be releasing his 16-track mixtape, Only God Can Judge Me, later this year, containing hits Jahova ft Stablo Pun, Did It For Myself and POLO featuring Dunamis.

*Mixtape* is an exocentric compound neologism analysed in the following manner.

CW: mixtape /noun/ -unrecognized neologism

C1: mix (9 senses) /verb/  $\sim$  combines

C2: tape (8 senses) /noun/ ~ memory device to record audio or video signals

m) "Our App includes an eWallet, which enables us to reach the underserviced and under-banked with a mobile, money solution.

The exocentric compound neologisms *underserviced* and *under-banked* are respectively analysed in the following way.

CW: underserviced /noun/ ~ unrecognized neologism

C1: under (10 senses) /adverb/ ~ in or into a state of subordination or subjugation

C2: serviced (3 senses) /verb/ ~ be used, make fit for use

CW: under-banked /noun/ -unrecognized neologism

C1: under (10 senses) /adverb/ ~ in or into a state of subordination or subjugation

C2: banked (8 senses) /verb/ ~ does business with a bank or keep am account at the bank

n) "The album is titled Money, Cars and Girls but it is about everything else except the three despite the norm that artistes are all about money, cars and girls," he said adding, "The content of the album ranges from advice, feel good soul and uptempo."

The exocentric compound neologism *up-tempo* is analysed as thus.

CW: up-tempo /noun/ ~ unrecognized neologism

C1: up (14 senses) /adjective/ ~ getting higher or more vigorous

C2: tempo (2 senses) /noun/ ~ the speed at which a musical composition is to be played

o) "It was the **in-thing** then; my friends and I just decided to take part.

*In-thing* is analysed as an exocentric compound neologism as follows.

CW: in-thing /noun/ ~ unrecognized neologism

C1: in 97 senses) /adjective/ ~ currently fashionable

C2: thing (12 senses) /noun/ ~ a separate and self-contained entity

p) Ministers and civil servants are no longer armchair officers but engaged in legwork to find, discuss and answer the concerns from the electorate through media presentations and continuous visits to villages for report back, a sign of transparency and accountability.

The exocentric compound neologism *legwork* is analysed in the following manner.

CW: legwork /noun/ ~ unrecognized neologism

C1: leg (9 senses) /noun/ ~no sense match

C2: work (34 senses) /noun/ ~ activity directed toward making or doing something

q) The presence of the LCD as a major and more experienced partner in the coalition has retained the majority of the **old stock**, to whom change might be interpreted as undermining their status quo.

The exocentric compound neologism *old stock* is analysable as follows.

CW: old stock /noun/ ~ unrecognized neologism

C1: old (9 senses) /adjective/ ~ used for emphasis to mean very familiar

C2: stock (27 senses) /noun/ ~ descendents of one individual

#### 4.3.3.4.2. Partial Context-based

The constituents of the below exocentric compound neologisms could not match any of the senses displayed by the tool used for this study. This means that none of the senses shown under the constituent was found relevant to the compound entity.

a) "When I saw him on the day of the abduction, I had no idea he was **up-to** no good.

The exocentric compound neologism *up-to* is analysed in the following manner.

CW: up-to /adjective/ ~ busy or occupied with

C1: up (14 senses) ~no match sense

C2: to ~ no match sense

b) "This kind of inquiry, dressed up as an objective and innocent investigation, is

completely unjustified."

Guided by only one constituent (C2), dressed up is an exocentric compound neologism

analysable as follows.

CW: dressed-up /verb/ ~ makes something appear superficially attractive

C1: dressed (20 senses) /verb/ ~ decorate

C2: up (14 senses) ~ no match sense

4.3.3.4.3. Total Context-based

The contribution of the compound words in understanding of the whole sentence comes from

neither the meaning of the compound word itself nor the meanings of the constituents that

make up the compound word. They could only be understood in context.

a) That's despite positive tailwinds such as record-low unemployment, high

consumer confidence, and several stimulus programmes passed by Rousseff's

government aimed at stimulating vehicle purchases.

The analysis of the exocentric compound neologism *tailwinds* is as follows.

CW: tailwinds /noun/ ~ wind blowing in the same direction as the path of a ship or aircraft

C1: tail (11 senses) /verb/ ~ trail

C2: winds (15 senses) /noun/ ~ an indication of potential opportunity

b) They're a knee-jerk response to awkwardness, he suggests.

The exocentric compound neologism *knee-jerk* is analysed in the following manner.

CW: knee-jerk /noun/ ~ a reflex extension of the leg resulting from a sharp tap on the patellar tendon

C1: knee (3 senses) /noun/ ~ joint in the human leg

C2: jerk (11 senses) /noun/ ~ an abrupt spasmodic movement

c) He added: "Mixtapes normally use **bootlegged** background music and if I wanted the market to take me seriously I had to step out and show them I am ready." Why It Makes Sense for Businesses to Threaten Online Critics

Bootlegged is an exocentric compound neologism analysed in the following way.

CW: bootlegged /adjective/ ~ produce or distribute illegally

C1: boot (9 senses) /verb/ ~ the act of delivering a blow with the foot

C2: legged (1 sense) /adjective/ ~ having legs of a specified kind or number

## 4.3.3.5. Compound Neologisms Patterns

The following patterns featured on the constituents that made up neologisms. The neologisms covered the four major lexical categories of verbs, nouns, adjectives and adverbs.

## 1. Compound Neologism Verbs

The data under study reveal the following patterns of compound neologism verbs.

a) Adverb + Verb

Down-listed

b) Verb + Adverb

Live off

c) Verb + Verb

Roll-out

d) Premodified verbs

De-linked

De-classification

## 2. Compound Neologism Nouns

As concerns compound neologism nouns, the following patterns were found.

a) Verb + Noun

Doomsayers

**Tailwinds** 

Mixtape

b) Adjective + Noun

Old stock

Up-tempo

In-thing

c) Noun + Noun

Sore-thumb

Knee-jerk

Legwork

d) Verb + Adverb

Getaway

e) Adverb + Verb

Underserviced

Underbanked

## 3. Compound Neologism Adjectives

The compound neologism adjectives found in the data under study include the following.

# a) Adjective + Noun

Distant- uncle

Family appropriate

## b) Adverb + Adjective

Mega-famous

Mega-rich

## c) Adjective + Adjective

Better-placed

### d) **Preposition** + **Preposition**

Up-to

## 4. Compound Neologism Adverbs

Concerning this category, only one pattern and one example was found as shown below.

## Noun + Noun

**Bucket-loads** 

## 4.4. Summary of Chapter 4

This chapter has presented qualitative analysis of the data collected from a corpus of four newspapers. The findings of this study revealed a number of exocentric compound words used in Southern African newspapers. The compound words demonstrate various compound presentations including, one word exocentric compound words such as *mushroomed*,

brainchild; two words exocentric compound words as in hip hop, tie ups and hyphenated exocentric compound words such as non-starter, beef-up. It is also worth-noting that data captured demonstrate exocentric compound words made from sequences of two compound constituents as in after-world, nightmare; three compound constituents such as out-of-hand, down-to-earth; four compound constituents as in state-of-the-art.

The chapter also presented neologisms and how they are formed. The data under study presented differing structures of compound neologisms. These structures included string-like compound neologisms such as *king-of-the-hill*, *better-the-devil-you-know*; pre-modified neologisms as in *un-Coen*, *de-linked* and coined compound neologisms such as *tender-preneuring*. The data again revealed ways of interpreting these neologism structures. That included compound neologisms interpreted from constituents that make up the compound neologism; those that relied on context in which the compound neologism appears partially and those that required total contribution of context for their interpretation.

#### **CHAPTER 5**

#### GENERAL CONCLUSION AND RECOMMENDATION

#### **5.1. Introduction**

The study set out to explore usage of exocentric compound words in Southern African newspapers. It has identified exocentric compound words used in these newspapers and displayed diverse relations that hold between exocentric compound constituents and exocentric compound entities. The study has also established patterns of exocentric compound words as used in the newspapers. The existing literature on the subject of exocentricity has centred mainly, on one class of nominal exocentric compound words in other languages inconclusive of other classes and inconclusive of Southern African part of the world. Therefore, the study has investigated different classes of exocentric compound words in Southern African newspapers through the following questions:

- 1. Are exocentric compound words used in Southern African newspapers?
- 2. How does each constituent of an exocentric compound word relate to the compound word entity?
- 3. Which and why are certain features of a compound word entity chosen for the formation of an exocentric compound word?

The chapter synthesises the findings of this study by answering the above questions. It identifies the implications for future research on the subject of exocentric compound words and newspapers and provides direction for future research. Again, it highlights the limitations of the study.

#### 5.2. Revisiting the Research Questions

The rubric question to the study addressed was: what is the relationship between individual constituents of an exocentric compound word, the exocentric compound word itself and the entity the exocentric compound word referred to as used in Southern African newspapers? This section will address the subsequent research questions one by one.

## 5.2.1. Are exocentric compound words used in Southern African newspapers?

The data collected from a corpus of four newspapers from two countries of Lesotho and South Africa revealed numerous exocentric compound words. The data showed major classes of exocentric compound words, ranging from compound nouns, compound adjectives, and compound verbs. There were also few instances of compound adverbs. The tables 45-58 below synthesise the exocentric compound words identified and are presented as per their classes. The tables include the patterns on the formation of the compound words.

#### **5.2.1.1. Compound Nouns**

These are a class of compound words found to be behaving as nouns in sentences. The data for this study demonstrated that compound nouns may involve the following patterns:

Table 45: Patterns of Compound Nouns Found in the Corpus

<b>Compound Noun Pattern</b>	Compound Noun Example
Noun + Noun	Rainbow, nightmare, tagline, spotlight, bottleneck, motor mouth, antithesis, mother tongue, brainchild, watchwords.
Adjective + Noun	Counterparts, backdrop, grandmother, aftermath, deadline, about-turn, standstill, heavyweights, highlight, lone-wolf
Noun + Adjective	Breakthrough
Verb + Noun	Step-parents, chairperson, logjam, think-tank, makeshift, comebacks, flip-flop

# **❖** Absolute Categorical Exocentricity (ACE)

The data also revealed compound nouns that are 'absolute categorical exocentric' (Scalise et al. 2009). This is a situation whereby the category occupied by the compound word as a whole is different from constituents' categories that make up the compound word. The following table illustrates this point.

Table 46: Patterns of Absolute Categorical Exocentric Compound Nouns

ACE Compound Noun	ACE Compound Noun Example	
Pattern		
Verb + Adverb	Start-ups, feedback, putdown, tie-ups, spill-over	
Verb + Verb	Budgets, mandate, outcry	
Adjective + Adjective	Newborn	
Adjective + Verb	Outfits, shortfall	

In the exocentric compound noun start-up, for instance, the first constituent is a verb and the second constituent is an adverb. According to the standard structure' assumption, it would be expected that an output category from a combination of a verb plus an adverb, be either of the two categories. In a situation above, the output category is a noun, hence, absolute categorical exocentricity.

#### Suffixation

Again the data have revealed a noticeable class of nouns made from suffixes -ship, -hood and -age. The table below exemplifies such compound nouns.

Table 47: Compound Nouns Formed from Suffixation

<b>Compound Noun Pattern</b>	Compound Noun Example	
Suffixation	Entrepreneurship, friendship, partnership, membership,	
	flagship, hardship, dictatorship, nationhood, livelihoods,	
	motherhoods, spinsterhood, blockage, patronage	

Katamba (1993) and Gagne and Spalding (2006) state that words formed from these suffixes are understood through the known derivational and the inflectional additions

because the suffixes themselves are morphemes which are themselves words. They submit that the contribution of these suffixes is not so transparent.

## **5.2.1.2.** Compound Verbs

The data for this study demonstrated a class of compound verbs. The table below presents the input categories of these words.

Table 48: Patterns of Compound Verbs Found in the Corpus

<b>Compound Verb Pattern</b>	Compound Verb Example	
Verb + Adverb	Handed over, carried over, write off, paying off, show off, stepping-up, take-up, take over, cough up, born out, root out, scale up	
Verb + Verb	Outline, come out, fall out	
Noun + Verb	Streamlining, mushroomed, bankrolled, spearheaded, kick started	

These words were found to function as verbs in the sentences in which they appeared.

## **\*** Absolute Categorical Exocentricity

The data also showed a case of absolute categorical exocentricity for compound verbs as well as shown in the table below.

Table 49: Pattern of Absolute Categorical Exocentric Compound Verb

ACE Compound Verb ACE Compound Verb Example			
Patter	1		
Adjective + Noun			Foreground

The compound verb here results from input categories of an adjective plus a noun however, it behaved as a verb as demonstrated in *Sentence 133- However, Mthethwa* employs a number of devices to **foreground** the inventive ways in which they respond to difficult circumstances.

## 5.2.1.3. Compound Adjectives

The data for the study reflected a class of compound adjectives as shown in Table 50.

Table 50: Patterns of Compound Adjectives

<b>Compound</b> Adjective	Compound Adjective Example	
Pattern		
Adjective + Adjective	Overdue, outright, wholesome	
Noun + Adjective	Upside-down, stereotypical, downstream, standalone	
Adjective + Noun	Full-length, white collar	
Verb + Adjective	Handsome, run-down	
Adjective + Verb	Like-minded, big-headed, open-air, longstanding, outstanding	

These compound words function in the way adjectives do when used in sentences. They modify nouns. Consider Sentence 31 below for illustration.

Sentence 31-We give a political balance sheet of a veteran politician who has been

through thick and thin of the pros and cons of Lesotho politics, Prime Minister Dr Thomas Motsoahae Thabane, now the chief executive of the coalition government founded on June 8, 2012 after a historic election of May 26 that had born no outright winner, compelling contesting political parties to forge strategic alliances.

The exocentric compound word *outright* is considered an adjective because it modifies a noun winner in the sentence.

## **\*** Absolute Categorical Exocentricity

The collected data also revealed compound adjectives that consist of absolutely different input categories. The following table demonstrate this point.

Table 51: Patterns of Absolute Categorical Exocentric Compound Adjectives

<b>ACE Compound Adjective</b>	ACE Compound Adjective Example	
Pattern		
Adverb + Adverb	Overall, erstwhile	
Adverb + Noun	Underway	
Verb + Adverb	Caught-up	

For instance, the compound adjective *erstwhile* comes before the noun 'comrades' in the *Sentence 143- The league found Masonga guilty of "grave and serious" offences after he fell out with his erstwhile comrades in the league*. This makes the compound word an adjective modifying the noun 'comrades' even though it is made up of adverb plus adverb combination.

#### **5.2.1.4.** Compound Adverb

The data showed one unproductive pattern of compound adverbs as shown in the table below

Table 52: Pattern of Compound Adverb

Compound Adverb Pattern	Compound Adverb Example
Adjective + Noun	Overnight

The compound adverb *overnight* answers the question when in the *Sentence 119-* "...Some people say Brazil will not tackle that, (but) I think it will. It's not something that takes place **overnight**."

# 5.2.2. How does each constituent of an exocentric compound word relate to the compound entity?

The data for this study reveal a diversity of relations pertaining to compound constituents and compound entities. Using WordNet Similarity tool, an exhaustive analysis of how each constituent relates to the entity of the compound word in which it appears is presented in Chapter four of this study. The analysis is done in three stages. The first stage presents the meaning of the exocentric compound word as it is used in the newspaper sentences. This is followed by the presentation of the most relevant meaning (sense) of individual constituent that make up the exocentric compound word. The two stages lead into the third stage of realising the relation between the compound constituents and the compound entity. This three-level analysis is found significant in the understanding of the usage of exocentric compound words. It is a high-spot on how new exocentric compound words may be created and how a language can grow in general. The table below shows a condensed presentation of exocentric compound constituents and exocentric compound entities' relations.

Table 53: Summary of Constituent-compound Entity Relations
(Meanings of exocentric compound words are taken from WordNet Similarity 3.0 Tool)

#	Constituent- compound Entity Relation	Exocentric Compound Word Example	Exocentric Compound Word Meaning
1	Transition	Undergo	Pass through
2	Action-Cause	Enterprise	A purposeful or industrious undertaking, especially one that requires effort or boldness
3	Result-Cause	Logjam	Any stoppage attributable to unusual activity
4	Part-Whole	Counterparts	A person or thing having same function or characteristics as another
5	Attribution	Anti-thesis	Exact opposite, the juxtaposition of contrasting words or ideas to give a feeling of balance
6	Purpose	Watchwords	A slogan used to rally support for a cause
7	Purpose-Action	Tagline	Laugh line, the point of a joke or humorous story
8	Location-Purpose	Household	A social unit living together

9	Receiver-Action	Landmark	An event marking a unique or important historical change of course or one on which important development depends
10	Action-Receiver	Stepping-stone	Any means of advancement
11	Position	Backdrop	Background, backcloth as scenery hung at back of stage
12	Position-Action	Offspring	The immediate descendents of a person
13	Action-Position	Tie-ups	A social or business relationship
14	Agent-Position	Line-up	A line of persons arranged in ranks
15	Position-Agent	On-lookers	Someone who looks on
16	Instrument-Position	Spear-headed	Lead
17	Time	Erstwhile	Belonging to some prior time
18	Time-Place	After-world	The place where you are after you die
19	Time-Action	Backlog	An accumulation of jobs not done or materials nor

			processed that are yet to deal with
20	Action-Time	Take-up	Pursues or resume
21	Action-Condition	Put-downs	A crushing remark
22	Activity-Oriented	Networks	An interconnected system of things or people
23	Status	Heavy weight	A person of exceptional importance and reputation
24	Agent-Agent	Motor-mouth	Someone who talks ceaselessly
25	Status-Agent	Archbishop	A bishop of highest rank
26	Action-Agent	Chairperson	An officer who preside
27	Purpose-Agent	Livestock	Any animals kept for use or profit
28	Agent-Condition	Honeymoon	A holiday taken by a newly married couple
29	Agent-Output	Mother-tongue	One's native language, the language learned by children and passed from one generation to the next
30	Intensity	Fever-pitch	A state of extreme excitement

31	Action-Intensity	Beef-up	Make strong or stronger
32	Intensity-Action	Overshadowed	Make appear small by comparison
33	Position-Intensity	Root-out	Destroy completely, as if down to roots
34	Outcome-Intensity	Breakthrough	A productive insight; an important discovery
35	Intensity-Outcome	Flip-flop	A decision to reverse an earlier decision
36	Metaphor	White collar	Of or designating salaried professional or clerical work or workers
37	Output-Input	Newborn	A baby from birth to four weeks
38	Input-Output	Rubber-stamp	Approve automatically
39	Input-Input	Makeshift	Something contrived to meet an urgent need or emergency, made or done using whatever available
40	Output-Distance	Crackdown	Severely repressive actions
41	Personality	Non-starter	A person with a record of failing, someone who loses consistently
42	Movement	Comebacks	Returns by a celebrity to some previously successful

			activity
43	Measurement	Scale-up	Increase proportionally

## **5.2.3.** Neologisms

This section reveals structures of new compound word formations identified in the corpus as reflected in Table 54.

Table 54: Structures of Neologisms in the Corpus

Structures of Neologisms		Neologism Examples
String-like neologism	compound	King-of-the-hill, better-the-devil-you-know, resources- for-arms
Pre-modified neologism	compound	Un-Coen, declassification, de-link, disused
Coined neologism	compound	Willy-nilly, tender-preneuring

The present study aligns with Yule (2006: 53) that journalists enjoy outdoing each other by means of generating "better" words, nonetheless, people have the ability of understanding these new formations as stated by Aronoff and Fudeman (2005: 46).

# **5.2.1.5.** Compound Neologism Patterns

The following section presents patterns of neologisms identified in the corpus. The neologisms cover the four major lexical categories of verbs, nouns, adjectives and adverbs.

# **5.2.1.5.1.** Compound Neologism Verb Patterns

The data for this study reveals that compound neologism verbs can be of the following patterns as shown in the table.

Table 55: Patterns of Compound Neologism Verbs

Compound Neologism	Compound Neologism Verb Example
Verb Pattern	
Adverb +Verb	Down-listed
Verb + Adverb	Live off
Verb + Verb	Roll-out
Pre-modified	De-linked, declassification

## **5.2.1.5.2.** Compound Neologism Noun Patterns

The data also featured patterns for compound neologism nouns as reflected in Table 56.

Table 56: Patterns of Compound Neologism Nouns

Compound Neologism	Compound Neologism Noun Example
Noun Pattern	
Verb + Noun	Doomsayers, tailwinds, mixtape
Adjective + Noun	Old stock, up-tempo, in-thing
Noun + Noun	Sore-thumb, knee-jerk, legwork
Verb + Adverb	Getaway
Adverb + Verb	Underserviced, underbanked

## 5.2.1.5.3. Compound Neologism Adjective Patterns

Table 57 shows patterns of compound neologism adjectives.

Table 57: Patterns of Compound Neologism Adjectives

Compound Neologism	Compound Neologism Adjective Example
Adjective Pattern	
Adjective + Noun	Distant-uncle, family-appropriate,
Adverb + Adjective	Mega-famous, mega-rich
Adjective + Adjective	Better-placed
Preposition + Preposition	Up-to

## 5.2.1.5.4. Compound Neologism Adverb Pattern

There were a few instances of compound neologism adverb as demonstrated in the table below.

Table 58: Patterns of Compound Neologism Adverb

Compound Neologism	Compound Neologism Adverb Example
Adverb Pattern	
Noun + Noun	Bucket-loads

## **5.2.3.4.** Conceptual Meanings

The data reveals a noticeable number of new words whose interpretation is activated by the concept expressed in the compound word. The new words under this section are divided into three sub-sections as demonstrated below.

Firstly, data show compound neologism whose interpretation is based on the constituents that make up the compound word. For instances, the constituents in the compound words *distant* 

uncle, down-date, bucket-loads were first stripped off their status as compound constituents and treated as separate entities in order to give a suitable meaning to the whole compound word. Secondly, there are compound neologisms that are interpreted in consideration of partial context. Thus, the compound neologisms are interpreted through how they are used in context plus through consideration of at least one constituent. For instance, the compound neologism up-to gathered no contribution from any of its constituents. Only the compound word was recognised by the tool but the constituents could not add up to the entity of the compound as a whole. Thirdly, the data reveal compound neologisms that are interpreted from the context only. This is a situation whereby even though the compound word is recognised and interpreted by the tool, together with its constituents, the way it is used in context does not reflect any relation between the compound entity and the compound constituents; therefore, it could only be understood through that context in which it appears.

Knee-jerk is one such an example.

# 5.2.4. Which and why are certain features of a compound word entity chosen for the formation of an exocentric compound word?

The response to this question is derived from the given and specific meanings behind the exocentric compound words. This implies that the constituents that compose an exocentric compound word are directly related to the entity referred to by the exocentric compound word. Therefore, the intended meaning could not be reached if a different constituent was used. The features chosen are the most relevant features of the exocentric compound word to give the intended meaning. They were chosen because they are the means of getting the intended message across. By applying the WordNet Similarity, the relevant features of the compound entity were at disposal for scrutiny.

#### **5.3.** Theoretical Implication

Previous studies on the subject of compounding focused on the aspects of compositionality, classification and application of compound words. They particularly studied endocentric compound words. Though these studies have said little about exocentric compound words, they have nonetheless opened doors for further studies on exocentric compound word since they disposed gaps in the existing knowledge about exocentric compound words.

#### 5.4. Strengths and Contribution of the Study

This section highlights new knowledge on the subject of exocentric compound words revealed by the findings of this study. The section derives from existing literature on the subject and the data collected and analysed for this study.

The present study identified compound words made up of more than two words. It has revealed that any sequence of words may be strung together and function as one unit. This kind of word structure is a feature of media language as supported by Bell (1995: 25) who pointed out that content is comprised in newspapers due to space constraint. Despite this unusual formation of compound words, this study provides a direction on the analysis of such structures.

In addition, the study has been able to highlight various relations between compound constituents and compound entities through the use of WordNet Similarity. The tool displayed all interpretation possible for an individual constituent. This enhanced a clear choice on the appropriate feature to connect with the compound entity as a whole. Furthermore, the inclusion of context of compound words ensured the appropriateness of the feature and the relevant relation between the constituent and the entity.

The study has also displayed various patterns determined by the function of each constituent in relation to the entity in question. It has emphasised the significance of context in the meanings of words. This has also been clearly reached because of the analytical tool used for this study.

This study has contributed in expanding the scope of compounding as a word formation process by setting it in the Southern African media. This may be used as a reference for further research in compound words and media.

Again, English users will be able to create more words because of the diverse knowledge on how words may relate as presented in this study. In this way, the use of the English language would have expanded, not only in Southern Africa, but worldwide.

#### 5.5. Limitations to the Study

For some researchers it might have been considered a limitation for this study to be totally qualitative; however, it is worth-noting that with all the focus on quality of the data collected, this study has displayed even the miscellaneous yet significant information surrounding the concept of exocentric compound words and media. If both approaches were considered, the analysis would not have been this rich.

### 5.6. Suggestions and Recommendation for Future Research

This section of the study focuses on suggestions deemed fit for consideration and further investigation with regard to exocentric compound words and media. The rationale is to contribute to the use and analysis of exocentric compound words. The following areas can be looked into:

- Comparison of the application of exocentric compound words between the two countries of Lesotho and South Africa.
- The use of quantitative approach to investigate the extent to which this type of compound words is used.
- It has been observed from the literature reviewed for this study that the trend in language and media has been on the general use of language to convey certain perceptions, attitudes and ideologies, the study recommends specific research on the use of exocentric compound words as a stylistic device in media discourse.

## **5.7. Summary of Chapter 5**

Based on the literature used in this study and the findings of this study, the study establishes that the major basis of exocentric compound words classification and interpretation springs out of the communication purpose held by the speaker, hence a distinct preference of one compound constituent over the other.

Due to a diversity of relations and patterns shown between constituents that make up a compound word, the study also concludes that words are more loaded with subtle meanings and relations when investigated in context. The findings of this study have actually affirmed interrelation of word formation processes with the study of language in general.

It, therefore, calls for general conclusion that contextual surroundings of exocentric compound words in question contribute magnificently in determining the category, meaning and the relation such compound words possess towards other words.

#### REFERENCES

- Adams, V. 1973. An Introduction to Modern English Word-formation. London: Longman.
- Akmajian A., R. Demers, A. Farmer and R. Harnish. 1997. *An Introduction to Language and Communication*. (4<sup>th</sup> Edition). Cambridge: The MIT Press.
- Allen, K. 1986. Linguistic Meaning. New York: Routledge and Kegan Paul.
- Altheide, D. 1996. Qualitative Media Analysis. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.
- Anderson, S. 1982. "Where's Morphology?" Linguistic Inquiry. Volume 13. Pages 571-612.
- Anderson, S. 1988. "Morphological Theory." In: Newmeyer, F. (Editor). *Linguistics: The Cambridge Survey*. Volume 1. Pages 146-191.
- Anderson, S. 1990. "On Looking into Words." *Proceedings of the 1989 ESCOL Meeting*.

  University of Delaware. Department of Linguistics, Ohio State University.
- Anderson, S. 2003. "Morphology." *Encyclopaedia of Cognitive Science*. Volume 1. Pages 402-405.
- Anderson, S. (1992). A-Morphous Morphology. Cambridge: CUP.
- Arcodia, G. F., N. Grandi and F. Montermini. (date unknown). "Hierarchical NN Compounds in a Cross-linguistic Perspective." Pages 1-29. [www.grandionline.net/Nicola/pubblicazioni/Arcodia-Grandi-Montermini.pdf].
- Aronoff, M. (1993). Morphology by Itself. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Aronoff, M. 2009. "Morphology: An Interview with Mark Aronoff." *Revel*. Volume 7, number 12.
- Aronoff, M. and K. Fudeman. 2005. "What is Morphology?" *Fundamentals of Linguistics*. Volume 1. Pages 49-54.

- Bauer, L. (2003). *Introducing Linguistic Morphology*. (2nd Edition). Washington, D.C.: Georgetown University Press.
- Bauer, L. (2004). A Glossary of Morphology. Washington, D.C.: Georgetown UP.
- Bauer, L. 1978. The Grammar of Nominal Compounding. Odense: Odense University Press.
- Bauer, L. 1994. "Head and Modifier." In: Asher, R.E. (Editors). *The Encyclopedia of Language and Linguistic*. Pages 1529-1532. Oxford: Pergamon.
- Bauer, L. 2001. "Compounding". In: Haspelmath, M. et al. (Editors). *Language Typology and Language Universals*. Volume 1. Pages 695-707. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
- Bauer, L. 2001. "Morphological Productivity". *Language: Journal of the Linguistic Society of America*. Volume 79, number 3. Pages 646-647.
- Bauer, L. 2004. "Adjectives, Compound Words and Words". *Nordic Journal of English Studies*. Volume 3, number 1.Pages 7-22.
- Bauer, L. 2008a. "Exocentric compound words'. *Journal of Humanities, Social Sciences and Law: Morphology*. Volume 18, number 1. Pages 51-74.
- Bauer, L. 2009. 'Typology of Compounds." *The Oxford Handbook of Compounding*. Lieber,R. and P. Stekauer. (Editors). Pages 343-356. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Bauer, L. 2010. "The Typology of Exocentric Compounding." *Cross-disciplinary Issues in Compounding*. Scalise, S. and I. Vogel. (Editors). Pages 147-164. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Bauer, L. and A. Renouf. 2001. "A Corpus Based Study of Compounding in English."

  \*\*Journal of English Linguistics.\*\* Volume 29, number 2. Pages 101-123.

  [http://eng.sagepub.com].
- Beard, R. (1995). *Lexeme-Morpheme Base Morphology*. Albany, N.Y.: State University of New York Press.
- Bell, A. 1991. The Language of New Media. Oxford: Blackwell.

- Bell, A. 1995. "Language and the Media". *Applied Linguistics and Related Disciplines*. Volume 15. Pages 23-41.
- Benczes, R. (n.d.) "Blending, Metaphor and Metonymy in Exocentric Compound Words." [http://www.ucs.muncal/~branigan/courses/2103/Readings/reading.11.pdf].
- Benczes, R. 2002. "The Semantics of Idioms: A Cognitive Linguistic Approach." *The Even Yearbook*. Volume 5. Pages 17-30.
- Benczes, R. 2004. "On the analyzability of English Exocentric Compound Words." *Jezikoslovlje*. Volume 5, number 1. Pages 1-21.
- Benczes, R. 2006. "Creative compounding in English." PhD Thesis. Budapest: Eotvos Lorand University.
- Bisetto, A. & S. Scalise. 2005. "The Classification of Compound Words." *Lingue e Linguagio*. Volume 4. Pages 319-332.
- Bloomfield, L. 1933. Language. London: Allen and Unwin.
- Booij, G. 2007. *The Grammar of Words: An Introduction to Linguistic Morphology*. (2nd Edition). New York: Oxford University Press Inc.
- Botha, R. 1968. *The Function of the Lexicon in Transformational Generative Grammar*. The Hague: Mouton.
- Bubenik, V. (1999). *An Introduction to the Study of Morphology*. LINCON Course Books in Linguistics, 07. Muenchen: LINCOM Europa.
- Bybee, J. L. (1985). *Morphology: A Study of the Relation between Meaning and Form*.

  Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Carroll, L. 1994. *Through the Looking Glass*. London: Penguin Popular Classics.
- Collins, P. and C. Hollo. 2000. English: An Introduction. Hampshire: Macmillan Press Ltd.
- Coulson, S. 2000. Semantic Leaps. Frame-shifting and Conceptual Blending in Meaning Construction. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

- Crabtree, B. F. and J. Power. 1985. *An Introduction to Language*. (4th Edition). Chicago: Holt, Rinehart and Winston Inc.
- Crabtree, F. B. and M. L. Miller. 1992. *Doing Qualitative Research, Part 657*. Sage University: Sage Publications.
- Crystal, D. 1987. *The Cambridge Encyclopaedia of Language*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Crystal, D. 2003. *A Dictionary of Linguistics and Phonetics*. (5th Edition). Cambridge: Blackwell Publishing.
- Curtis.2011.[www2.uncp.edu/home/acurtis/Courses/resourseForCourses/WritingFeatureStories.html].
- De Saussure, F. 1983. *Course in General Linguistics*. [www.amazon.co.uk/Ferdinand-de-Saussure/e/BOOIIZVAVE].
- Delahunty, G. and J. Garvey. 2010. *The English Language: From Sound to Sense*. Fort Collins, Colorado: The WAC Clearing House and Parlour Press.
- Di Sciullo, A. and E. Williams. 1987. *On the Definition of Word*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Downing, P. 1977. "On the Creation and Use of English Compound Nouns." In: *Language*. Volume 53.
- Drachman, G. and A. Malikouti-Drachman. 1994. "Stress and Greek Compounding." *Phonologica* 1992. Pages 55-64.
- Dressler, W. U. 2006. "Compound Types." *The Representation and Processing of Compound Words*. In: G. Libben and J. Gonia. (Editors). Pages 23-44. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

- Driven, R. and Verspoor, M. 1998. "Handbook of Word-formation." In: Stekauer, P. and R. Lieber. (Editors). *Studies in Natural Language and Linguistic Theory*. Volume 64. New Hampshire: Springer Science and Business Media.
- Du Plooy, G. M. 2002. Communication Research: Techniques, Methods and Applications.

  Lansdowne: Juta and Co. Ltd.
- Exocentric. 2013. [Definition from Answers.com]. Accessed 2013/7/15
- Fabb, N. 1988. *Morphology and Modularity*. In: Honour of Henk Schultink. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
- Fabb, N. 2007. "Compounding." *The Handbook of Morphology*. In: Spencer, Andrew and Arnold Zwicky. (Editors). Blackwell Publishing 2001. Blackwell Reference Online. <a href="http://www.blackwellreference.com/subscriber/tocnode?id=g9780631226949">http://www.blackwellreference.com/subscriber/tocnode?id=g97806312269496</a>
  -chunk-g97806312269496
- Falik, S. J. 1978. *Linguistics and Language*. (2th Edition): New York: John Wiley and Sons.
- Fandrych, I. M. 2004. *Non-Morphematic Word-Formation Processes: A Multi-Level Approach to Acronyms, Blends, Clippings and Onomatopoeia*. PhD Thesis. Faculty of the Humanities (Department of English and Classical Languages). The University of the Free State, Bloemfontein.
- Fasold, R. and J. Connor-Linton. 2006. *An Introduction to Language and Linguistics*. (1st Edition. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Fellbaum, C. 2005. "WordNet and Wordnets." In: Brown et al. (Editors). *Encyclopaedia of Language and Linguistics*. (2th Edition). Oxford: Elsevier. Pages 665-670. [wordnet.princeton.edu].
- Finegan, E. 2007. Language: Its Structure and Use. Boston: Thomson Wadsworth.

- Finn, T.W. 1980. "The Semantic Interpretation of Nominal Compounds." *AAAI-80 Proceedings*. [www.aaai.org.].
- Fisk, J. 1990. Introduction to Communication Studies. (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition). London: Routledge.
- Foko, T. 2000. "A Comparative Analysis of the On-line Press and Print Press- A Case Study of Mopheme (The Survivor) Weekly Newspaper." Masters Degree Dissertation. [ccms.ukzn.ac/images/MA\_dissertations/thatol.pdf].
- Fromkin, V. and R. Rodman. 1988. *An Introduction to Language*. (4th Edition). Fort Worth: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Inc.
- Gagne, C. L. and T. L. Spalding. 2006. "Conceptual Combination: Implications for the Mental Lexicon." In: Libben, G. and G. Jarema. *The Representation and Processing of Compound Word*. Pages 145-168. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Galantomos, I., A. Georgia and K. Gourgaulianis. 2011. "The Content and Language of Newspaper Articles Related to the Official Ban on Smoking in Greece." *The Open Applied Linguistics Journal*. Volume 4. Pages 1-8.
- Gast, V. 2008. "Verb-noun Compounds in English and German." *Zaa*. Volume 56, number 3. Pages 269-282.
- Gawronska, B., A. Nordner, C. Johansson and C. Willners. 1994. "Interpreting Compounds for Machine Translation." In: COLING. Pages 45-50. [conf/coling/Gawronska NJW94].
- Geer, E. S., H. Gleitman and L. Gleitman. 1970. "Paraphrasing and Remembering Compound Words." *Journal of Verbal Learning and Verbal Behaviour*. Volume 11, number 3. Pages 348-355.
- Gillham, B. 2000. Case Study Research Methods. Bloomsbury: Bloomsbury Academic.

- Guevara, E., A. Scalise, A. Bisetto and C. Melloni. "MORBO/COMP: A Multilingual Database of Compound Words." Pages 2160-2163. [www.lrec-conf-org/proceedings/lrec2006/pdf/286\_pdf.pdf].
- Hanusch, F. 2008. "The Impact of Cultural Dimensions on Language Use in Quality Newspapers". *Estudos em Comunicacao n03*. Pages 51-78.
- Haspelmath, M. 2002. *Understanding Morphology*. London: Arnold.
- Hurrford, J. 2004. *Semantics: A Course Book*. (2th Edition). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press
- Hyona, J. 2012. "The Role of Visual Acuity and Segmentation Cues in Compound Word Identification." Frontiers in Language Sciences.

  [www.frontiersin.org/Lanuage\_Sciences/10.3389/fpsyg.2012.00188/abstract].
- Jackendoff, R. 1990. Semantic Structures. Cambridge (MA): MIT Press.
- Jackendoff, R. 2009. *Compounding in the Parallel Architecture and Conceptual Semantics*.

  Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Jandt, F. E. 2004. An Introduction to Intercultural Communication: Identities in a Global Community. (4th Edition). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.
- Jespersen, O. 1922. Language: its Nature, Development and Origin. London: Allen and Unwin.
- Jindal, D.V. 2007. *An Introduction to Linguistics*. (2th Edition). New Delhi: Prentice Hall of India.
- Katamba, F. 1993. *Morphology*. London: Macmillan Press Limited.
- Keeble, R. 1994. *The Newspaper Handbook*. London: Routledge.
- Kemmer, S. 2011. Types of Word Formation Processes. Rice University: University Press.
- Kerstens, R. Z. 1996. Lexicon of Linguistics. Utrecht University: University Press.

- Kim, S.N. and T. Baldwin. 2005. "Automatic Interpretation of Noun Compounds Using WordNet Similarity." In: *Proceedings of the Second International Joint Conference on Natural Language Processing (IJC NLP-05)*. Pages 945-956. Jeju, South Korea.
- Kumary, G. 2004. "Use of Idiomatic Compound Words in Newspapers." *Journal of Language* in *India*. Volume 4. <a href="http://www.languageinindia.com/oct2004/malayalamidions/html">http://www.languageinindia.com/oct2004/malayalamidions/html</a>.
- Lakoff, G. 1970. Irregularity in Syntax. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.
- Lauer, M. 1995. "Corpus Statistics Meet the Noun Compound: Some Empirical Results." In:

  \*Proceedings of the 33<sup>rd</sup> Annual Meeting of the Association for Computational Linguistics. [www.gabormelli.com/RKB/Noun-noun\_Compound\_Word].
- Leedy, P. and J. Ormrod. 2001. *Practical research: Planning and Design*. (7th Edition). Thousand Oaks: SAGE Publications.
- Lees, R. 1960. The Grammar of English Nominalisations. The Hague: Mouton.
- Lieber, R. 1992. Deconstructing Morphology. Chicago-London: The University of Chicago Press.
- Lieber, R. 2004. *Morphology and Lexical Semantics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Lieber, R. 2009. "A Lexical Semantic Approach to Compounding." *The Oxford Handbook of Compounding*. Lieber, R. and P. Stekauer. (Editors). Pages 78-104. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Lull, J. 2013. Media, Communication, Culture: A Global Approach. (2th Edition).
  Cambridge: Wiley Publishers.
- Marchand, H. 1969. *The Categories and Types of Present-day English Word-formation*. (2th Edition). Munich: Beck.

- Matjama, T. 2007. Presentation on the Media Environment in Lesotho. Transformation Resource Centre Media Workshop. [www.trc.org.ls/LDP website/downloads/MEDIA ENVIRONMENT-Presentation at TRC.pdf].
- Matthews, P.H. 1991. Morphology. (2th Edition). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- McGregor, W. (2009). *Linguistics: An Introduction*. London: Continuum International Publishing Group.
- McIntyre, A. 2012. "Seminar Issues in Morphology." *Fisheries and Wildlife Research*.

  Indian University: Fish and Wildlife Service.
- Meyer, C. B. 2001. "A Case in Case Study Methodology." *Field Methods*. Volume 13, number 4. Pages 329-352. [jashotta.tripod.com/case.pdf].
- Montermini, F. (date unknown). "Units in Compounding." In: Scalise, S. and I. Vogel. 2010. *Cross-disciplinary Issues in Compounding*. London: John Benjamins Publishing.
- Mukai, M. (date unknown). "Headedness in Compound Words in Minimalist Framework." [www.ling.nthu.edu.tw/teal/TEAL\_poster\_Makiko\_Mukai.pdf].
- Musanhu, B. 2009. "Chapter 5: Lesotho." In: Kadima, D. and S. Booysen. (Editors).

  \*Compendium of Elections in Southern Africa 1989-2009: 20 Years of Multiparty

  \*Democracy.\* EISA, Johannesburg, 161-162. [www.content.eisa.org.za/old-page/Lesotho-mass-media].
- Nespor, M. and A. Ralli. 1996. "Morphology-phonology Interface: Phonological Domains in Greek Compounds." *The Linguistic Review*. Volume 13, number 3. Pages 357-382.
- Newmeyer, F.J. 1970. "Some Remarks on Roeper's Remarks on Chomsky's 'Remarks'." [www.skase.sk/volumes/JTL03/04.pdf].
- Ningsih, A. W. and R. N. Rosa. 2013. "Types and Processes of Compound Words Used in Headline News Columns in 'The Jarkata Post' Newspapers." *eJournal English Language and Literature*. Volume 1, number 2. Pages 13-21.

- Nordquist, R. 2013. [grammar.about.com/od/tz/g/Word-Formation.htm].
- Pearl, L. 2004. "Morphology-Word Formation and Word Structure." http://www.wam.umd.edu/~11sp/LING200/Morphology.pdf.
- Pinker, S. 1999. Words and Rules. New York: Basics books.
- Plag, I. 2005. Word-formation in English Cambridge Textbooks in Linguistics. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Pollak, S., C. Roel, D. Walter and L. Nada. 2011. "Detecting Contrast Patterns in Newspaper Articles by Combining Discourse Analysis and Text Mining." *Pragmatics*. Volume 21, number 4. Pages 647-683.
- Radford, A. 2009. *Transformational Grammar: A First Course*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Rallapalli, S. and P. Soma. 2012. "A Hybrid Approach for the Interpretation of Nominal Compounds Using Ontology." 6<sup>th</sup> Pacific Asia Conference on Language, Information and Computation. Pages 554-563.
- Ralli, A. 2005. Morphology. Athens: Patakis.
- Ralli, A. 2007. Compounding: A Morphological Cross-linguistic Approach. Athens: Patakis.
- Ralli, A. and M. Andreou. 2010. "Revisiting Exocentricity in Compounding: Evidence from Greek and Cypriot." In: Kiefer, F., M. Ladani and P. Siptar. (Editors). *Morphology*. 2010. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Reah, D. 1998. The Language of Newspapers. London: Routledge.
- Renouf, A. 1996. "The ACRONYM Project: Discovering the Textual Thesaurus." In: *Papers from English Language Research on Computerised Corpora (ICAME 16)*, Lancashire, I., C. Meyer and C. Percy. (Editors). Pages 171-187. Amsterdam: Rodopi.

- Roeper, T. 2005. "Chomsky's Remarks and the Transformationalist Hypothesis." In: Lieber, R. and P. Stekauer. (Editors). *Handbook of English Word-formation*. Kluwer, Dordrecht. Pages 125-146.
- Roeper, T. and S. Seigel. 1978. "A Lexical Transformation for Verbal Compounds." *Linguistic Inquiry*. Volume 9, number 2. Pages 199-260.
- Rua, L. P. 2005. "The Manipulative Power of Word-formation Devices in Margaret Atwood's Oryx and Crake." *Revista Alicantina de Estudios Ingleses*. Volume 18. Pages 149-165.
- Salmon, P. 2000. "The Term Morphology." In: Booij, G., C. Lehmann and J. Mugdan.(Editors). Morphology: An International Handbook on Inflection and Word-formation.Volume 17, number 1. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter. Pages 15-22.
- Samovar, L. A. and R. E. Porter. 2001. *Communication between Cultures*. (4<sup>th</sup> Edition). Stamford, Connecticut: Wadsworth/Thompson Learning.
- Santana, M. 2000. "Word Formation: Compound Nouns." [http://sanatana.uni.muenster.de/seminars/morphologyHSws02/transparencies/morpdologie116.pdf].
- Scalise, S. (Editor). 1992. "The Morphology of Compounding." *A Special Issue of Rivista di Linguistica*. Volume 4, number 1.
- Scalise, S. 1984. *Generative Morphology*. Dordrecht: Foris.
- Scalise, S. and E. Quevara. 2006. "Exocentric Compounding in a Typological Framework." *Lingue linguagio*. Volume 2. Pages 185-206.
- Scalise, S., A. Bisetto & E. Guevara. 2005. "Selection in Compounding and Derivation." In:

  Dressler, W. D. et al. (Editors). *Morphology and its Demarcation*. Pages 133-150.

  Amsterdam: John Benjamins Publishing Company.

- Scalise, S., A. Fabregas and F. Fotza. 2009. "Exocentricity in Compounding." Morbo.lingue.unibo.it
- Selkirk, E. 1982. *The Syntax of Words*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Servaes, J. 1999. Communication for Development: One World, Multiple Cultures. Cresskill: Hampton Press.
- Silverman, D. 2001. Interpreting Qualitative Data. (3th Edition). London: Sage Publications.
- Spencer, A. 1991. Morphological Theory. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Spencer, A. 2003. "Morphology in Linguistics." Chapter in: *International Encyclopaedia of Social and Behavioural Sciences*. University of Essex: Elsevier Ltd
- Stageberg, N. 1999. An Introductory English Grammar. Chicago: Holt, Rinehart and Win.
- Stake, R. 1995. The Art of Case Study Research. 1000 Oak: Sage Publication.
- Stevenson, R. L. 1994. *Global Communication in the Twenty-first Century*. New York: Longman.
- Walter, T. 2006. "Disaster, Modernity and the Media." In K. Garces-Foley. (Editors). *Death and Religion in a Changing World*. Armonk, New York: M.E. Sharpe.
- Warren, B. 1978. "Semantic Patterns of Noun-Noun Compounds." *Gothenburg Studies in English*. Volume 41. [www.gabormelli.com/RKB/Noun-noun\_Compound\_Word].
- William, E. 1981. "On the Notions 'Lexically Related' and 'Head of a Word." *Linguistic Inquiry*. Volume 12. Pages 245-74.
- Wisniewski, K. 2007. Word Formation Processes: How New Words Develop in the English Language. New York: Blackwell.
- Yin, K. R. 2009. Case Study Research Design and Methods. London: Sage Publication.
- Yousefi, M. 2009. "Word Formation Analysis: The Productivity of Compounding in English Short Stories." [https://www.academia.edu/4271189/]. Accessed 23/03/2011.
- Yule, G. 2006. The Study of Language. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Zimmer, K. E. 1964. "Affixal Negation in English and Other Languages." *Proceedings of the Annual Meeting of the North Eastern Linguistic Society.* Volume 8, number 5.

[En.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\_of\_newspapers\_in\_South\_Africa]. Accessed 2012/14/06.

[Eng.1september.ru/2002/08/4.htm]. Accessed 2012/14/06.

[https://sites.google.com/a/Sheffield.ac.uk/all.aboutlinguistics/branches/morphoogy/what-is-morphology/IMG\_4778-001.JPG?attredirects=0]. Accessed 2011/04/12.

[visibleadvertising.co.za/Media/Citizen.Saturday.html]. Accessed 2013/07/06.

[www.fuldafreepress.com/the-role-of-newspaper-in-the-modern-society/]. Accessed 2013/14/08.

[www.getitwriteonline.com/archive/042703CompWdsHyh.htm]. Accessed 2012/14/06.

[www.johnwatsonsite.com/My ClassNotes/Topics/Feature Article/herald feature article.htm].

Accessed 2013/19/03.

[www.kas.de/wf/doc/4215-1442-2-30.pdf]. Accessed 2012/19/05.

[www.mediaclubsouthafrica.com/component/content/article?id=73%3]. Accessed 2011/28/08.

[www.pressreference.com/Ky-Ma/Lesotho.html]. Accessed 2012/14/06.

#### **APPENDIX**

# Feature stories from Lesotho Times, Public Eye, Saturday Citizen and Sunday

### **Independent Newspapers**

#### **Lesotho Times features**

Why It Makes Sense for Businesses to Threaten Online Critics

November 21, 2013 Lestimes Technology No comments



Add another page to the fast-growing chronicle of shady ways for companies to try bullying customers who post unflattering reviews on the Internet.

This time the unlucky critic was Jen Palmer, who told a CBS affiliate in Salt Lake City that she received a bill for \$3,500 from Kleargear.com, a company that sells office tchotchkes. Kleargear claimed the negative review Palmer had posted on RipoffReport.com was a violation of a nondisparagement clause in its terms of service, which happen to include a hefty fine. The company also threatened to move the issue to a collection agency if Palmer didn't cough up, with corresponding damage to her credit.

Kleargear seems to have lost this one by overreaching. Its attempt to quash one very minor piece of bad publicity brought down a torrent of unflattering media coverage, and the company felt compelled to take the terms down from its website. This isn't going to help it sell more desktop nap pillows. But the incident also shows how effective this kind of threat can be. It's not hard to damage someone's credit, but consumer advocates say it's comically difficult to fix even egregious abuses of the credit system.

STORY: Does That Review of a Disappointing Burger Make You a Yelp Employee?

From the facts reported on the local news, Kleargear falls into the category of egregious abuse. The website Techdirt points out that the nondisparagement clause didn't seem to exist when Palmer posted the review. Referring someone to a collection agency within 30 days of a debt is not exactly standard business practiceeither, according to Evan Hendricks of *Privacy Times*, a newsletter that follows the credit-reporting industry. (Numerous attempts by *Bloomberg Businessweek* to reach Kleargear were unsuccessful.) Reporting something that you know to be untrue to a credit bureau violates federal law, as well as state laws in Massachusetts and California. But the primary recourse for those damaged by such reports is to go

a credit bureau violates federal law, as well as state laws in Massachusetts and California. But the primary recourse for those damaged by such reports is to go through the credit bureaus themselves, which are required by law to investigate. While the advent of the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau has forced credit bureaus to be more responsive, investigations are often perfunctory at best, says Ira Rheingold, the executive director of the National Association of Consumer Advocates.

If Palmer actually has agreed to these terms and this case becomes a debate over the validity of the terms of service themselves, the legal issue grows even cloudier. There are various fraud statutes that might apply, but consumers will have trouble even finding a lawyer to repair their credit. Few people even practice this kind of law. "It's really messy," says Hendricks, "but in the short term the consumer is really screwed."

STORY: 'Operation Clean Turf' and the War on Fake Yelp Reviews

Kleargear isn't the first company to experiment with these methods for muzzling critics. Medical Justice, a reputation service for doctors, drew fire for making patients sign contracts that transferred the copyright of their future reviews to their doctors, thereby giving the doctors a way to force independent websites to pull down the reviews. The organization eventually gave up on the practice. There have been reports of similar clauses popping up in the terms of service for rental properties.

Eric Goldman, a professor at Santa Clara University School of Law, says that such terms aren't likely to stand legal scrutiny. There is increasing momentum to try to combat lawsuits that claim online reviews are defamatory, and more than half of U.S. states have passed so-called anti-SLAPP laws that combat defamation lawsuits filed to silence constitutionally protected speech.

Then again, the point of the intimidation is not to get that far. In the same way that patent trolls operate by threatening lawsuits, not by actually filing them,

businesses can intimidate people into taking down unflattering reviews—or not writing them in the first place—by claiming some legal right they don't have. It's unclear how often this is going on. The rational response to a letter threatening to ruin your credit is to consent to the demands being made, not talk to a local television

- See more at: <a href="http://lestimes.com/?p=14365#sthash.orkZ14Fy.dpuf">http://lestimes.com/?p=14365#sthash.orkZ14Fy.dpuf</a>

LG's new G2 smartphone impresses reviewers

December 4, 2013 Lestimes Technology No comments

1 15 AM

Privately January 2

No SIM Card - Effective ency calls only

Emergency call
Press and hold



The new LG G2 smartphone has exploded onto the mobile market with a host of positive reviews in its wake. With comments like "best smartphone in the world" (Stuff magazine), "a brilliant phone" (What Hi Fi?) and "Spec-tacular" (Wired), it is clear that LG's new 'learning from you' approach to smartphone design is paying off.

One happy customer, Associate Professor for the Department of Process Engineering at Stellenbosch University, Professor Lingam Pillay, emailed LG Mobile and said: "LG has really got it right this time with the G2. If LG establishes itself strongly in the smartphone market, the eventual winners will be the consumers on the ground, like myself. Seriously LG has really done a phenomenal job."

reporter. It seems inevitable that companies are going to keep testing the waters on this one.

"So where does that leave us?" says Goldman. "Two observations: One, when don't-review-us clauses are opposed to public scrutiny, they don't fare very well, and second, this is an idea that doesn't die very easily. Vendors can't resist."

What Hi-Fi? Sound and Vision Magazine, "the world's leading independent guide to buying and owning home cinema", awarded the new LG G2 a coveted five-star review. The publication, respected among consumers, lauded the smartphone for its picture quality design, speed and extensive battery life. The reviewer even went as far as to say the G2 can be favourably compared with Samsung's king-of-the-hill Galaxy S4 on many fronts. South African-based Stuff Magazine said in its review, "LG opted for some radical, new-age research techniques that involved finding out what people actually wanted in a phone and engineering it. The end result is that the G2 is close to flawless."

LG Mobile's new mantra, "Learning from you", is all about letting consumers know that they have been heard. In developing the G2, LG delved deep into meticulous market research to uncover what the modern smartphone user wants out of their mobile device.

The G2 design was born of Korean fashion designer Youngho Kim. It was he who studied human behaviour by observing hand movements, habit and overall behaviour when using a smartphone. Rather than blindly following the latest trends, LG Mobile was more interested in touching the consumer's senses in creating the perfect, functional and sleek smartphone.

Running on an android operation system, the G2 combines all the latest and greatest techno savvy all in one innovative device. Key features include its edge-to-edge display, a best-in-class power capacity, innovative rear panel buttons, optical image stabilisation and studio quality Hi-Fi sound.

Thomas van der Linde, General Manager of Marketing at LG South Africa says, "We are so thrilled about the positive reviews and feedback we are getting about the G2. After taking the time and effort to actually learn from the smartphone users, our aim was to design a phone that resonated with consumer needs. It is clear we have hit the mark with this one. The G2 is the beginning of great things to come for LG Mobile."

#### Techies ride Zim's internet wave

October 19, 2013 Lestimes Technology No comments



Developers have little knowledge about how to turn their ideas into dollars, but this is changing. On the benches outside the pub overlooking the cricket greens at Harare Sports Club, they hunch over laptops, selling ideas as diverse as how to sell cattle and how to help urban dwellers cook traditional meals.

It is a long way from Silicon Valley in California, but, amid a boom in social media use, Zimbabwe is seeing the emergence of a fast-growing start-up scene.

A few years ago Limbikani Makani was a bored IT manager at a nongovernmental organisation. He quit his job and set up TechZim, a tech news website that is hosting a "start-up challenge", attended by dozens of tech developers.

The interest has grown since the first event, which was held two years ago, reflecting the growing number of developers in Zimbabwe.

"We have created a launch pad for these entrepreneurs, enabling them to accelerate their start-ups to a level where they can make revenue," Makani says. Teledensity, the ratio of telephones to the population, stood at 91% in February, a big jump from 14% in 2008. Over the same period, mobile access has risen from about

11% to nearly 100%. Access to the internet

In 2000, only 0.4% of Zimbabweans had access to the internet. Now the figure has risen to 40%, according to official data.

kept at one of our partner farms, looked after."
And then there is ZimboKitchen, a service that delivers tutorials such as "how to make plain sadza", and gives recipes for other popular Zimbabwean dishes such as beef trotters, or muboora, pumpkin leaves stewed in peanut butter.

There is also TestLabs, a service that provides local high school students and teachers with relevant exam revision tools.

the one

ations

chnology

se and buy can

onal database,

e-average

Some of the websites and apps are already popular, but the challenge is to help developers make money. Investors are conservative and hesitate to gamble on start-ups, most of which are run by "green, fresh-out-ofcollege dreamers", as one bank chief executive described them

Free downloads

of its faste numbers o

> nion name untries" i

rowth in informati

livestock online.

Paying lobola via RLMS
On his website Banks invites user

cattle, don't worry. Each animal

be ear tagged, branded, entere

In the boom, developers are s

growing, and so is the range of their idea

Last year Allister Banks set up RLMS, or the Remote Livestock Marketing System, a start-up that allows trade

lobola cattle via RLMS. He has a selection of cattle on display on the site, from which, he says, a prospective

"If there is no space in the in-laws' residence for the

Ve have traded close to \$4-million so far," Banks says.

over the past year.

For now, most of the apps are free to download. Developers themselves have little knowledge about how to turn their ideas into dollars, a gap the likes of Makani are trying to bridge.

"The two sides don't speak the same language," he says. The techies also struggle to be taken seriously. "Our society demands that you have an actual job," developer Pardon Muza says, making finger quotes to show his annoyance.

Muza is one of many developers building an online payments site.

"You have to put up with being asked when you'll get a proper job, wear a tie and work normal hours and stuff." But Makani says developers are now increasingly focusing on building services that don't just sound cool, but bring solutions that can earn them money. "Initially, we focused on pure innovation in terms of technology and utility, but this has evolved into a more practical approach where strong market potential overrides technology that is used just for the sake of using cool technology," Makani says.

See more at:

http://lestimes.com/?p=13832#sthash.rQLAuPAS.d puf

Exploring invisible scars of domestic violence

November 28, 2013 Lestimes Features & Analysis, Opinion No comments



By Tsitsi Matope

MASERU — Keneoue Mohale is inconsolable as she narrates how her only 23-year-old daughter was shot several times by her ex-boyfriend in South Africa two years ago, killing her instantly.

The former boyfriend also shot and injured a friend who had tried to stop the shooting, before he turned the gun on himself and also died on the spot.

"Part of me died the day she left me. She was my best friend and most of all, the only daughter I had," Mohale said in an interview.

Mohale is a local businesswoman and also the Deputy President of She-hive — a Maseru-based organisation that fights domestic violence and advocates the rights of women and children.

According to Mohale, her daughter, Pulane, had been pursuing Psychology studies in South Africa when she met the man who would eventually take her life. "Every day, I ask why because I don't believe there could be a reason good enough for such gruesome violence or for anyone to take another person's life," Mohale said.

On Monday, Lesotho joined the rest of the world in commemorating the International Day for the Elimination of Violence against Women.

The Day, marked on November 25 each year, traditionally kick-starts the 16 Days of Activism Against Gender Violence — a global campaign which ends on December 10, Human Rights Day, and seeks to raise awareness about gender-based violence as a human rights issue at local, national, regional and international level. Lesotho, just like every other country in the world, has not been spared violence against women, which is also blamed for fuelling poverty and HIV and Aids. Years of violence have also seen many women maimed both physically and psychologically, while the girl-child remains vulnerable to various forms of abuse, which

Violence s another form of discrimination against women and this can either be through legal structures or practices that promote inequality between men and

Globally, more than 70 percent of women experience some form of violence in their lifetime.

include sexual abuse.

It is a worrying trend to society in general and the Lesotho Government which, through the Ministry of Gender, Youth, Sports and Recreation this week

launched the country's 16 Days of Activism Against Gender Violence.

Activities denouncing violence are expected to take place in various parts of the country for the duration of the campaign.

Mohale on Monday also attended the launch and afterwards lit some candles and prayed for her daughter and also the man who took her life.

"I miss her. Nothing can take her place; that's all I can say." Mohale's becoming a member of She-hive, which was established in September 2012, is also another way to heal herself from her loss.

A widow, Mohale also survived domestic violence and says her experience could help free other women in violent situations.

"I was lucky to have survived domestic violence because I realised early that I was going in circles.

"Like my daughter, some people might not be so lucky. "As She-hive, our mandate is to end domestic violence by breaking the silence and urging victims to seek help." Through counselling of both men and women, the organisation has been able to restore a few marriages that were on the verge of collapse, according to Mohale.

"The prevalence is high and what is sad is that many of the incidents are preventable if only couples could learn how to communicate.

"Poor communication is one of the causes of conflicts in many homes," Mohale said.

# Thato Malebane

Hers is a tale of how a union can be so twisted and empty of all the elements that qualify it to be called a marriage. After bearing four sons and a daughter, hers was supposed to be a happy marriage as the family also had a thriving business and all the money it needed. But Malebane, 59, likened her married years to "living hell" — a nightmare that caused her pain and left her with scars and a series of chronic diseases.

Apart from the many scars that have now become part of her body, Malebane is now paying the heavy price of hanging on to a dead marriage.

"Some of the marks are invisible because I now suffer from hypertension, diabetes and heart-related ailments caused by the many years I suffered from depression. "On countless nights, I would lie awake and cry and some days, I could not eat."

Malebane also showed an ugly mark on her breast, which she said were teeth-marks inflicted by one of her husband's lovers.

It is part of the evidence of the violence she endured. According to Malebane, she stayed with her husband for 14 years before they separated in 1986.

"The children did not change him.

"I think the marriage was not meant to be because it was because of my pregnancy that we got married and not love, on his part.

"Many times, I had pleaded with my parents to allow me to leave him but they could not hear of it.

"They told me, 'It is a taboo, a woman never gives up on her marriage and children", she said.

As a result, Malebane's only choice was to separate with her husband but continue sharing the matrimonial home to please her parents.

Yet this only worsened her situation. Despite being officially married, they both started dating other people, Malebane said.

"It was not a healthy arrangement because the violence just got out of hand.

"He became jealous and at one time he would follow me to the university where I was studying and assault me." Later, Malebane rebelled against her parents' wishes not to leave her husband and moved out of the matrimonial home to stay at a government-owned residence.

"I moved out because our children were also caught-up in the violence.

"They became like the police as they tried to protect me. "I remember one day, my husband threatening to kill one of our children for questioning his violent behaviour. "I decided it was enough and moved out with my

"I decided it was enough and moved out with my children."

But despite moving out, Malebane said her husband kept following her.

"That time, I reported him to the police but he was always released after spending a few days in jail." Malebane said her husband had invested part of his money in the lives of the women he dated, seemingly while searching for the love of his life.

He died at his home in 2000, where he had been staying alone.

# 'Malebohang Tšoele

When her late husband started cheating on her, Tšoele said she had advised him to marry his new lover if he believed he had found real love.

Her husband, a businessman, had enough resources to support a large family, so Tšoele said she could tolerate this side of her husband — a side she had not known when they got married.

But the affair had ended after a few months and Tšoele, 62, heaved a sigh of relief, thinking her husband would become a changed man.

However, after he started dating for the second and then third time, and then continually until she lost count,

Tšoele says she even stopped asking where he was when he did not come home for weeks.

Not only had he openly cheated, he had also become violent and difficult to live with.

"I understood him — that he was a different kind of man. He loved women, and I was prepared to welcome other wives if he wanted to marry and become a polygamist. "After all, those women were not going to be my wives but his

"As a traditionalist, I believe a man who formally informs his wife that he loves another and makes plans to marry, in accordance with our traditional values, is a respectful man.

"The kind of man I was married to was not respectful, not just to me but to the scores of other women he used to satisfy himself," Tšoele said.

The couple had married traditionally and was blessed with two sons and two daughters, who are all university graduates.

Tšoele, who is also a member of She-hive, said although she remained married and stayed with her abusive husband until his death in 2008, her strength to say "NO" to unprotected sex saved her life.

"My husband was very sick before he died. By the grace of God, he had agreed to using protection."

Tšoele explained she had endured the violence to protect her children and reduce the temptations, which she thought might come, with single motherhood.

"I know that a violent home is not a safe place to raise children but all I wanted was for my children to grow up with a mother and father staying together.

"I thought if step-parents were to be involved in their lives, they would be in a worse predicament."

With all her four children employed, Tšoele believes while she was deprived of love by her husband, she was there for her children who now shower her with love. However, She-hive President, 'Matsietsi Tsephe, said her organisation had since introduced new strategies that seek to promote harmonious families.

The involvement of men in the She-hive interventions, according to Tsephe, is to ensure they understand their role as the protectors and providers of their families.

"The concept of men being protectors seeks to promote an environment free of violence.

"It says 'the protector cannot turn around and become the abuser of those they are supposed to protect'," Tsephe said.

She cited poor communication, poor financial management, infidelity and interference by other family members as major causes of conflict and violence in many homes.

"The challenges in each home are different and solutions that can be applied are also different.

"All we advocate is for women to speak out and also help their partners to become open about their concerns. That way, a solution can be found. We believe divorce should be the last option after all interventions have failed," she said

Tsephe further said because some couples are unable to communicate their concerns, this could result in violence. "Small issues can degenerate into big problems if ineffective strategies such as suspicion, nagging and drinking beer to resolve or forget the problems, are used. "The issue really is for both men and women to be committed to building their marriages, understand the

realities of their lives and live, plan and work together in honestv."

Meanwhile, She-hive will hold an anti-domestic violence fun-walk in Thaba-Bosiu on December 6 before a candle-light event to remember all the people who lost their lives due to domestic violence in Maseru on the night of December 7.

'I want to see my mother smile again'

# By Tsitsi Matope

MASERU — A Lesotho's high HIV and Aids-related death rate has left many children orphaned, vulnerable and living under difficult conditions.

Currently, there are more than 200 000 orphans and vulnerable children (OVCs) in Lesotho and a significant number is looked after by elderly people.

It is not an easy task, according to the chairperson of the Maseru Senior Women Citizens Association, 'Makarabo Makhakhe.

Cases of grandparents who are struggling to look after their orphaned grandchildren may not be a new story. But this is a story that various stakeholders cannot ignore either

In an interview this week, Makhakhe explained the need for more interventions to help the frail caregivers who, in most cases, are unemployed.

She said the elderly also struggled to help the children cope with their losses as they lacked appropriate counselling skills.

As a result, the need to better understand the needs of such children and, at the same time, find ways to encourage young people to help ease the burden has inspired a new innovation.

The association this year partnered with the Bristol Myers Squibbs Foundation (Secure the Future Foundation), to carry out a series of life-changing training programmes targeting vulnerable children and caregivers in some parts of the country.

"We need to implement multi-faceted interventions if we are to secure a bright future for the children. Many are devastated by the loss of their loved ones. It is important that we know how to deal with them, especially those struggling to cope after their losses," Makhakhe said. She said the situation in some areas they visited was depressing. Some children, she explained, had dropped out of school to beg on the streets or to become domestic workers while others were involved in criminal activities and prostitution.

"This is the reality confronting us and as elderly people; we feel we need to do something. The challenge is that we are tired and cannot live forever. We therefore call upon all young people to join us and work with us to sustain these efforts."

Through the Bristol Myers Squibbs Foundation some vulnerable children from selected districts are going to receive life-changing training that will equip them with survival skills and boost their confidence.

The trained children are then expected to train and share their own experiences with other vulnerable children. The first group to be trained this week by the Namibia-based counselling trainers, Philippi Trust, comprised nine children aged between 11 and 17, from Maseru and Leribe

The training sought to equip the children with skills that can help them deal with various life situations.

The training also placed much emphasis on education and responsible behaviour — if the children are to achieve a brighter future.

"We are happy that the training allowed the children to pour their hearts out," Makhakhe said.

One of the children who received training, Mamathealira Mohale, 17, lost her father two years ago.

"I have no recollection of my mother and no idea what happened to her. I stayed only with my father and my elder sister," she said.

However, after the death of her father, she was taken-in by a neighbour in Thetsane, while her sister left to look for a job.

"I don't know where my sister is and have not heard from her."

She said although she is saddened by her loss, the training made her see a flicker of hope if she behaves responsibly.

"I have just written my Cambridge Overseas School Certificate (COSC) examinations and I am optimistic that I will pass and make it to university," said Mohale. Since she does not have any close relatives to be there for her in hours of need, she said she hence appreciated all the support and love she was receiving from well wishers.

"I have learnt that the world is not all doom and gloom. There are good people who have been there for me and this is comforting. The Girl Guides Association has been paying my school fees since I was in standard one. I thank God for the support I am getting especially through this training."

She explained the importance of understanding life's challenges and not allowing them to sway her the wrong way.

"I have learnt from the grannies too, that life is like a river, when it turns and rains — the flow and volume of water changes, so does life. They have taught us the importance of knowing how to respond to the good and the bad that can confront us in life.

"For example, I would like to share with other girls that getting married early or prostitution, are not good solutions to pressures experienced by many vulnerable girls."

Another participant, Katiso Nyai, 15, from Qoaling said since the death of his father, life had not been easy. His mother makes and sells clothes to sustain a family of five

Seeing his mother work so hard breaks his heart. He has also mastered the tailoring skill to help her out and ease her burden.

"The only choice I have is to help her look after us. I don't know why this happened to us (death of his father) but I would like to help my family survive the challenges."

He said education meant a lot to him and he had just sat for his standard seven examinations.

"With a good education I know I stand a better chance in life. I want to see my mother smile again."

In a separate interview, the facilitator of the training, Marianne Olivier, who is also the founder and director of Philippi Trust, said the government, private sector, non-governmental organisations, communities and other stakeholders should invest more in the creation of an enabling environment that supports the development of children and also builds the capacity of caregivers.

"The creation of structures that respond to the needs of the children at community level is critical for the sustenance of care and other interventions.

"This training is the first step towards ensuring the creation of such communities that are empowered to understand that caring for children is everybody's responsibility. More importantly, this initiative seeks to also build the capacity of the children to be able to tackle various situations," Olivier said.

She said the training had brought out the pain, anger and uncertainty in some of the children.

"Some children are in pain. We would like them to try and dwell on their good memories or the good and opportunities they can expect from life if they work hard in their education and behave responsibly. This is a process, but we hope with more support, we shall be able to help them break free from the pain. It is important that we make a breakthrough, so that they can also help other children."

She said the training also sought to help the children believe in themselves and understand they have the capacity to shape their own destinies.

"All the children living in difficult circumstances in the country need to understand that if they work hard in their studies, stay away from sex, drugs and alcohol, they will one day look back and marvel at their resilience, ambition and determination to change their temporary circumstances."

- See more at:

http://lestimes.com/?p=14405#sthash.e8KLE63f.dp uf

#### Tourism drive targets decision makers

November 21, 2013 Lestimes Features & Analysis No comments



By Tsitsi Matope



MASERU — The Lesotho Tourism Development Corporation (LTDC) chief executive officer, Mpaiphele Maqutu said decision-makers are a major target in his organisation's new marketing strategy.

Maqutu told the *Lesotho Times* this week it was critical for the corporation to forge strong partnerships with all decision-makers from both the public and private sectors, which would automatically make them tourism ambassadors wherever they are.

"Senior government officials and also corporate management have a lot of influence in their different spheres both locally and when they are performing other duties internationally.

"As the LTDC, we would like to have well-informed decision-makers who would carry the country's tourism flag wherever they are operating and be our ambassadors," Maqutu said.

However, for this to happen Maqutu said the decisionmakers need to experience the beauty of some, if not all, of the country's top tourist attractions.

"This experience will help them understand our tourism products, appreciate them and have the capacity to market the country to all the relevant stakeholders they meet when they travel abroad. We hope this would help increase the number of tourists visiting our country, as well as potential investors."

According to Maqutu, the government had selected tourism as one of the key priority areas for development. He explained this comes after noticing its potential to boost other sectors and its ability to create a chain of other sectors, which makes it a crucial vehicle for poverty reduction and employment creation. It was this realisation, which waqutu says necessitated

It was this realisation, which Maqutu says necessitated new innovations to boost the visibility of the country's tourism products.

Maqutu, who joined the corporation in July this year, further explained the need to make the sector vibrant enough to claim its rightful place in the economy. He said branding Lesotho as a nature challenge destination previously did not yield the expected results, hence the need to re-visit the branding of Lesotho as a unique "must visit" eco-tourism destination.

"When I got here, it was clear that the tourism script was almost empty and needed to be populated with products. We are not having as many tourists as we have the potential to receive. This is because the sector, in general, has not been able to take advantage of the fact that Lesotho is a diamond which every tourist would like to see after being embraced by the golden ring, which is South Africa. That is why we need to increase our partnership with South Africa, which continues to knock

on our doors in an effort to take tourism in our region to new heights."

Maqutu explained previous efforts to boost tourist arrivals had been hampered by moving away from, "our strong internationally accepted tag-line of the 'Kingdom in the Sky' moniker" which he said may not have been a good move.

Lesotho is the only country in the world which is entirely above 1, 000 metres above sea-level and its lowest point of 1, 400 metres is the highest in the world. Over 80 percent of the country lies above 1,800 metres.

"We don't need to let go of what distinguishes us as a special and unique destination but simply have to work towards improving that distinction. Globally, Lesotho is known as the Kingdom in the Sky or the Mountain Kingdom and this slogan does indeed speak to our unique topography and high altitude while also recognising the fact that we are one of the only three kingdoms left in Africa."

He said the country's strongest selling feature is its ecotourism natural features.

"We are far from the madding crowd because we sit on a much higher elevation. This elevation, therefore, makes Lesotho the place to be for those who want the freshest air to filter through and clean their lungs."

He also emphasised the need to highlight the unique fact that Lesotho is the only country in Africa, which wholly snows in winter.

"This should appeal to everyone who loves to ski and those who would want to witness our amazing snow-capped mountains and waterfalls. We also boast of being a 'four-season' country" because we have all the seasons — summer, winter, spring and autumn."

The beauty of the country, according to Maqutu, is also in its strong cultural base that is symbolised by a constitutional monarch and the historic footsteps of its founder, King Moshoeshoe I, which could be traced from Butha Buthe to Thaba Bosiu.

The country, he added, has also managed to preserve its beautiful blanket-wearing culture and secretive initiation of boys and girls, which should all be strong tourist attractions.

"We are rich in culture and currently looking forward to the construction of our first national museum and art gallery, where our stories are going to be told factually. The accurate account of who we are is of paramount importance for the preservation of our actual history as a people."

Maqutu also explained that the country's challenging environment for lovers of adventure, was another standalone tourism feature, particularly for backpackers and those who seek to enjoy the mountain trails. On the other hand, he said, Lesotho has abundant water resources, some of which fill the deep and awesome gorges and also make the country a special place for the discerning tourist. These are also home to the beautiful Rainbow Trout and the endangered Maloti Minnow fish. The stunning Angora goats, which appear to pause and show-off their chihuahua-like facial features to visitors, are also another interesting feature on the Lesotho's undulating landscape.

However, despite such an attractive package Lesotho receives just slightly under half- a million tourists annually — far much less than other small countries like Swaziland who receive well over a million tourists every year.

Maqutu said these are worrying statistics, hence his intention to push an agenda that supports the formulation of a government-led, private sector-driven and community-based tourism sector aimed at improving tourism revenue.

"The private sector has a major role to play and with sound business decisions, they can take full advantage of what Lesotho has to offer. We see this through the South African tour operators daily come into Lesotho with droves of tourists while our private sector operators remain as just on-lookers as their neighbours reap the handsome economic rewards.

"We are here to support our private sector and LTDC is committed to assist in the setting-up of robust private sector engagement forums which will deliver the much needed private sector participation."

He said the recent roll-out of the accommodation stargrading system, is also going to support the private accommodation businesses to improve their facilities and ensure a world-class hospitality sector that does not disappoint visitors.

"With improved facilities, establishments would get visitors willing to stay longer than they usually do. The star-grading exercise is currently voluntary but would be mandatory by 2016."

Maqutu also explained the importance of having in place strategies that are inclusive of local communities settled around the tourism products.

"We want local communities to participate in developing tourism and assume ownership of various projects. We also need to collectively develop products in partnership with local communities. Without community participation, these products would lack the very essence that can breathe life into them.

"Although the tourists are fascinated with products, these would be meaningless and incomplete if local communities around them are not an integral part.

Tourists can only claim an experience of a lifetime when they see smiling people around, waving at them and even giving them water to drink."

Local communities, the LTDC chief also noted, should be well-educated on how to treat tourists and also be supported to become well-organised for them to tap into the sector and benefit meaningfully.

"Tourism is the only sector where growth and benefits trickle down to a villager singing *lengae* and dancing *Mokhibo*," said Maqutu, adding his focus is also on pushing for the facilitation of renewed investment promotion efforts to further develop tourism products. Government, he added, has been overburdened by the responsibility to do the bulk of developments alone due to the private sector's low-participation and appetite in this area.

"It is imperative that the situation is addressed through initiatives such as Public Private Partnerships and other collaborations with Non Governmental Organisations," he said.

He said there is also need to identify areas that need developments such as road networks, cable cars to limit disturbance on the environment, electricity, water and the much needed accommodation facilities.

Maqutu said the LTDC's mandate is to bring all stakeholders together and ensure the implementation of systems and development of infrastructure that would improve accessibility and increase spending in Lesotho.

He explained that many years of under-funding the corporation, together with governance-related challenges and an unresponsive organisational structure, negatively impacted on the corporation's performance.

For the past four years, he explained, the corporation's financial books have not been audited and this saw the recent introduction of the compliance department, which is expected to help them improve on issues of accountability.

"This has been a welcomed move by our newly appointed board of directors", he added.

He went on to add: "We are now more inclined to streamlining our operations as seen by the merging of the strategic marketing and the investment promotion departments. However, this is not going to take away the distinctive nature of the two business units or erode their role."

He said the new organisational structure is meant to improve the corporation's governance system while at the same time, help LTDC move towards achieving its mandate of marketing Lesotho as a preferred travel and tourism investment destination.

"We are fortunate that the Government understands that for LTDC to be effective, it needs more resources. The Ministry of Tourism, Environment and Culture and indeed our board of directors, have both pledged unwavering support to ensure that we are adequately funded to execute our mandate.

Already, we are seeing a great improvement in the additional support of our new marketing thrust." imes.com/?p=14359#sthash.sdjnjEcv.dpuf Spotlight on abuse in families

November 14, 2013 Lestimes Features & Analysis No comments

# By Mohalenyane Phakela

MAFETENG — Sesotho Media and Development trainee Mohapi Moshesha said abuse can lead to the spread of HIV and other sexually transmitted diseases. Addressing Malealea community during the screening of a film in Mafeteng on Monday, Moshesha said those being abused in the communities are not aware of the situation.

"There are so many people from Lesotho who migrate to South Africa to work in the mines. They tend to forget about their families and create new ones once they reach SA, making them not to come home or do so after a number of years," he said.

SM&D's facilitator Bohlale Sentšo said people are reluctant to use condoms yet they have multiple sexual partners. "Fearing the aftermath of the consequences, they do not want to get tested," he said.

He said people need to stop blaming alcohol and blame shifting, adding that couples need to be open with each other to avoid unnecessary problems.

Speaking on behalf of the community, Councillor Manyaneso Taole said: "The screening will help us view such problems within our community on a different perspective. "We have committees that address such issues although

"We have committees that address such issues although they have become dormant but we promise to revive them

"We are very much grateful for SM&D's initiative, we promise to be the change that we want to see throughout our village." SM&D documentary *A Miner's Tale*, traces a life of a miner from Mozambique working in one of South African mines. Having grown up under extreme poverty, he forgets about his wife and son once he starts earning money in SA.

He then marries another woman whom he lives with in SA. He becomes an alcoholic and womaniser, leading to his infection with HIV. He then feels as if the whole world was against him and decides to go back home in Mozambique.

Although the family forgives him, the elders still expect him to give his wife more children as a husband. How does he do that with his HIV status? He struggles to solve this dilemma.

The villagers of Malealea agreed to the existence of such problems within their society. The only good thing is he was man enough to face his problems and disclose his HIV status to the family"; these are some of the remarks that were made by the community members.

# Mothers bear brunt of bearing many kids

November 7, 2013 Lestimes Features & Analysis No comments

#### By Tsitsi Matope

ROMA — After giving birth to seven daughters in a twodecade search for a son, 36-year-old 'Makatiso Sam and her husband from Nyakosoba village in Roma finally got a son last year.

It had never been this unemployed rural couple's plan to have so many children but because of the need to secure the family name through a male offspring, 'Makatiso had continued falling pregnant with the persistence finally paying off at the eighth attempt.

However, while the perseverance finally bore fruit for the couple, 'Makatiso might pay a heavy price for the decision to keep trying for a boy-child.

"After having my first child at the age of 15, I never rested because of the mounting pressure to have a baby boy. Now, I occasionally have pain all over my body and sometimes feel very weak, which has forced me to continually take pain killers," "Makatiso said.

She had come to collect some birth-control pills at the newly established family planning clinic in Roma — a joint venture of the Ministry of Health, Lesotho Planned Parenthood Association (LPPA) and French

humanitarian-aid organisation Médecins Sans Frontières or Doctors Without Borders.

In addition to continued health complications, 'Makatiso said the couple continually found it difficult to provide for the children.

With neither husband nor wife formally employed, the family was left with no choice but to live off their piece of land which, according to 'Makatiso, does not always yield enough food and money to send the children to school.

"The hardship pushed my two daughters into early marriages. They both married just after completing their Standard Seven education," 'Makatiso said, However, with her husband's family name finally secured following the birth of their son, 'Makatiso said the couple is not planning to have any more children. Yet stories of women who end up having more children than they would have wanted, are not only widespread but also varied.

'Makatiso cites the search for a baby boy as the reason for eventually having a large family but others, who

spoke with the *Lesotho Times* at the Roma clinic last week, blamed their equally undesirable situations on lack of comprehensive maternal services at some health centres and inability to protect themselves against unplanned pregnancies and sexually transmitted infections (STIs).

'Mamolebohang Taole from Ha Mokhohla, is one such woman who has now found herself with five children she cannot support.

Two weeks ago, the 25-year-old unemployed widow gave birth to a baby boy fathered by her partner who was against any form of birth control.

However, a few months before delivery,

'Mamolebohang's partner reportedly disappeared, leaving mother and child without the support they so desperately needed.

Taole's husband passed away two years ago and left her with four children aged 10, seven, five and four.

"This man who fought me each time I suggested we use protection to prevent unplanned pregnancy and STIs has disappeared. Tell me how I am going to support this newborn alone."

Taole said she has learnt the hard way and now wants a long-term birth control method such as the Intra-Uterine Device (IUD) commonly known as the Loop). Another despairing woman, 'Mathabo Mapetja from Ha

Lebamang, said when she got married, she had not known bearing many children was what would make her an important asset in her husband's family.

A mother-of-seven, two of whom have since passed away, Mapetja, 35, said her husband had asked her to bear him "many" children.

"My husband is an only child, so in order to compensate for that, he wanted us to have many children."

Mapetja, who looked frail as she awaited her turn to consult staff at the clinic last week, said she was no longer planning to have more children as the one girl and four boys she has are enough.

"My last child is four years old while the others are 15, 13, 11 and seven, and these are enough. I am using the three months injectables and would like to continue using the same birth control method," she said.

Meanwhile, the joint family planning service initiative, which takes place every Monday, attracts scores of women from different parts of Roma area every week. The five-year programme sponsored by the United Nations Population Fund (UNFPA), seeks to improve maternal and child-health in areas where people would be experiencing difficulties to access such services. Poor maternal health is attributed to the high maternal

Poor maternal health is attributed to the high materna mortality rate — which is the rate of death of women during pregnancy, labour and up to six weeks after delivery.

According to Lesotho's 2009 Demographic and Health Survey, maternal mortality has increased nearly three-fold over the last decade to reach 1 155 deaths per 100 000 live births.

About 58 percent of deaths are associated with HIV/Aids and tuberculosis, making childbearing a major risk in Lesotho.

In an interview on Monday last week, the Lesotho Planned Parenthood Association director, Makatleho Mphana, said various stakeholders are concerned about the high maternal deaths and are collectively making efforts to address the situation. Mphana attributed unplanned families to the inaccessibility of services, particularly in the hard-to-reach areas and also lack of education on the benefits of birth-control and adequate information regarding the options available.

"It is against this backdrop that we came up with this joint programme, which is meant to bring services to the communities' doorsteps and be able to provide a whole package of family planning services.

"These include education on maternal health in general and the various types of contraceptives both women and men can use," Mphana said.

The programme is also providing free contraceptives and HIV-testing and counselling, Mphana added.

"Our main concern is the effects of unplanned families on the health of the mothers and the children. The mothers should have enough rest to allow their bodies to recover from the previous pregnancy.

"At the same time, ensuring they take precautionary measures against HIV is also a critical component of the programme and that is why we are also distributing both male and female condoms.

"We are advocating double-protection, which is using the condom together with other contraceptives such as the loop or oral pills."

A visit to the Roma family planning clinic last Monday highlighted how the women now benefiting from the UNFPA-funded initiative used to struggle to access services

More than 60 women came from far away villages such as Mokema, Ha Moitsupeli, Ha Lebamang and Thaba Bosiu for free contraceptives that included the threemonth injectable, oral pills, the IUD or loop that can last 12 years and the five-year Jadelle implant.

The IUD is a small device, often T-shaped, containing either copper or levonorgestrel, which is inserted into the uterus, and is one form of highly effective, long-term reversible contraception.

Failure rate with the copper IUD is about 0.8 percent while the levonorgestrel IUD has a failure rate of 0.2 percent in the first year of use.

Among the types of birth control, they, together with birth control implants, result in the greatest satisfaction among users.

On the other hand, the popular Jadelle, is a set of two flexible cylindrical implants, inserted in a superficial plane beneath the skin of the upper arm.

However, the majority of women interviewed last Monday at the Roma clinic said before the UNFPA programme, they used to travel to faraway Maseru to buy contraceptives at various health centres and chemists. Others, however, said due to accessibility challenges, they ended up with unplanned pregnancies thereby putting their lives at risk, particularly those that are living with the Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) — the infection which causes the incurable Aids.

"In this area, we relied on the National University of Lesotho clinic because the St Joseph Hospital here in Roma doesn't provide contraceptives," one of the women found at the clinic 'Malehlohonolo Thabana, said. The St Joseph Hospital Acting Medical Superintendent, Dr Muila Kambulandu confirmed all Catholic health facilities do not provide contraceptives, condoms included.

"We only provide information and direct patients to the nearest health centres where we know they can get contraceptives. This is purely based on the position of the church which only promotes natural methods of family planning," Dr Kambulandu explained.

She further said despite the church's position, poor accessibility of birth control methods in the area is a major concern while the disadvantage of referring patients is that the hospital can never be sure they finally got the service they required.

The Roman Catholic Church has three hospitals which are Seboche in Butha-Buthe, Mamohau Hospital and Paray in Thaba-Tseka.

The church also owns several clinics dotted around the country, which all do not provide contraceptives on religious grounds.

However, the same hospitals are also burdened by the high numbers of women who come for antenatal services — some after having unplanned pregnancies.

# Cry the beloved youths

November 7, 2013 Lestimes Big Interview No comments

# By Tsitsi Matope

MASERU — Priority should be given to programmes that build the capacity of young people to become the drivers of economic development in Lesotho, the Acting Director for Youth in the Ministry of Gender, Youth, Sports and Recreation, Matseliso Letsie said this week. Talking tough in an interview on Monday, Letsie said various stakeholders should understand the country's future would be doomed if there are no multifaceted interventions that would ensure meaningful empowerment and development of the youth. The department, which classifies the youth as anyone between the ages of 17 and 35, says it is concerned by high levels of poverty among young people and yet responsive efforts do not all reflect the urgency required to ensure a bright future for the country. Letsie explained that weak support systems that are ineffective when it comes to tackling the challenges

faced by the youths have given birth to some of the social ills associated, generally, with young people. She said while some youths are blamed for committing crime, prostitution, drug and alcohol abuse and abortion, these should also be viewed as signs of systems failure on the part of all stakeholders who are supposed to participate in preventing and reducing vulnerability.

Letsie said the ripple effects of having young people who are incapacitated to participate in the development of the country are devastating and costly.

This, she explained, is seen from the amount of pressure exerted on various government departments and other support organisations.

Large numbers of those affected by HIV and Aids, she said, would mean large spending in the health sector while high crime incidence would also mean big budgets for the police, the judiciary and correctional service. These factors, she added, would also generally have a negative socio-economic impact.

"It really pains me each time I come across young people struggling to make anything meaningful out of their lives.

"I feel responsible for their hopelessness because I know my department should be doing more – but also as a department, we need the crucial support from both the government and more so, the private sector to turn the tide and make provisions that could help improve the lives of the young people."

She said high unemployment among the youths is a result of failure to put in place adequate measures that support quality skills development and create entrepreneurship financing opportunities.

"We are at the cross-roads and the route we opt for would determine the future of this country. If as a people we choose to ignore the challenges of the youths, we should then be prepared for the consequences that can further impoverish our society."

She said the way forward was to ensure proper coordination of all youth programmes to avoid duplication of efforts.

"We also need to financially strengthen the current youth development programmes to make them more responsive to challenges, beef-up the numbers of youth development officers in the districts and at the same time, amend the National Youth Policy of 2003 to bring it in line with current demands."

She explained currently, there is only one youth development officer in each district and these operate with very limited resources.

"Our structures should reflect an inclination to the advancement of young people. At the same time, it is also important that we have clauses in our National Youth Policy that can stimulate the participation of the private sector to take responsibility and also become part of the solution."

She said for many years, there has been a disturbing trend that has seen some stakeholders pledging support for youth development but with other ulterior motives. "Meaningful interventions are those that can provide economic independence and not expose young people to exploitation."

She emphasised the need to seriously confront challenges through a review of youth development programmes. "We need to take stock of our current programmes and gauge their effectiveness. Let's ask ourselves: How many young people are economically independent as a result of the training programmes we are offering under this department? What are the standards of qualification and is that good enough to help them become independent? Would we want our own children to get such training? If the answer is not positive, then it's time we make some good changes."

She said her department, through the Ministry of Gender, is currently implementing the National Volunteer Corps Programme, which attaches graduates from various tertiary institutions to various government departments and the private sector for a year.

The programme, which has been funded by the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) since 2009, seeks to address challenges faced by many graduates who fail to get employment due to lack of experience. Letsie said the graduates are paid an incentive of M2 000 per month with the hope that after a year, they would have acquired the necessary experience and would be incorporated in the organisation, since their contracts are non-renewable.

"However, this is not always the case and that is our biggest challenge in this programme."

She explained that currently more than 5 000 youths have registered for the volunteers programme and some have also registered with the Public Service. "Currently 625 volunteers are working at various organisations."

Letsie said another programme, the Youth Employment, provides the youths with entrepreneurship skills for them to have capacity to start and run sustainable businesses. "The aim is to provide skills that can help young people create decent employment and promote social cohesion. We believe an empowered youth is a progressive movement that cannot be easily badly influenced because they are hungry."

She said many young people are eager to start projects but lacked the start-up capital.

"We had hoped that the Partial Credit Guarantee Scheme launched last year, would have a component that supports youth development but later we realised that the majority of our young people do not qualify for such support."

She said the establishment of a Youth Development Fund could be one of the immediate solutions to the current lack of projects financing.

On the other hand, the Young Ambassadors for Positive Living is yet another programme targeting high school students.

Under the programme, 10 resource centres were established in all districts and 120 youth leaders were employed.

The youth leaders provide various training in the areas of HIV and Aids, anti- alcohol and drug abuse and also computer literacy.

The leaders are paid an incentive by the Global Fund while the Commonwealth also supports some components of the programme.

"The resource centres are a positive start but we still need to do more to ensure the services reach out to all young people. We should also add components that realistically address poverty in this programme."

She said a boost of the Social Compact Programme to ensure meaningful participation of the youth in food production can also help alleviate poverty and improve food insecurity.

"This programme oversees the training of young people in various agricultural technologies and practices and also ensures they access inputs such as seed and fertiliser. We have established greenhouses at the districts resource centres of Berea, Qacha's Nek, Quthing, Mafeteng and Mokhotlong.

Through our youth development officers in those areas, the youth can utilise these facilities."

The programme, which experienced some inputs hitches last year, is expected to resume this farming season.

# 'Chobeliso is the worst betrayal of women'

September 12, 2013 Lestimes Features & Analysis No comments

# By Tsitsi Matope

MAFETENG — Paile Semoko, 80, has never married and the pain of her spinsterhood is clearly engraved in her clouded eyes.

After her traumatic experience at the hands of a man who had tried to force her hand in marriage under the Basotho tradition of *chobeliso*, remaining single was the only way that made Semoko feel safe following an abduction that took place when she was just 15 years of age.

Although *chobeliso* — Basotho's longstanding tradition in which a man abducts and then flees with a girl of his choice to marry her without her consent — was common in her village, Ha Ramohapi, and in other communities around Mafeteng, the abduction ruined her opinion of marriage.

A mere child who still needed parental guidance when her life turned upside-down, Semoko recalls events of those "painful" years with such clarity they appear as if they only happened yesterday, not 65 years ago.

Like many girls her age, she also had dreams that one day, her "Prince Charming" would come along, sweep her off her feet, marry her and the two would live happily ever after.

But as it turned out, it was a "Prince of Darkness" who turned up at Paile's doorstep, and what followed was a nightmare the now-elderly Semoko says she would never forget.

"The nasty experience killed my trust in men and my dream to ever become a wife. I felt by remaining single, I would be safe from all the abuse I had suffered for the three months my abductor had tried to force me into submission," Semoko says in an interview at her Ha Ramohapi home in Mafeteng.

"I remember the face of this man like it was yesterday. He worked in South Africa and saw me when he visited his relatives staying in a neighbouring village of Ha Kuili.

"On many occasions, he had visited me and expressed strong feelings for me but I had always turned him down."

Then one late afternoon the then young Paile met the man, who she says was 25 years old, while on her way to fetch water from a nearby spring.

"We greeted briefly and when I tried to walk away, he just grabbed me by my hand and started dragging me towards a bush. He was holding a stick and threatened to beat me with it if I resisted or screamed for help."

A car waiting for them on the main road nearby then took the pair to the border, and subsequently, the two illegally crossed into the Free State, South Africa.

"We walked to Wepener, in the Free State, for the better part of the night," Semoko recalls. "I cried all the way, begging the man to let me go but he would not listen. It was like talking to a statue because he kept on pushing ahead as we went deeper into South Africa, a country I was not familiar with at all."

Semoko claims for two weeks she was locked-up in the bedroom and, each day her abductor would try to convince her to marry him.

However, after the man realised she was not likely to change her mind, he became both sexually and physically abusive, Semoko says.

"I lost my pregnancy during one of the beatings and thereafter, vowed never to submit to his demands again. He then decided to call his cousin to stay with us and keep an eye on me, while he was away at work." One day, when the cousin left to accompany a friend who had visited, Semoko says she escaped and returned to

"I had a bit of money on me, which was enough to take me back home. Those were very strange times because although my family had been looking for me, they never reported me missing to the police."

It took her seven years before she started an affair with the man who later fathered her four children, Semoko says.

"We had grown up together, so I had a bit of trust in him but not enough to make him my husband. He is now late and at times, I feel I was very unfair to him and in a way, judged him based on the wrongs of another man," Semoko remembers. Today, Semoko stays with her two grandchildren and has remained distant to the family of the man she now believes she treated unjustly.

"I don't understand how this so-called tradition of *chobeliso* could be allowed in the first place because it is the worst form of violence against women. The tragic thing is there were so many girls who were going through the same treatment that I went through, and remain in those marriages to this day, even though they never consented to the marriage. Even to this day, the practice is happening, yet no-body is making noise about it," Semoko says, her milky eyes seeming to look far away.

However, the Director for Culture in the Ministry of Tourism, Environment and Culture, Maneo Ntene, while admitting *chobeliso* is still happening in some parts of the country, says the practice does not epitomise Basotho customs and marriage values.

"A marriage has to result from an agreement between a man and a woman and the two families involved," Ntene says. "The traditional marriage rites are clear and do not include force. Our customs do not interpret marriage as something that can be forced or be imposed on any person but that which is born out of mutual agreement." Ntene further emphasises that although there are still reported cases of *chobeliso* in the country, this does not mean the government supports the practice.

"This does not fall under our institution of Basotho cultural principles and values; actually, *chobeliso* is another form of gender-based violence. The practice robs the woman of her dignity, pride and essential life elements that fulfil and make her a wholesome human being."

According to Ntene, the laws of Lesotho recognise the need to safeguard the rights of every citizen, including women and girls.

"This is why any person who forces a girl into marriage, sexually abuses her, or abducts or kidnaps her for such a purpose, commits a serious criminal offence that warrants a jail sentence," Ntene warns, adding it is a major concern certain cases of such sexual abuse go unreported, which implies some women continue to suffer in silence.

"In the olden days, some of these marriages would last because women were silent partners in their own marriages. I don't believe these women were happy to be treated in such an inhumane manner.

"In places where this practice continues to happen, it is still a socialisation issue but perpetuating *chobeliso* in the false name of custom and tradition is the worst form of dictatorship."

Another victim, 'Mabonang Sethunya, 75, of Khubetsoana, says she was only 16 years of age when her late husband abducted her.

She was on her way home from church and was not surprised when she suddenly came across the man who was to become her husband.

"He had been trying to win my heart for weeks but I was always turning him down because I was in love with someone else.

"When I saw him on the day of the abduction, I had no idea he was up to no good. After we exchanged greetings, I was about to walk away when he pulled my hand and because he was so big, he easily carried me on his shoulder and took me to his family.

"I cried for help but people we met ignored me and just laughed about it, as if it was a joke."

When she arrived at the man's family home, young 'Mabonang was made to sleep in the same room with the man's mother, she said.

"When a sheep was slaughtered the following day as a way to introduce me to the family, I understood I was getting married. It was a painful experience because I missed my boyfriend whom I had promised to wed in church."

After the introductions, the family declared them man and wife. "I don't think how I felt mattered because those days *chobeliso* was a common practice, although many girls were against it. I attempted suicide once, and when I failed to take my life, I started refusing to eat and kept to myself. But my situation became worse when I became pregnant. I was very depressed."

After three months, her husband's family went and paid 10 cattle for her lobola, Sethunya said.

"Although my family had sympathised with me, they accepted the marriage. They told me love was a like a seed, once planted it would grow.

"My problem was that the seed had been planted in unfavourable soil, and no matter how much it was watered and cared for, it would never grow but would eventually rot."

The "loveless marriage", as she calls it, produced three children but Sethunya said until the day her husband died a few years ago, she had always wondered how her life would have turned out if she had married for love. Yet another woman who was forced to marry under *chobeliso*, 'Marelebohile Mokheme who also lives in Khubetsoana and is neighbours with Sethunya, says she has never forgiven her father for "ruining" her life. At 15, while in Quthing, she was forced to marry a man eight years her senior and love never "germinated" as expected, and she eventually ran away from her "husband".

"Chobeliso is a terrible practice. I don't think my husband also understood what he got himself into when he agreed with my father to force me to marry him. We were not happy and during the last days of the marriage, he treated me so badly that I had to run away. He never followed me and later married another woman," she said. Before she turned 15, Mokheme said she had witnessed her two elder sisters being sold "like horses", through chobeliso.

"My father made it his responsibility to choose suitors for us. He eyed men from rich families or sons of chiefs whom he knew could afford to pay the lobola he would have demanded," Mokheme said.

And true to form, one day when she had just turned 15, a man riding a horse visited their home.

She had never seen him before.

"It appeared my father had been expecting him because, unlike the other days, he had not gone to the fields on that particular day."

According to Mokheme, after some time, the man came out of the house where he had been discussing with her father, preparing to leave.

"That was when my father called me and my mother and introduced us to the stranger. He broke the news that he was my husband and that the man had come to take me to his home in Mohale's Hoek.

"All women in my family were conditioned to obey my father, so none of us could argue with his decisions.

"I rode with the man, my new husband, without a clue of who he really was and what lay ahead for me." However, Ntene said her office is conducting awareness campaigns in various districts and she hopes such programmes would help root out social ills usually disguised as Basotho traditions, morals and values. "We now have cultural officers in all districts of the country and their mandate, among others, is to promote and educate communities about our beautiful customs and traditions. These do not include bad practices such as *chobeliso* and wife-inheritance, among other bad practices" Ntene said.

Beware of unregistered colleges, says council August 22, 2013 Lestimes Features & Analysis 4 comments

#### By Limpho Sello

MASERU — The Council on Higher Education (CHE) has warned the public against enrolling with unregistered colleges.

In a statement last week CHE chief executive 'Makotelo Motseko said people should be wary of institutions that are inviting them to register for programmes that are not accredited by the council.

The council has said with effect from August 28, 2012 no new programmes should be offered by any higher education institution in Lesotho unless they have been accredited.

Motseko said despite this announcement a number of institutions have continued to enrol students into new programmes.

Such institutions, she said, are violating the law. She said people who register for these programmes will be doing so at their own risk because the council will not recognise their qualifications.

A qualification that is not recognised by the council will be useless.

Holders will not be able to enrol with other colleges using academic records that are not recognised by the council.

Motseko said a school should either produce evidence of its registration with CHE or Technical Vocation Department (TVD).

If not yet registered the school should provide evidence that it's working towards the accreditation of its programmes by the CHE.

"By this announcement, the CHE calls on members of the general public to exercise extreme caution in dealing with several invitations by individuals and/or institutions to register for new academic programmes that have not been accredited by CHE," Motseko said.

Section 37(7) of the Higher Education Act 2004 gives the registrar within the Ministry of Education and Training powers to register a private higher education institution in consultation with the Council on Higher Education. An institution can only be accredited if it meets a range of conditions, including the finances, governance and management structures, quality assurance system and programme accreditation.

Motseko added that even institutions that are recognised by CHE are only authorised to enrol students into programmes that existed before August 28, 2012. She said there are currently 14 institutions that are recognised by the council.

She said these institutions that include the National University of Lesotho, Lesotho College of Education, Lerotholi Polytechnic, Lesotho Agricultural College are already working towards the accreditation of their programmes.

The other institutions are Lesotho Institute of Public Administration and Management,

Centre for Accounting Studies, Institute of Development Management, National Health Training College, Paray School of Nursing, Maluti School of Nursing, Roma College Nursing, Scott School of Nursing, Limkokwing University of Creative Technology and Lesotho Boston Health Alliance.

"Any other institution that has enrolled or is admitting students into a higher learning education programme or programmes without either showing evidence of registration with the TVD or evidence of preparations for accreditation of programmes by CHE as one of the preconditions for registration is operating illegally," Motseko said.

"Members of the public are advised to desist from spending their hard-earned money on programmes offered by institutions that are operating illegally." Lesotho scores against Aids

December 9, 2010 Lestimes Features & Analysis 11 comments

MASERU — A "medical miracle" is taking place in Lesotho.

Thousands of HIV positive mothers are giving birth to healthy HIV negative babies.

What was virtually unthinkable a few years ago is now happening giving hope to thousands of HIV positive mothers.

For a country that has the third highest HIV prevalence rate in the world this is nothing short of a miracle. Lesotho's Health Minister Mphu Ramatlapeng is an excited woman.

An elated Ramatlapeng last Wednesday told a gathering to mark World Aids Day in Roma that the Prevention of Mother-To-Child Transmission (PMTCT) programme had been a roaring success.

The programme, which was initiated in 2005 by the Ministry of Health, seeks to block the transmission of the Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) from the mother to unborn babies.

Since its inception at least 70 percent of HIV positive mothers have given birth to HIV negative babies, according to the health ministry.

The ministry says the programme is a living example of how a coherent anti-retro viral treatment (ART) programme can help HIV positive mothers give birth to healthy babies.

"We stand with pride in various national, sub-region and international meetings to give testimony of how much Lesotho has succeeded in the fight against HIV and Aids," Ramatlapeng said.

She said the roll-out of the PMTCT programme was one of the success stories to come out of Lesotho in recent years.

"Our success in PMTCT is notable. More than 70 out of a 100 HIV positive mothers access PMTCT. We are getting close to 100 percent coverage in one or two years," Ramatlapeng said.

"It is also worth noting that Lesotho was made proud when nurses from Butha-Buthe district pioneered the socalled mother-baby-package," she said.

The mother-baby-package is a take-home box that contains all antiretroviral drugs and antibiotics that is given to HIV positive mothers.

It has "colour-coding and simple graphics to help mothers identify which of the individually packaged medicines to administer during pregnancy, delivery and breastfeeding," according to the United Nations Children's Fund.

The roll-out of the PMTCT programme has risen from 5.9 percent in 2005 to 56 percent in 2009.

At least 90 percent of mothers have also been offered HIV testing and counselling at clinics dotted around the world

The PMTCT programme is being offered at 166 health facilities including 19 hospitals and 117 health centres throughout Lesotho.

The results have been pretty encouraging, according to the health ministry.

The Lesotho Times went out to document some of these success stories.

And we met 31-year-old Nkeletseng Thulo from Qoaling in Maseru.

Thulo says she found out that she was HIV positive in 2008 after suffering serious bouts of illness.

She says she was virtually on death's door then.

She says her health deteriorated rapidly and was soon put on the ART programme.

After a few months, Thulo says she regained her health. In March 2009, she says she fell pregnant.

But knowing her HIV status she says she was nervous that she was going to infect her baby.

This was in spite of reassurances by health workers at the local clinic that it was still possible to give birth to an HIV negative baby.

"I was nervous when I learned that I was pregnant," Thulo says.

"I had had a baby before and she died of pneumonia when she was only nine months. I knew she could have died because of the HIV infection that she got from me. "I was scared that the same thing would happen to this

"But nurses assured me that the baby would be fine as long as I continued taking my medicine.

"I did that and I never had problems during the pregnancy," Thulo says.

In December last year, Thulo gave birth to a healthy baby girl.

HIV tests done on the baby confirmed that she was negative, much to the joy and relief of her mother.

"I was happy when tests showed I had not infected her with the virus.

"Nurses said chances were high that I could have infected her if I did not take my medicine right. The medicine helped me protect my unborn baby," Thulo says with a broad smile.

She says over the past 12 months she has religiously followed instructions from health care workers on how to feed her baby and protect her from infection.

For instance, she says, she has not breast-fed her baby but instead gives her prescribed milk which helps boost resistance to diseases.

All tests done over the past 12 months have shown the baby to be HIV negative, Thulo says.

"I am following the nurses' orders to make sure that my baby remains negative.

"I am thankful to the support I got from health workers," Thulo says.

"I wish I knew my status earlier and maybe my first child could still be alive.

"There is no need for babies to be dying when services for HIV positive mothers are given free of charge," she says.

Lesotho has been one of the hardest hit countries in the world with at least a quarter of the country's 1.8 million people said to be HIV positive, according to figures released by United Nations agencies.

Speaking at the World Aids Day commemorations King Letsie III said Lesotho had successfully run the PMTCT programme.

"One of the universal access targets for us in the fight against the spread of HIV and Aids was to increase the numbers of mothers who get the PMTCT services. We have seen great success in that," King Letsie said. Leopold Buhendwa, country director of the Elizabeth Glaser Pediatric Aids Foundation (EGPAF), says the government should be proud of the progress that has been made so far.

"The minister should be proud of the results of the PMTCT.

"It is one of the best in the whole world. We want every mother to have access to PMTCT," Buhendwa says. "Pregnant mothers in Lesotho are given minimum packages. With the minimum package, a combination of three drugs, the chances for the lady to transmit the virus to the baby are very limited," Buhendwa says. "We are going towards the elimination of pediatric HIV and Aids. In less than a year PMTCT coverage has progressed from 36 percent to almost 80 percent. In this way we will have an HIV free generation," he says. EGPAF is funded by the United States Agency for International Development and works closely with the government of Lesotho in rolling out the PMTCT programme.

# Crackdown on illegal clinics looms

June 23, 2010 Lestimes Features & Analysis 1 comment

MASERU — Three women sit outside a run-down "surgery" in Thibella, a poor working-class suburb notorious for running illegal shebeens, awaiting their turn to get into the "consultation room".

They are holding grey medical booklets in which the nurses scribble some notes for the patients.

The women are engaged in small talk as they await their turn to get medical attention.

Welcome to 'Mabatho Clinic, one of the many illegal clinics that have mushroomed in Maseru.

There is nothing at the clinic that would suggest that this is a proper health care centre except a small board just outside the house advertising its services.

The apartment, which houses the surgery, is almost collapsing with signs of neglect all over.

Inside the house is a small dark passage which serves as the reception.

There is no one manning the reception desk when we arrive.

The walls are plastered with posters carrying health messages.

But our eyes are quickly attracted to a hand-written notice showing the prices for the various services on offer.

The "surgery" charges M400 for maternity services while "complicated labour" is charged at M450.

Consultation fee is set at M70.

After waiting for close to five minutes, we are accosted by a woman in her late 20s.

She is dressed in a casual sweater and wrapped in a shawl.

She confirms that they indeed offer all the services advertised on the notice board.

She also tells us that when there is a power cut they resort to candles and gas lamps.

This is nothing strange, she says, as Queen Elizabeth II Hospital, Lesotho's biggest referral hospital, also suffers power cuts and does not have agenerator to supply electricity during power cuts.

"We use candles and lamps in the event of power cuts while we are working," the woman says.

Our conversation is however disrupted as more patients walk in.

'Mabatho Clinic was cited as one of the illegal clinics that the Ministry of Health said it wanted shut down. "It (the clinic) is not registered. It charges people for vaccinations which are supposed to be given free of charge. They were also found in possession of expired drugs.

"Their surroundings are not healthy. The clinic is a danger to people's lives," Tumisang Mokoai, the spokesman for the ministry, says.

The ministry says it has summoned the owner of the clinic, only known as 'Mabatho, for a disciplinary hearing for operating a clinic without a licence. She declined to be interviewed saying it would not be wise to speak when her case was still pending at the Ministry of Health.

"I will not say anything now that there is this ongoing hearing. I will however check with my lawyer first to seek advice," she says.

'Mabatho is not the only clinic that has raised concern. The ministry says it wants to launch a crackdown against all unregistered clinics operating in Lesotho.

It says the clinics are posing a grave threat to the health of the people.

But despite the health threats, most people, too poor to seek medical help at private hospitals, continue to visit the illegal clinics.

A man who refused to be identified says this is the only place his family comes to when they fall sick.

"This is the only clinic we use. It may be within the shebeens but they give good services and they listen when you tell them your problem," he says.

More patients walk in while we are still conducting our investigations at 'Mabatho clinic.

Others can hardly walk and have to be assisted to get into the "surgery".

The patient who comes next can hardly walk. He grimaces as two women support him to walk into the "consultation room".

"He is going to be fine," says one woman in the queue. "I also had a patient like this and they assisted him." The Ministry of Health spokesman says the ministry fears clinics such as 'Mabatho are putting the health of clients at risk.

"People's lives are in danger. The worst part is that they are not aware of it. They go to these clinics thinking they are going to get good services.

"Most of the clinics do not meet requirements for a proper clinic. They do not have enough rooms. "The crucial room in a clinic or hospital is a safe pharmacy where medication should be kept. They do not have them. "Taking any form of medication from such clinics is dangerous.

"We have also discovered that qualified health practitioners hire unqualified people to run the clinics while they continue to work for other health care centres. This gives us more reason to worry about the safety of the people," Mokoai says.

Patients who spoke to the *Lesotho Times* say although the cost of medical treatment was affordable at M15 per visit, they were not happy with the quality of services they received at government hospitals.

It is this perception that private clinics offer better services which is pushing Basotho to shun government hospitals and "endanger" their lives at illegal clinics. Competitiveness project rolls into second phase

December 23, 2013 Lestimes Features & Analysis No



By Tsitsi Matope

MASERU — The Private Sector Competitiveness and Economic Diversification Project (PSCP) will enter its second phase next month, following the successful implementation of the first phase between 2007 and June 2013.

The Second Phase, which is funded to the tune of US\$13.1 million (approximately M135 million) by the Government of Lesotho and the World Bank, ends in 2019.

However, the first phase worth US\$10.1 million, pushed for the improvement of the business environment and doing business through the review and introduction of various legal instruments. It targeted the development of sectors such as tourism, horticulture and garments and textiles. The Lesotho Times this week caught up with the Project Manager, Chaba Mokuku (CM), to discuss the objectives of the Second PSC Project and also reflect on the first phase.

LT: What is the focus of the second phase of the project?

CM: The project will focus on key growth sector such as tourism and commercial agriculture. Support provided under the horticulture and tourism components of the

new project will increase opportunities for skills development and employability of the local Basotho workforce.

The project will also seek to diversify the economy by creating an enabling environment for investment in other non-textile sectors resulting in increased private sector investment, firm growth and job creation.

# LT: Do you have any specific, targeted areas that the project would facilitate?

CM: Yes, the project will facilitate implementation of targeted programmes that would facilitate linkages between foreign investors and domestic Small to Medium Enterprises (SMEs). Support measures would help facilitate improved information flows and targeted instruments to help increase business opportunities between the two groups while simultaneously also improving the capacity of the local SMEs.

The project will support tie-ups with external investment promotion agencies and the Basotho Diaspora for business development.

It will also help facilitate programmes that would develop local firms as input suppliers and support building partnerships with the local and regional private sector, through the mapping of existing service provider capacity and gaps.

#### LT: What are the expected impacts of these interventions?

CM: We expect improvement in the capacity of local SMEs, building a pipeline of domestic service providers, opening new markets for SMEs and creating new and improved jobs.

# LT: How much money will the government (Ministry of Finance) contribute to this project?

**CM:** The project is supported to the tune of M131 million with the current exchange rate. The government will contribute more than M19 million to the project.

# LT: The first phase of the project has managed to push for various economic reforms, what should we expect during its second phase, particularly in the area of business licensing?

CM: The second phase will support the drafting and implementation of the Business Registration Bill which aims to cover all businesses, including sole traders and partnerships.

This will enable the benefits of the One-Stop Business Facilitation Centre (OBFC) system, established in the first phase to go beyond company registration and register sole traders and partnerships, and also increase formalisation of businesses.

The project will also support the drafting of the accompanying Business Registration regulations to facilitate the implementation of the Bill, such that these supporting regulations are compatible with the current OBFC system and international best practice.

# LT: In the area of trade, which is of utmost importance among local entrepreneurs, should people expect any positive developments?

CM: Yes, the project will also support the replacement of the outdated Trading Enterprises Act (1993) with a modern trade licensing regime. We expect this reform to reduce the number of days taken to obtain a trader's license from 15 days to one day.

# LT: Let's discuss the support to be provided to ensure more locals participate in the private sector? In what way will you ensure that this time around the

#### dominance of Basotho in the private entities is increased?

CM: The important role played by the Small and Medium Enterprises (SMEs) in economic development cannot be overemphasised.

Therefore, we have made a conscious decision to focus on strengthening skills development and market linkages. In addition, the implementation of targeted programmes I referred to earlier on would strengthen backward linkages and facilitate spill-over in-terms of skills and technology transfer from foreign firms to local SMEs. One of the project's components, the Lesotho Enterprise Assistance Programmes (LEAP), will also focus more on supporting the growth and dominance of the local SMEs.

# LT: Let's talk about the challenges in the first phase of the project. What were the main causes of hiccups? CM: The main challenge was limited capacity within the public sector to implement reforms. We found limited skills, a slow pace to implement legal reforms and

limited data for monitoring the impact of the project quite challenging.

# LT: Is it because the design of the first phase was too demanding or did not consider possible challenges in its design?

CM: Yes, the first design was rather ambitious as it did not take into consideration institutional capacities of implementing agencies as well as realistic timeframes for legislative and administrative reforms.

# LT: So this time around, how are you going to ensure you overcome these challenges?

CM: Well, this time around we are hoping for better operations. We have designed the new project in such a way that we do not repeat the same mistakes. We have also set aside a budget for specific capacity building programmes during implementation by government agencies.

# LT: What are the tangible achievements made in the first phase?

**CM:** The project supported the drafting and enactment of the new Companies Act, and the strengthening of the One-Stop Business Facilitation Centre (OBFC). The reform resulted in a more simplified and streamlined company registration system in Lesotho and these improvements led to a decrease in the number of days required to register a business from 28 days to seven.

# LT: What other positive impacts can you mention that emanated from the simplified system?

CM: Apart from an increase in the registration of companies, the country's 'Doing Business' ranking moved by 65 positions in the starting a business indicator, also making Lesotho one of the top doing business reformers for 2013.

# LT: The project was heavily involved in the development of the horticulture sector? What's the future of this sector in this new project?

CM: The new project is designed to scale-up this initiative by expanding to new areas and strengthening the capacity of local on-farm technical support services. It will also support the downstream activities beginning

We would expect the project to start increasing the volume of marketable produce entering the market from existing and new farms. The first project successfully established pilot farms to demonstrate the potential for commercial fruit farming in Lesotho.

We managed to pilot various varieties of fruit and their growing patterns.

We also worked closely with the government to ensure that policies and regulations are in place to support sector development.

# LT: What achievements did you score from the pilot farms?

**CM:** The pilot farms have realised a number of successes, including Lesotho's first fruit exports and production of the first grade apples in the country.

# LT: What other initiatives are you introducing in the second phase to further improve on the current achievements?

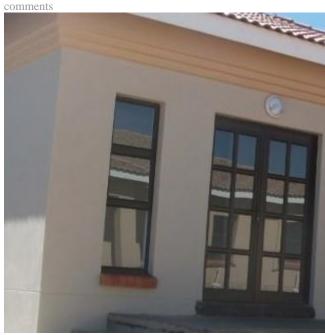
**CM:** We are going to target first grade products for export markets, second grades would be sold locally, third grade and lower would be used in the domestic value-added processing.

In this regard, downstream activities will focus on the development of local supply and value chains for deciduous fruit and farm certification (GLOBAL G.A.P). This would accord Basotho farmers the opportunity to export first grade products to any market in the world. They would also be able to expand marketing options for local products both within and outside Lesotho.

Masowe housing project changes the lives of

#### Masowe housing project changes the lives of Basotho

December 12, 2013 Lestimes Features & Analysis No



# By Tsitsi Matope

MASERU — The Maseru South West suburb (Masowe) is the latest giant housing project blossoming in the capital and promising to become one of the most attractive and well-planned settlement.

The pride of the Lesotho Housing and Land Development Corporation (LHLDC), Masowe is expected to accommodate thousands of people, many of whom have already comfortably settled in the area. Divided into four phases, it has been a hive of activity since construction of houses started a few years ago. This is evident of how many people nowadays value settling in well-planned and habitable settlements.

'Mampho Tjabane, a resident of MasoweIII, said her life changed when she moved to her new home last year.

"This brilliant development has provided my family with the opportunity to own a decent three-bedroom house in a planned area. It is quiet and beautiful. We are very happy here," she said.

She says after staying in an unplanned settlement for more than 10 years — where her family depended on communal tap water — she realised there were more benefits that came with staying in a well-planned suburb. "We have water in our house, electricity and also a good road, something we did not have where we used to stay," she says.

In an interview this week, the LHLDC's Operations Director, Habofanoe Lehana confirmed there was a high demand for similar housing projects in Maseru and some other districts.

"It is clear that people nowadays want to stay in planned and decent areas where they can easily access basic services. They want security and legal tenure. In all our projects, it is evident that what we offer encourages prospective home-owners to invest substantially in the houses and the serviced residential plots we sell. This fact not only provides owners with decent shelter but also contributes towards the socio-economic development of the country," Lehana said.

The Lesotho Housing and Land Development Corporation was established in 1988 as a government parastatal with the responsibility to provide serviced land, rental accommodation and construct houses for ownership.

ownership.
It is currently constructing houses at Masowe III where over 300 plots have been reserved for housing. Over 150 of these plots have already been developed.

"We still have houses on sale. We try as much as possible to build houses which the prospective buyers prefer and can afford," Lehana said.

However, some civil servants interviewed this week said although they would also want to buy the houses on offer, they cannot afford them.

"Lack of affordability is my major challenge, particula now when some of the banks we relied on have tighten their lending and mortgage parameters," Mateboho Mokhothu said.

Another resident, Liteboho Tlali said his hope of owning a house next year was shattered when suddenly his bank introduced new measures that capped how much clients can borrow.

"I don't know of any other way that can help people like me to also buy a house in Masowe," he said.

The houses currently on sale in the high to mediumincome in Masowe III cost between M577 000 to M1.1 million.

However, Lehana said the corporation was aware of the financial difficulties many prospective buyers were faced with and as a result, introduced the "rent-to-buy scheme". "This allows people to rent some select houses on condition that within five years they would eventually buy the houses. We have introduced this scheme in Masowe III where one-bedroom houses are already being rented out at M2 800 per month."

He explained that fifty percent of the rentals go towards rental fees and maintenance of the house for five years. The other fifty percent is used to build-up the deposit for five years after which the owner would be expected to buy the house.

"The other schemes in the Masowe III are houses on sale to cater for the middle and high-income earners." Lehana said this boom in the construction of houses in Masowe provides employment opportunities and also attracts new investments.

"Ensuring that we have well-planned settlements and good housing is an important development that can attract investors. On the other hand, houses in well-planned settlements can also be used as security by the owners to secure bank loans for other developments." According to Lehana, who is also a town planner by profession, the corporation's efforts are however hampered by scarcity of land for residential development in Maseru and some districts.

The corporation, which does not depend on government subsidies, generates its own revenue and boasts of several other successful land and housing development projects in Maseru (apart from Masowe), Teyateyaneng, Hlotse, Butha- Buthe, Mafeteng, Mohale's Hoek and Outhing.

Successful projects that include Ha-Matala Phase I and II and Thetsane highlight the crucial role the corporation plays in the country's housing development and in particular in Maseru.

"We are currently negotiating for more land in Maseru. It is difficult to get areas that have not yet been developed. While we see the possibilities of extending beyond areas we are currently working in, it would require bulk infrastructure-development and, as a result, make the residential sites unaffordable to the people we are targeting," Lehana said

The corporation's management, he added, is also aware there is a lot of idle and under-utilised land, which it hopes could be made available by its owners for residential development purposes.

"We would like to concentrate on the densification of under-utilised land within the city boundaries and the redevelopment of certain areas before moving out of Maseru City boundaries. We are however careful about how we might want to expand and upgrade any settlement as this might impact negatively on the available land."

In Ntjabane, Teyateyaneng, the corporation is windingup the sale of close to 1 000 serviced residential sites, measuring 400 to 700 square metres.

"Our strategy, which is focused on meeting the needs of various people, makes us a leader in the housing development sector," Lehana proudly proclaimed, adding the planned nature of the residential areas is also a major attraction among potential-homeowners.

Lehana further explained that despite the corporation's efforts in other districts such as Leribe, just like in Maseru, scarcity of land is a major challenge. Currently, the corporation has sold 800 serviced sites in Hlotse, 500 residential sites in Tsalitlama in Mafeteng, close to 200 in Quthing and 450 in Mohale's Hoek.

"We have 200 sites ranging between 450 and 700 square metres remaining in Mohale's Hoek. The beauty in people spreading their wings from the capital, Maseru and investing in smaller towns – is an additional attraction to this quiet town."

The corporation also rents-out five estates, mainly the 50 units at Friebel town-houses, 20 housing units at the Leseli complex in Hills View, apartments in Qoqolosing in Maseru West and 167 units at the Kuena and Letsie

Flats in the western part of the Maseru Central Business District.

According to Lehana, over the years, the corporation has realised the demand for affordable rented accommodation was steadily increasing, particularly among tertiary students.

He added inadequate finance was the major limitation for them to increase housing and rental portfolios.

"The current legislation limits our borrowing powers. However, the situation may change for the better following the legislative reviews which we are working on with the Ministry of Local Government and Chieftainship Affairs," he said.

In the meantime, he explained, the corporation is exploring a number of options, which include partnering with the private sector.

"We don't see the private sector as competition and would like them to become involved for the positive transformation we are envisaging for all the districts. It is a challenge, but together we can," he said.

Call for focus to improve town planning and land management

December 5, 2013 Lestimes Features &





Habofanoe Lehana

# By Tsitsi Matope

MASERU — It is every town planner's dream to apply their skills and ensure the development of well-organised and functional urban or rural settlements.

A good town planner visualises a country's economic and population growth and incorporates, in his works, vital aspects that ensures the authorities would still be able to respond to new demands in many years to come. A competent town planning department should therefore, be manned by highly skilled personnel capable of making sound short and long-term decisions about the management and development of cities, towns, villages and the countryside at large.

Habofanoe Lehana is one such town planner. He is a well-seasoned town planner and one of the most experienced in the country.

Although he is currently working as a Director of Operations at the Lesotho Housing and Land Development Corporation, where he deals mostly with land and property development, Lehana says he remains passionate about town and regional planning. Lesotho is one of the countries faced with a mammoth task to upgrade many of its unplanned urban settlements. Not only are some houses and commercial buildings also not properly planned, it has also been difficult for the government to provide services such as roads in some areas. On the other hand, the disorganisation in some parts of the central business districts of all 10 districts, has also posed many management challenges to the local councils.

Speaking on the current state of affairs, Lehana said several strategies were needed to revert to the implementation of set plans, upgrade and transform all the unplanned settlements which currently dominate the country's urban landscape.

However, he said, to achieve this there was need for strong political-will to make the transformation a reality. "Of utmost importance is to have a leadership that fully understands the social, economic and environmental benefits of having good land management systems. We need strong political-will to make management of the land right. In Lesotho, land is an extremely scarce resource and with proper planning, we can properly

utilise what we have and also be able to preserve the fragile areas. This should not be a problem because we have adequate expertise in this area and already have several plans that have been gathering dust in some offices over the years. Most of them were never implemented," Lehana said.

He gave an example of the Human Settlements Plans which existed at all levels of intended settlements. "If these were implemented, Lesotho's landscape would be different — more beautiful and not the haphazard pattern we see in many areas."

He further explained the provisions in the National Settlement Policy, which sets-out a strategic direction the country has to follow in terms of its settlement pattern. "Almost – if not all the country's towns have structure plans whilst the capital Maseru also has local plans which are very detailed. All these plans are not strictly being followed and instead, more often, the previous governments had a tendency of going against the existing structures and local plans."

He however stressed the need to review some of these plans to be in line with current trends and demands. "Plans are not rigid or cast in stone. Logic says where you want to change one must review the plans and assess the implications of going against them. The challenge is that, once land is used for a certain purpose, it becomes extremely difficult, expensive and at times, impossible to reverse the land-use," Lehana said.

He gave an example of the development on Mpilo Hill which if the provisions of the Maseru Development Plan were re-visited, a different decision might have been reached.

"There is sensitive information about the geology of this Hill."

Lehana further explained how the lack of a strong sense of planning could threaten the environment and also affect other future social and economic developments. This, he explained, can also make cities and towns fragile and vulnerable to climatic disasters and other forms of accidents, particularly if settlements are too close to main roads.

"There are serious challenges brought by the rampant urban sprawl, informal haphazard and illegal land development. It's not just an ugly phenomenon — but also costly business to government which would eventually be called upon by the citizens to provide services such as roads, portable water, electricity, and waste water infrastructure."

He said it was also a nightmare for any government to invest in upgrading unplanned settlements.

"Opting for demolition of structures such as houses and relocation, causes social disruptions and in worse possible scenarios, can even cause social and political unrest."

He said the capital Maseru has a lot of planning issues to deal with, particularly in the event that there might be need to exploit diamonds in areas like Koalabata. "There are also many areas which exhibit very low

"There are also many areas which exhibit very low densities and some of these areas warrant redevelopment."

He said the Lesotho Housing and Land Development Corporation (his employer), has expressed interest to be involved in settlements' re-development.

"We feel that an array of strategies could be used to achieve this and a few areas to mention that needs redevelopment are Hoohlo, Thibella and Seapoint. They need a serious facelift."

Lehana said with cooperation of stakeholders who include the government, Maseru City Council and property owners, the suggested re-development would be a success

Lehana said poor land management also threatened unspoilt or virgin land.

"Encroachment and the unplanned nature of developments on virgin land is also a major challenge which the current coalition government needs to tackle." He said it was commendable that the current government had shown commitment towards ensuring proper land management as core and central to achieving well planned human settlements.

"The challenge is that they inherited weakened institutional systems and as a result, they have a big task ahead of them and need all the support they can get." He explained the importance of building institutional capacity to improve planning, adherence to set plans and land management in general.

"I am hopeful that with a more focused approach, the coalition government would eventually overcome the challenges of land management in this country."

New twist to M500m project saga

December 5, 2013 Lestimes Features & Analysis 2 comments

#### By Billy Ntaote

MASERU — Seventeen subcontractors in a M568 million joint venture originally enlisted to build 101 health centres but which is now under provisional liquidation have petitioned the High Court in a seemingly desperate attempt to rescue the project and gain some value out of it.

Trencon Building World Belela Joint Venture (TBWB-JV) was awarded a M568 million contract to build 101 health centres across Lesotho on September 30, 2010. But TBWB-JV was placed under provisional liquidation after Anju Civils (PTY) Limited petitioned the High Court on May 30 2013 alleging that the joint venture was insolvent and had for many months failed to pay debts. The debts were far in excess of the value of its assets, it was alleged. The commercial court division of the High Court granted the provisional liquidation order. Because of the provisional liquidation, TBWB-JV then lost management control of the lucrative contract to build the health centres . The M568 million contract was bankrolled by the Millennium Challenge Account-Lesotho (MCA).

As creditors of the joint venture (TBWB-JV), the 17 subcontractors have now approached the High Court's Commercial Court Division seeking to be granted permission to intervene in the provisional liquidation arrangement that TBWB-JV was placed under. The 17 applicants are seeking permission to intervene and protect the interests of TBWB-JV— cited as the second respondent in the petition. They allege the provisional sequestration was sought in an "irregular manner".

The 17 creditors, represented by Advocate Kuili Ndebele will appear before the court on December 18, seeking to be granted an interim relief to intervene in the provisional sequestration.

A MCT holding (PTY) LTD is cited as the first applicant together with 16 others.

According to a certificate of urgency by Advocate Christiaan Serfontein Edeling representing Anju Civils, TBWB-JV was at the time of the petition to the court likely to receive, as per an amended contract with the MCA, "an amount of many millions that will shortly be paid" to it.

Edeling had said: "It is furthermore likely that the first respondent will be selective in deciding which creditors to pay and that those regarded as most urgent will be paid whilst the others will not be paid.

"It is urgent to sequestrate the first respondent before such payment can be made, to ensure that the funds in question will remain available to be dealt with according to law and distributed in a fair and awful manner to all creditors."

Anju Civils is now cited as the first respondent in the 17 subcontractors petition while Trencon Building World Belela Joint Venture is cited as the second respondent. Following Anju Civils petition, the TBWB-JV was placed under provisional liquidation and four trustees were appointed to continue control of its estate by the office of the Master of the High Court.

The four trustees — St Cooper, MT Matsau, DG Roberts, M Tau-Thabane — now cited as third to sixth respondent in the 17 applicants petition, were directed by the court to complete the health centres project on July 11. Five companies were subcontracted to finish off the project, namely: LSP Construction (PTY) LTD, Ruwacon (PTY) LTD, Brix Development Company (PTY) LTD, N.M. Khojane Construction Pty (Ltd) and Sigma Construction (PTY) LTD.

The five companies were contracted at the cost of M259 million on July 9 to work towards a completion dateline of November 30.

The companies are now included in the petition by the 17 creditors of the TBWB-JV and are cited as 14 to 18 respondents.

In the petition, the seventh and eighth respondents are Trencon Construction (PTY) LTD and Building World (PTY) LTD.

The MCA Lesotho, Millennium Challenge Corporation (MCC), the Government of Lesotho, the Master of the High Court and Attorney General are cited as ninth to thirteenth respondents in the application by the 17 creditors.

The subcontractors want the court to order that demands for payments by the MCA on October 8 and 19, 2013 be declared irregular, stayed and suspended pending the determination of their application.

The 17 subcontractors seek the decision of the Master of the High Court, dated June 11, 2013, to accept and impose as conditions to joint venture, directives given to it by the MCA be reviewed and set aside and be declared null and void without any force and effect.

TBWB-JV's subcontractors want the court to also declare that MCA had no powers whatsoever to appoint five new companies as sub-contractors of the joint venture while under provisional sequestration.

Subcontractors also petition the court to declare that the instruction of MCA of July 8, 2013, directing the trustees (St Cooper, Matsau, Roberts and Tau-Thabane) to appoint the five companies as subcontractors of the TBWB-JV as illegal.

The applicants also want the court to declare subcontracts agreements entered into by the joint venture while under

provisional sequestration with the five subcontract companies as unlawful.

Subcontractors want the court to also declare the five companies were not and still are not entitled to receive any benefit either as a payment and or profit out of the unlawful subcontracts.

In addition, they also want the five companies to be directed to refund and pay the TBWB-JV all payments either as profits or benefits gained pursuant to the unlawful subcontracts.

The 17 creditors also want the Anju Civils to be held liable for all the damages they suffered together with the TBWB-JV as a result of the vexatious petition against the joint venture in the event that the court dismisses the sequestration application.

They seek the court to direct Anju Civils to pay cash security for costs and damages of M100 million before the hearing of the sequestration petition instituted against TRWR-IV

Applicants also want trustees to be interdicted and restrained from using offices, assets, human resources and anything that belongs to the TBWB-JV and general body of creditors for the benefit of MCA, MCC, government of Lesotho and the five construction companies pending the outcome of the application and alternatively the sequestration.

The applicants also want trustees to be directed to keep and preserve all the assets of the joint venture pending the outcome of their application and alternatively pending outcome of the sequestration petition.

They also seek trustees to be directed to give a full account supported by audited financial statements showing how the funds of the TBWB-JV have been used after the provisional sequestration.

They also seek the trustees to be directed to provide them as applicants with detailed inventory of all on site construction materials the value of which to the petition is M17 million.

Applicants also want the TBWB-JV trustees to be directed to provide to them a detailed inventory of all the assets of the joint venture which, according to their petition, are worth M15 million.

The applicants also seek the Anju Civils, trustees, MCA, MCC and the government of Lesotho be held liable for loss suffered in the event that there are any missing assets. They also seek the trustees to be removed as provisional trustees for failure to execute their duties and the master be directed to appoint any fit person to substitute the said trustees.

The applicants also want Anju Civils, trustees, MCA, MCC and the government of Lesotho to be held liable for any and all liabilities that have accrued against the joint venture post provisional sequestration and that they be held jointly and severely liable.

The petitioners also want the sequestration application against the joint venture dismissed with costs.

#### PUBLIC EYE FEATURES

# Menthrong dinic for diraum cision

BY TSITSI MATOPE

Up to 240 men undergo circumcision at the Lesotho Planned Parenthood Association Male Clinic in Maseru every month, a positive development showing more men now realise the importance of stepping-up

# sexually transmitted diseases prevention efforts, according to LPPA Programme Officer, Tefo Lepheana.

The demand for circumcision has shot up in previous years, said Lepheana, and this after research studies showed the advantages of male circumcision in reducing HIV, which causes Aids.

"Circumcision has an up to 60 percent reduction capacity of HIV and since scientists proved this, we are overwhelmed by demand," he said.

On a daily basis, an average of up to 12 men aged 17 years and above undergo the "minor" circumcision operation for a fee of M200.

"We have scores of bookings and in some instances, parents do book for their sons who might then come on their own for the operation," Lepheane said.

With a bit of funding that allowed them to employ an additional doctor to make them two, Lepheana said the small clinic was no longer as crowded as it used to be.

"There is need for the expansion of this facility to continue improving on service delivery and ensure all men have access to healthy and safer facilities," he said. Traditional male circumcision of mainly young men is rife in Lesotho's mountainous areas.

Despite government's efforts to work closely with traditional operators, controlling and monitoring of day-to-day "discreet" activities at most circumcision schools around the country has proved difficult over the years. A 47-year-old man working in the South African mines who was awaiting his turn to be operated on at the Lesotho Planned Parenthood Association Male Clinic on Thursday last week, told *Public Eye* he found traditional circumcision "very risky".

"It's very risky because there are suspicions that some people who do it were not trained by the right people," he said on condition of anonymity.

He said he had tried to get circumcised last year at one local hospital.

"Since then, I have been on the waiting list. When I heard about this clinic, I made a booking last month and was given an October date."

A father of four, he said he would want to maximise protection against HIV and other sexually-transmitted diseases.

"I am away from home most of the time and get to see my wife after three months. I lead a risky lifestyle and would want to prevent infections."

The migrant worker was to be administered with localised anesthetic before being operated on.

"We will allow him to stay here for a while before discharging him," Lepheane said.

However, Lepheane said circumcision "must" be made one of the cocktails of other prevention measures.

"This means with circumcision, men are adding it to consistent use of condoms and sticking to one partner." The Maseru-based male clinic was established in 2007 after the LPPA realised most men were uncomfortable to queue for reproductive health services with their female counterparts.

Since its establishment, Lepheana said the situation has changed for the better.

On a daily basis, a significant number of men visit the clinic for various reasons which include advice on reproductive health; including fertility-related issues, collection of condoms, voluntary HIV-testing and

counselling, circumcision and treatment of sexually-transmitted diseases.

Although vasectomy – a permanent method of birth control that involves minor surgery on the testicles – is available, the majority of men rarely ask about it, preferring only to use condoms as both a contraceptive and STI preventive mechanism, according to Lepheana. Lesotho has the third highest HIV-prevalence rate, dangerously at 23,2 percent in the whole world. It was recently projected to increase to 23,6 percent, according to latest statistics from the Ministry of Health and Social Welfare.

With both the government and various other partners joining hands to strengthen the fight against HIV, men seem to see the logic in getting circumcised. However, some health experts have warned against early celebration, insisting there was need for further research

on the issue.

There are fears some men could be misinterpreting government's drive on circumcision – as seen by the high demand for circumcision of late – by assuming the operation alone might save them from HIV, which is not the case.

Recently, the health ministry reinforced its need to scale up circumcision by saying it would introduce an optional infant circumcision in all hospitals.

"It is our hope that this introduction to prevention would instill the need for responsible behaviour in our children at an early stage. Their mothers would carry the messages and we hope they would communicate it to their children as they grow older," HIV and Aids Director in the Health Ministry, Miss Maud Boikanyo, told *Public Eye* in a previous interview.

# Mafeteng co-op breaks new ground

Published on June 7, 2013 · No Comments

The Mafeteng Poultry Cooperative Society members have taken their initiative to a whole new level by establishing Lesotho's first chicken abattoir in a landmark development that will benefit the country's entire farming community



MAFETENG- They have come a long way and understand the pain and joy that comes with being a mother, grandmother and mother-in-law.

The Mafeteng Poultry Cooperative Society members are truly extraordinary and more so because they have refused to let their advanced age weigh them down and stop them from realising their entrepreneurial dream.

They are far much better-placed to explain age is nothing but a number and some have tales to tell of how motherhood has challenged and transformed them into becoming masters of innovation.

Some of the stories are sad but with a happy ending that demonstrates resilience amid difficult circumstances.

Out of the 16 members of this unique society, only two are in their 30s while the rest are in their 60s and 70s.

While the two young members are not keeping any chickens and could largely be there to tap into the wisdom of the rest of the group, their elderly colleagues are always hard at work, optimistic another day would bring more business that would take the society to another level of prosperity.

The Mafeteng Poultry Cooperative Society members collectively keep more than 1 400 chickens at every given time, with the organisation undergoing tremendous transformation since its establishment in 2004.

But with their ambitions to make it in the poultry business bigger than their fears, the women have persistently refused to wilt with age while surmounting the enormous challenges that come with free enterprise.

And just to further prove their undying ambition, the group has dared to venture into a new business area—an unchartered territory many young people, both men and women, are scared of even imagining being a part of.

Following weeks of planning and obviously sleepless night, the women this week saw yet another dream come true following the establishment of their own poultry abattoir in Mafeteng—the first-ever such business to be set-up in Lesotho.

According to the society's chairperson, 70-year-old 'Mamathabane Fosa, the women started dreaming of running their own abattoir as far back as 2010.

"We realised that for the business to grow, we needed to have proper slaughter and storage facilities for our business. However, we found it difficult to raise the more than M200 000 needed to buy the equipment in South Africa," Nkono Fosa said in an interview on Monday this week.

Yet the group could increasingly see the desperate need for a one-stop-shop facility where farmers would bring their chickens in bulk to be professionally slaughtered, weighed, packaged and stored in a cold room.

"Our strong will and determination eventually paid off when we became beneficiaries of a M350 000 grant from the Smallholder Agriculture Development Programme (SADP)," Fosa added.

The abattoir, according to Nkono Fosa, would not only be open to the Mafeteng community but also the rest of Lesotho farmers.

"What makes us happy is that we are also not going to worry about slaughtering and the storage of our own chickens as was previously the case."

Nkono Fosa further explained the society had already started marketing the facility with the hope of getting orders from reputable supermarkets and catering companies.

"We are also going to start buying chickens from local farmers and sell to various stakeholders. Having a cold room storage facility is a big achievement for us; it means we can now take our business to a completely new level and hopefully, develop it into a real commercial enterprise."

According to Nkono Fosa, the society began as a chickenrearing cooperative only, with members then selling meat and eggs to surrounding communities.

However, the pioneering women quickly mastered the art of business diversification and months later, opened offices in Mafeteng town, where they have since been selling chickenfeed and various poultry-rearing wares, to the community.

The poultry business is indeed, big in Mafeteng as was seen by the large number of people who came to the shop to buy water, containers and feed for their own enterprises.

Fosa reflected on the origins of the cooperative: "When we started the society, we were 36 and had a good number of young women. They left us because they did not like working hard and were not patient to wait for the good profits to come."

A strong woman who gave birth to eight children, two of whom died, Fosa said despite arthritis that causes her perennial pain and also a weak sight, she does not want to burden her children by having them look after her, financially.

"It's not good at all to wait for my children to provide for me because they now have their own families to look after. For the better part of my life, I have worked as a teacher and realised how difficult it is to look after your own children. I was working but had to start the chicken business in 1977 because my salary then was M140 per month and it was not enough to cater for all my family's needs. It was very difficult for me and my husband who was a police officer," she said.

Nkono Fosa further said although times have changed, the challenges most people face remain the same.

"Many people work formally everyday but like in our time, they struggle to make ends meet. The difference is that we looked for other honest means to supplement our meagre salaries. I am not seeing much entrepreneurship spirit these days. There are very few women who are working formally and sustaining small-to-medium-sized businesses. What I don't understand is why many of our young women of today don't see the wisdom in working collectively and making money through hard, honest and morally upright means."

Yet there could be more to the entrepreneurship spirit being shown by these elderly women of Mafeteng—a small town about 60km from the capital Maseru.

Once upon a time, hundreds of the district's men left their homes to work in the South African mines, leaving their wives and children back home.

Although a few good men did not lose sight of their dream—that of bettering their lives—some however, found themselves corrupted by the alien environment, resulting in their starting new families.

The development subsequently saw the men's first families becoming destitute, forcing the mothers—now the head of families—to explore ways of ensuring the survival of their families.

'Mamolise Letsa, one of the Mafeteng Poultry Cooperative Society members, said the last time she visited her husband in 1997, she almost joined her ancestors in the after-world.

"I realised he had stopped coming home because he had another family there in South Africa. I rued the day I followed to find out what was happening. I never contacted him again, neither did he return home," Letsa said.

Abandoned and with three children to look after, Letsa said the only option for her was to start a chicken business.

"Life was difficult for me but I was able to look after my children. When I joined the society in 2010, I realised I was not the only one facing challenges of looking after my children alone. It gave me the strength to work even harder and hope," she said.

Another member of the society, 'Mamotselisi Matoma, a mother-of-four, said she decided to start an incomegenerating business when her husband who was working in the mines developed a tendency of sometimes not sending money back home.

"Now that he was retrenched last year and is back home, it is the money from the chicken business that is looking after all of us," Matoma said.

'Makhotso Jafeta, 64, is also wife of a former mineworker who retired in 1998. A mother-of-five, Jafeta said women should find ways to gain economic independence in order to contribute towards breaking the cycle of poverty experienced by many households not only in Mafeteng but throughout Lesotho.

"It is not good to depend on a husband or partner for everything. There are no barriers to economic development as seen by a rise in the number of women, including those with disability, who are working in various spheres of the economy. Women have a role to play in the development of their families and it can start with chickenrearing projects," she said.

Machabeng College presents 'The Sleeping Beauty'
Published on November 29, 2013 · No Comments



By Lerato Matheka

MASERU—Fans of the famous family Disney play, *The Sleeping Beauty*, are in for a rare treat next week, courtesy of Machabeng College.

The college is billed to stage the play on December 2-5 at its premises before moving to Ster Kinekor on December 6-8

The director, Liatile Mohale told *Public Eye* the play is one of their plans to stage dramas from different parts of the world

"Machabeng College is an international school and we try to perform plays from different parts of the world.

"In 2011 we showed 'The Government Inspector' from Russia, in 2012 we presented 'Sophiatown' from South Africa, so this year it is the year of British Pantomime to name but a few," she said.

She added the play is a revamped version of the famous fairy tale, *The Sleeping Beauty*, a British pantomime.

"We have introduced two stooges called Helpful and Helpful 2 –though nobody ever calls them by their names, the archbishop and nanny Hallowpenny, Queen Cynthia and King Robert. Queen Cynthia is played by a boy and Crispin, who later turns out to be Prince Claude, is the one who eventually kisses the Princess. These characters bring a lot of humour to the play," Mohale narrated.

She noted they had also introduced a few songs "that will really take some audience members, especially adults, to those days of mirthful youth."

Mohale said historically, pantomimes were performed at Christmas and intended to be enjoyed by the whole family.

"We are following suit," she added.

The play is made up of a cast of 13 students, ranging from Secondary 1, which is equivalent to Form 1, to IB1.

Mohale said the play accommodates the whole family. "There is lots of entertainment for everyone and all the humour is family-appropriate. The staging of more plays in Lesotho would help the drama industry in becoming more visible.

"The Sleeping Beauty is being directed by a Mosotho and features local actors; this will contribute in giving it more exposure.

"The play is designed in a way that people will enjoy the production, the art and the talent displayed. I say this boldly because the aspiring actors we have in this country are very talented and I know this because I have been working with them for the last seven years. I am always amazed at the talent," Mohale said.

"The play will be staged at two venues; on the 2<sup>nd</sup>, 3<sup>rd</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> December, it will be performed at Machabeng College at 3pm and 6:30pm. On December 2 the show will be 6:30pm only. On the 6<sup>th</sup> and 8<sup>th</sup> December, it is running at Pioneer Mall, Ster Kinekor in Cinema 1 at 7pm and 3pm respectively."

Stlofa added: "I have always maintained I will go international but I will never leave my country and with hard work, Stlofa would be known beyond the borders of Lesotho and this is all through hard work."

Killah Instinct out to create own brand

Published on October 25, 2013 · 2 Comments



#### By Lerato Matheka

MASERU—Rising hip hop star Thato Lethunya believes local artistes are better than their South African counterparts and could do much better if they were to get meaningful royalties for their music.

Popularly known in local music circles as Killah Instinct or KI, Lethunya says lack of royalties continues to kill local talent.

He told *Public Eye* the airplay he is getting on local radio stations and fans was great "but I will be happy if one day all local artistes earn royalties for their sweat".

"Local TV is now like home," he added.

Lethunya indicated having worked with many artistes for years, it was now time for him make a positive impact on the industry.

"All we need are royalties and we will show the South Africans how music is done and what music is. Our industry is better than theirs, or at least on the same level," he reasoned.

"Our success will come from royalties and our strength will be determined by the country's economy."

The 23-year-old muso who broke away from local hip hop group, the Boogie Boys, has now set his eye on releasing a solo project.

He said: "I started music in 2002 and in the past 14 years I have learnt not to give up because the future of Lesotho's music industry and the growth of hip hop is in our hands."

Looking back, the young musician recalled he was part of Boogie Boyz around 2010 but moved to K.O.L production company in 2011, where he worked on a single titled *Hustle Fard* featuring Ghetto I'z.

Since then he has been working with Dunamis and the rest of the KOL family.

"It is now time for me to work on a solo project. The fans were hungry for my solo work and I went for it," Lethunya further said.

He also revealed he would be releasing his 16-track mixtape, *Only God Can Judge Me*, later this year, containing hits *Jahova* ft Stablo Pun, *Did It For Myself* and *POLO* featuring Dunamis. The tracks are already blazing local radio stations.

"The compilation of the mixtape is now complete," Lethunya added, stressing it was time to push his music brand.

"I believe my brand KI (Killah Instict) has potential of making it in the industry.

"I have 14 years now in the game so I took my time perfecting the craft. While the local industry is slowly growing, I'm aiming the South African market because it is my stepping stone to go international. One needs to break through SA first, then Africa and ultimately the world market," the muso noted.

With two music videos *Look At Me* featuring Mustar and *We On Again* featuring Dunamis and Pasco, doing well on local TV, social networks and Youtube, Lethunya said he was working towards getting paid for his efforts and hard work.

"To be honest I need that money because it helps improve music quality and the presentation of my product. Money can change everything but I take it as a result of good relations, good music first and the money after."

The Architectural Technology student at Lerotholi Polytechnic College said his music, lyrics and drive are motivated by life.

"My music and my lyrics are real. My life, my background, my mistakes and society inspire my creativity. I don't write every day, if I don't have a concept I feel lazy," he told *Public Eye* in an interview, adding his upcoming mixtape features the likes of Dunamis, Roach, Jiji F pistol and Jr Sigh.

"They are relevant to the image I am trying to build and they are dope if you need to make hits," he noted.

The talented artiste said he will only be releasing a fulllength album once he has managed to penetrate the South African Market.

"In my journey of making music I would like to feature AKA (from South Africa) because I feel he is the only person that can do justice to my tracks locally. I also want to do collaborate with Ltore, he is tight," added Lethunya, who takes music like a sport or a second career.

**FNB** launches latest innovation

Published on October 7, 2013 · No Comments



By Bereng Mpaki

MASERU-First National Bank Lesotho will today (Thursday) introduce new banking software for smartphones in an effort to support its mobile banking service.

Known as Smartphone Banking App, the software functions on compatible cellphones without requiring network providers or data-integration. Smartphone Banking App is supported by cellphone models such as iOS Apple, BlackBerry10 as well as Android Smartphones and is available as a free download from the App stores.

According to the bank, the App affords clients the convenience of secure banking at any given time, anywhere.

"We are excited to bring FNB's innovative award-winning Smartphone Banking App and digital banking to Lesotho and empowering our clients with relevant mobile solutions such as the App and Mobi. This is an opportunity to contribute meaningfully towards the banking sector and unleash client benefit," said the FNB Lesotho chief executive officer, Mr Emil Heppell in a statement.

Apart from being able to do general banking transactions such as viewing account balances, transfers and payments, the App is said to include additional services such as the ability to locate cash withdrawal machines (ATMs), buying prepaid airtime, making free calls and sending messages to other App users.

"The App is going to offer our clients a simple and intuitive banking experience for anytime banking. Unique innovations such as the ability to locate and pay anyone in close proximity and make cashless mobile money payments are just some of the many value-added services clients will benefit from," Hepell continued.

For clients who do not have Smartphones, FNB has also launched a Mobi site, which works just as well on feature phones.

"While we believe Lesotho has great potential for Smartphone App penetration, we tried to ensure that we cater for most of our clients' requirements. We foresee that eventually, as supply increases and the prices of smart devices fall, more people will have access to these devices to be able to transact using our digital channels."

Both the FNB Banking App and Mobi site provide access to banking for customers who may not have easy access to the branch network. .

"Our App includes an eWallet, which enables us to reach the underserviced and under-banked with a mobile, money solution. Customers can expect regular new features and innovations that make their lives easier and add to their banking experience. FNB is a global bank and with this technology, we are delighted to be taking a world-class mobile solution to our clients in Lesotho," explained the CEO.

Some of the features of the App include: viewing account balances, transferring money between accounts, making payments (including once-off payments), locating cash machines, inContact Instant Message notifications, which notify a user of activity on their accounts, FNB Messenger, which allows free messages between App users, Chat Payments (send cash or airtime to chat contacts), free calls between App subscribers, Geo Payments, person to person payment solution using GPS, eWallet, an electronic store of funds which allows a user (FNB or non FNB) to receive funds and withdraw cash, or send or buy prepaid services.

FNB became the first financial institution with a Smartphone App in July 2011 in South Africa, which became the most downloaded App in the county on introduction.

### Hard work pays for Sir Schaba

Published on May 24, 2013 · 2 Comments



#### By Lerato Matheka

MASERU—Sechaba Mokoqo, who has endured many challenges since he fell in love with disc jockeying way back during his high school days, is now enjoying being on top of his game.

Mokoqo, better known as Sir Schaba, is part of the panel of judges for the 2013 Vodacom Superstar Step-up competition.

He told *Public Eye* in an interview last week building his career and brand as a DJ was a long and strenuous journey full of challenges.

A peppy character yet very serious when talking about DJ as a career, Sir Schaba maintains DJing is not a hobby for him, but a road to fame.

He said being part of the prestigious Vodacom Superstar Step-up competition falls in line with his objectives of unleashing raw talent and nurturing potential amongst young Basotho.

"It's business and it angers me to see local DJs taking the career to be something one can make a quick buck out of. The DJ industry in this country still has a long way to go," the DJ added.

But Sir Schaba is not one to be deterred. Having had the privilege of being invited as a guest DJ to some of South Africa's biggest radio stations such as Metro and YFM, he said his focus was now on building a brand and setting standards.

"I started in 1992 during a closing ceremony at Maseru Day high school. With the large international dance music collection I had, I managed to steal the show and made a name for myself. At that time I was still Sechaba," he reminisced.

The disc jockey said his love for music gained him popularity with the guys.

"Back them when you had music from the likes of Madonna, Alexander O'Neil, Black Box, Chaka Can and many others, you would be respected as a music collector," Schaba said.

Armed with a degree in engineering from the Central University of Technology, FreeState, in 2007, Schaba only enjoyed his profession for four years working for Eskom but found his passion for music too strong to resist.

"After I was exposed to the disc jockey industry during the time of tape decks, I realised that I actually loved it. I then moved to Bloemfontein to further my studies but little did I know that's where the real exposure was going to happen," he recalled.

But as his interest of playing vinyl on turn tables grew, he was never given a chance to play because LPs were very considered very vulnerable and DJs were not keen to allow anyone to play their music collection, yet along borrow it out.

"So all I did between 1995 and 2000 was to shadow DJs Lefty and Mike Rhythm night after night and watch them play. I had to learn the techniques by just watching because they were big names back then and being in their mist was enough," Schaba said.

He added, "It is true that patience pays because I later met DJ Amo who hooked me up and we both got a job to be residents DJs for Club Absolute, a joint in Bloemfontein, and started playing at a professional level and many doors opened."

Schaba said from his Club Absolute days he has since brushed shoulders with South Africa's heavy weights.

"I then changed my name to DJ Sechaba to sound relevant and had to find my identity, which is soulful deep house. Being a club circuit DJ, it was a demand to always be versatile to accommodate merrymakers and that meant playing commercial house music. That was a challenge but I managed to build a clientele for my genre and continued to grow."

Schaba said despite their hard work and popularity as resident DJs, "We never had our names advertised until one glorious day in 2003 when Kirbin Blow, owner of Club Absolute, called me and Amo in his office and asked us to open a huge box for he had a surprise for us. It was a huge surprise indeed because for the first since 2000 we saw our names on a national club tour billboard for Redds."

The two went on to tour Bloemfontein, Johannesburg, Pretoria, Cape Town and Nelspruit promoting the cider.

The disc jockey said the exposure taught him the business side of DJing and from then it was all 'madness'.

"I got smarter and big headed because DJ Sechaba was now known at national level. I then started looking for my own gigs. I was still a student then so it was hectic but determination drove me."

Schaba said seeing his popularity, he teamed up with other DJs and invented a drive called House Party and his brand just shot to the roof.

After appearing on SABC 1's Castle Loud Show during their visit to Bloemfontein, he felt the sky was now the limit for him.

"I was later booked in Port Elizabeth along with my House Party crew and after my set, a random reveller walked to me and said, 'You may call yourself DJ Sechaba, but from today you are Sir Schaba. Your set was majestic,'" Schaba said, narrating that is how the moniker Sir Schaba was born.

He added the following weekend his fellow DJs decided to call him by the name and he decided to build on the brand.

The year 2004 was the highlight of his career.

"I landed a Miller tour contract where I played in Northern Cape, North West, FreeState and Gauteng. The tour gave me what was then my biggest pay-cheque ever since I started. I was honoured and became hungrier for success," Schaba said.

After that opportunities started presenting themselves as he moved to Club La Roka as a resident DJ, playing Soulful Deep House and attracing a huge clientele.

Schaba said he came back home in 2002 and introduced the first-ever birthday party with gate takings at the then UN club and it was a big success.

Three years later, he was invited as a guest DJ on Metro FM and YFM "and although I was a Bloemfontein DJ, I maintained my Lesotho originality and that surprised a lot of people. I was very happy and overwhelmed because on both radio stations, phones were ringing off the hook."

The following year he was invited to Channel O's 411 show, which features DJs for an hour set.

But chasing two dreams wasn't easy. "I got a job at Eskom in 2007 as a technician but juggling that with GJing wasn't easy, until I decided I had to choose. I settled for music and today I'm a professional DJ.

He added, "I returned home in 2011 and teamed up with DJ Kopper to establish a company called Young Musician Emporium, which seeks to explore untapped business in the DJ industry in Lesotho." Schaba said Lesotho as a lot of potential, adding, "I know people wonder why I returned home. I returned home to bring change and help tap into the untapped and misunderstood industry of DJing and music."

Being chosen to take part in the Vodacom Superstar competition was a great opportunity to grow his career, but after 20 years in the industry, he feels it is now time for him to help aspiring disc jockeys and musicians.

"I'm now fulfilling my dream of helping others. Beyond the competition, I am involved in a capacity building project through my company so it will a long year ahead," Schaba said.

#### Patience pays for Skebza D

Published on November 22, 2013 · No Comments



#### By Lerato Matheka

#### MASERU—Skebza D is a true reflection of patience.

He took his time developing his sound before rushing into releasing an album.

With three mixtapes under his belt, the Sotho-Hop king has released a smashing debut album tilted *Money, cars* and girls which is making waves on local radio stations.

Released two weeks ago during the KO Family Picnic promo in Khubetsoana, the 13-track album's muscle is the trending topic on social media.

Crispy, fresh, relevant, commercial, clean yet simple and easy to the ear, *Money, Cars and Girls*is by far the best international ready album to be produced in Lesotho.

"The album is actually a 2014 release but we realised the market takes a long time to appreciate our initiatives. It was ideal to release the album now to give fans ample time to appreciate it before we go heavy with promotions," the muso told *Public Eye* in an interview on Monday this week, adding the new offering had to drop in Lesotho before moving anywhere.

Born Mokebe Mohasoa, Skebza D has had his fair share of the lime light including winning a HHP, South Africa's hip hop giant's hip hop competition in 2008.

He released his first mixtape *Sotho-hop* which features hits like *Torompeta* and *Chelete* in 2008.

In 2010 he dropped *Madito* which featured hits like *Tsamaea* and *Ka mofumana Mosali*, before unleashing *Hipi la Kasi* which contained *Ha re bapala* and *Its Going Down*.

"I was already at a level where I can release an album but I felt I still needed to test the market and establish a sound that will be identified with me. I was developing the sound and skills and because hip hop is the most critical genre, I felt the need to take my time," Skebza D said.

He added: "After releasing *Hipi la Kasi* last year, I knew it was time I dropped an album which will set standards and leave a mark."

The album is expected to be distributed throughout the continent starting with the Southern African region.

There is no doubt that *Money, cars and girls* displays pure talent in Lesotho house.

It features the likes of Papa Zee, Nde, C-Jo, Katz and Young Tycoon.

Released under Big Bang Records, Skebza D said the album was a long journey.

"It took me two years but the final product was worth the hard work," he noted.

Skebza said despite his five-year journey trying to establishing his identity and finding his sound, the album surprised him.

"I have always known I was versatile but even if I have to say so myself, the variety makes it (the album) fit for the world, which is where I am heading," he added, noting with his mixtapes he thought he was at the apex.

"I really have Papa Zee to thank for mentoring me and teaching the business side of music as an artist. I thought with the tapes I was dope but he helped me cross the mixtapes bridge to the album side of the music industry which is very different."

With a mixture of old and new school hip hop, R'nb, Afropop, Soul and dancehall, the album displays a more mature and skilful Skebza D the industry does not know.

"The album is titled *Money, Cars and Girls* but it is about everything else except the three despite the norm that artistes are all about money, cars and girls," he said adding, "The content of the album ranges from advice, feel good soul and up-tempo."

He added: "The content is different from song to song; the listener learns a different sound to Skebza D. It is an offering to the world yet still maintaining the Sotho-Hop culture which is a unique element".

The versatile rapper has worked with the likes of MSU's Pasco and Blitz, Chocolate Soul, T-Mech, DJ Stanic from South Africa, Trigger and Papa Zee.

"These artistes have helped and influenced my growth musically and in seeing music as business more than just passion," he stated, adding he is at a level where he can define himself as an established writer and performer.

"I have written good content, produced good material and performed both in the country and in a number of places in South Africa, making it easy for me to say I have established a recognisable brand but as an artiste, I still have a long way to go. Until I am successful, financially stable and have a good management structure I am still on the journey."

Many may recognise Skebza D from back in 2002 during the Sprite Rap Activity hosted by People's Choice FM but he says that was him being a boy.

"It was the in-thing then; my friends and I just decided to take part. I started taking music seriously in 2008 when I released my first mixtape *Sotho-Hop* which paved my destiny," the rapper said, noting he left school to study music at Visha Music School in Joburg.

He disclosed his album would be promoted across the country during the festive season before dropping in South Africa.

Distribution is expected to cover South Africa, Botswana, Swaziland and Lesotho, then the rest of Africa.

Featuring hits like Top *Shutta*, *Dintja*, *One of a Kind*, *Bubbles* and *Dinaleli*, the album is a perfect buy for the festive season.

"I make music that will change people's perspective about certain things in life but I also expect people to listen and keep clued. This album has set a bar and there are many more to come," Skebza D concluded.

I'm trapped in a woman's body

Published on July 26, 2013 · No Comments



# By Tsitsi Matope

MASERU- Days before Kate delivered the Prince of Cambridge on Monday this week, the media frenzy was already fever-pitch as speculation continued to mount over the gender of the unborn child.

When His Royal Highness, the Prince of Cambridge, was finally born at St Marys Hospital in London, the public had also become transfixed with news of the third heir to the

British throne, after his father William and grandfather Prince Charles

Like many new parents, Prince William and Duchess Kate are imagining their son growing up and becoming the pride of the whole of Britain.

However, back to Lesotho, 32 years ago, the mother of Sheriff Mothopeng also celebrated the birth of her lovely first baby girl, in Roma.

A single mother, she named her 'daughter' Lineo as a way of appreciating the gift she had received from God.

Just like every mother, she also toyed with the idea that one day, her lovely Lineo would steal a man's heart, get married and give her lots of grandchildren.

However, little did she know God had other plans for her 'daughter', who is now Matrix Support Group's Dialogue and Advocacy Coordinator.

Matrix is a local Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgendered and Intersex support group (LGBTI) established in 2008, to address challenges faced by the community.

However, despite having female features, Lineo would, one day, assume a male name, Sheriff, prefer to be referred to as a 'he' and never feel like a woman or date men.

Sheriff was born transgendered, meaning despite being a woman in every visible sense, 'he' is a man trapped in a woman's body.

On just a fleeting glance, there is no doubt he is a man, but after a much closer look and maybe a brief interaction, one might have conflicting thoughts about his gender.

Sheriff, who insists on being referred to as he, explained in an interview on Wednesday this week that at the age of three, he had already started developing interest in masculine games such as playing football and riding horses.

Sheriff also enjoyed herding livestock, preferred wearing boys' clothes despite having all the physical features of a girl, and playing with boys his age in Maphotong, Ha-Elia village where he lived with his grandparents.

"I hated Sundays because that was when we went to church and I was forced to wear dresses. I looked odd in them," he said.

By the time he started attending school at Thaba-Chitja Primary School, Sheriff could not understand why people thought and regarded him a girl.

"I did not understand it because despite having the features of a girl, I felt like a boy. During Standard Seven, I started having strong feelings for a certain girl. We became friends although I never disclosed what our friendship meant to me. My feelings for girls became even much stronger at St Marys Secondary School and Holy Names High School," he said.

Mothopeng has three young sisters and one of them, the third, is also transgendered.

"My brother, TP, is also transgendered. Honestly, he will kill me if I refer to him as my sister because we are both men in women's bodies."

Mothopeng said feeling like a man but having the body of a woman is the most painful thing anyone can live with, although he and his 'brother', have never openly discussed it with their mother.

"My aunt, my mother's sister once tried to correct me when she heard my association with girls at my school at Holy Names High. However, it did no change how I felt."

As he grew older, from his days at the National University of Lesotho studying Law for three years before switching to BA in Cultural Heritage and Environment, Sheriff became worried about his breasts and did not know how to get rid of them.

"They felt out of place, not to mention the menstruation I endure every month."

He now wears binders to conceal the breasts and even says considering pregnancy sounds so strange.

Mothopeng further explained how growing up being referred to as a woman and choosing to be the man he felt, caused him so much pain.

"There is no way you can fake being transgendered and that is why it is so difficult for people like me. There is no way of escaping discrimination, apart from coping with it. Over the years, I have learnt to accept, love and respect the person I am and to be honest with myself. My survival has a lot to do with my response and approach towards the largely heterosexual society I live in. Being a member of Matrix and getting involved in a lot of activism work, has also helped me become resilient to my environment."

Sheriff said a society that is judgmental and does not understand who he is and why he was created in such a manner, needs education to understand his uniqueness.

"I would not like describing myself as disabled, but I think God created us all different – a man, woman, lesbian, gay, intersex, bisexual and transgendered. We need to embrace such diversity and try to understand, in a good and progressive way, why we are different."

Sheriff is also curious enough to want to understand more about his sexuality and hopes one day, he would be able to undergo various tests that might reveal his biological or hormonal make-up.

"I started growing a beard last year and don't understand what is happening to my body now."

He has also done a lot of research and discovered that as far back as the  $19^{\rm th}$  century, gays existed.

"They were called Ntili or Mankeane and did not fight in wars because they were not what they seemed to be."

He also explained some people confused issues by assuming that men who practiced anal sex are homosexual.

"These are some of the practices that are also common among heterosexual relationships. They cannot make one a lesbian or homosexual. Sodomy, for instance, is a crime and does not mean the perpetrator is homosexual."

Mothopeng said because he is man, he is attracted to heterosexual women.

"Dating women is not something I struggle with and at times, they actually approach me first. I think I am able to sustain a healthy relationship because of my good nature. I am a gentleman, which is what makes my partner feel comfortable around me. The only challenge though is my partner cannot open up to her family about the relationship out of fear of stigma."

Mothopeng further explained he has experienced many problems, especially when he entered women's toilets.

"I would prefer using unisex toilets, which are however, not locally available. I have noticed that each time I enter public toilets, some women are uncomfortable. I cannot use men's toilets because of their design which is not compatible with my own creation. Some women even tell me, Ntate, you are lost, this one is for women."

He also cited problems during police searches.

"In one incident, a policeman called to search me after he saw me walk towards a female police officer. When I told him I was a woman, without much elaboration, he looked shocked and said he was not to be blamed for my looking like a man."

He also explained although he got employed by one local company following his graduation at the University in 2010, it has not been easy to get a new job after his contract ended last year.

"I have been to an interview recently where I was asked questions that scrutinised my gender. The interviewers kept repeating questions like why I was not married and did not have a boyfriend. I did not get the job. I realised how tough it is to try to be the woman I am registered as on all my identification documents and again, be the man I know I am. There are times when society demands a pronouncement based on what they see, or who they think they see and that's when I am torn between being a man and a woman. Life challenges me."

Mothopeng, however, said society is not to be blamed for its lack of understanding that LGBTIs did not choose to be who they are.

"Although the laws in Lesotho are silent on issues pertaining to LGBTIs, I don't believe having a law in place can help all the people to accept us. I think we need constructive national dialogues that can educate people about who we are. The situation in South Africa, where incidences of corrective rape and murder of some LGBTIs, says a lot about how laws can be ineffective and fail to change social constructs and mind-sets."

Sheriff further said despite a largely silent approach by Lesotho's previous government, there are indications that some stakeholders, who include the Ministry of Health, are interested in understanding the LGBTIs.

"The major concern for us has been the inability to access health services because we cannot easily open-up in an environment where we feel unsafe or not well-received. However, for purposes of planning an effective response, particularly in the prevention of HIV and AIDS, the Ministry of Health is also including us in their national plan of actions."

Various organisations, both local and foreign, are also showing interest to work with the community in Lesotho, Sheriff, added.

"There are various studies coming and this is also going to help improve our data."

Sheriff also said based on limited surveys conducted recently, his association estimates that five-percent of the population in the country constitutes LGBTIs.

"We have many LGBTIs that prefer not to open up out of fear of the stigma attached to being different."

Matrix is currently holding a-three-day training on sexuality and gender among vulnerable groups at Lehakoe, Mothopeng said, adding the meeting, which started yesterday, ends tomorrow.

"The aim of the meeting is to raise various issues on sexuality and gender among the LGBTI community and other vulnerable groups. The meeting is also discussing the development of new strategies that would help bring together all LGBTIs and enable the speaking with one voice."

According to Sheriff, effective ways to help people have a better understanding about the community in Lesotho, is also under discussion.

Spectacular MGC complex to open doors
Published on August 18, 2012 No Comments



MASERU – The Matekane Group of Companies (MGC) this month unveils its first property development project—an exquisite, high-rise office complex situated near the Mpilo Boulevard in Maseru.

The MGC Park, whose construction began in October 2010, comprises 9000 square-metres of floor space on

seven floors. In addition to being the MGC headquarters, the complex would also have tenants such as StanLib, International Monetary Fund, Independent Electoral Commission, Global Fund, PACT World Lesotho, Letshego, banks, restaurants and shops.

According to Mr Lenka Mphafi, who is managing director of Trend Group— a company overseeing the entire project—the complex is already fully booked, although the exact date of opening is yet to be decided.

"The property was initially meant to house all the subsidiaries of the Group under one roof to ease doing business with the company. However, upon research, the idea was further improved to erect a structure that would not only accommodate MGC staff but also contribute to answering the need for commercial space in Maseru, and diversify the Group's portfolio of assets and introduce new revenue streams," Mphafi said.

Tenants and visitors to the complex would enjoy worldclass services, , Mphafi added.

"Tenants at MGC Park will operate from a building that is aesthetically beautiful. They will enjoy modern facilities comprising but not limited to the latest technology in automated card access control as opposed to keys, air-conditioning systems, 24-hour surveillance and emergency systems. Two elevators and a state-of-the-art skylight staircase grace the property. In addition, 99 parking bays provide ample parking space for both the tenants and their clients."

With the cost of the entire project around M100 million, more than 250 people were employed during the construction of the complex. Ninety-five percent of companies that were engaged in the building are owned by Basotho, and these include Trend Group, Transelec, SM Consulting Engineers, Phanda Risk, Material Testing Laboratory & LLBK Consulting Engineers, and Tuwana Construction. The project is wholly financed and owned by the MGC.

Further employment and business opportunities would be created for individuals and companies that offer security, cleaning, maintenance and other services when the complex becomes operational, according to Mphafi. The second phase of the project, which is anticipated to be much bigger than the first one, is also in the pipeline, Mphafi added.

"This property is MGC's introduction to the property market, and our vision will continue to unfold in the ongoing construction of residential property in Mpilo Estate, the development of Hilton Estate and the second phase of the MGC Park. The MGC hopes that this initiative will inspire more Basotho entrepreneurs to enter the property development market to ignite innovation and development, and stimulate excellence," highlighted Mphafi.

The complex is not only a convenient business hub, but also a spectacle which is set to transform the skyline of the city forever. Apart from water features at the entrance and in the lobby, the exquisite architectural design of the building has led to a beautiful array of lights that illuminate the structure during the night.

#### Thabane's political balance sheet

Published on December 20, 2013 1 Comment



We give a political balance sheet of a veteran politician who has been through thick and thin of the pros and cons of Lesotho politics, Prime Minister Dr Thomas Motsoahae Thabane, now the chief executive of the coalition government founded on June 8, 2012 after a historic election of May 26 that had born no outright winner, compelling contesting political parties to forge strategic alliances.

The alliance between Thabane's All Basotho Convention (ABC), Lesotho Congress for Democracy (LCD) and Basotho National Party (BNP) has given the coalition a required margin of 60+1 seats out of 120 parliamentary seats to form a government.

Thabane's historic coalition seized the reins of power from the then three-month old Democratic Congress (DC) of former Prime Minister Pakalitha Mosisili, which had won 48 seats, followed by ABC with 30, LCD with 26 and BNP with five while the coalition's silent partner, Popular Front for Democracy (PFD) got three seats. The rest of other political parties got one seat each.

In its 18 months, the coalition had so many well wishers, soothsayers and fortunetellers, some of whom predicted its collapse within six month.

We present to our readers a performance evaluation of Thabane's political credits and debits as the Prime Minister and his political character in his capacity as the leader of coalition government.

We also briefly forecast his prospects from now leading to the 2017 national elections.

#### Does Thabane have what it takes?

In order to be a prime minister who efficiently delivers promised services to the electorate, one needs to have enough authority and power to wield. Authority means having charisma to convince even those who do not like you to be on your side and support you on certain issues of national interest, to be able to find a common ground with different stakeholders and form a team and partnerships.

#### How far does Thabane possess all these?

Thabane draws his first authority from the support of the electorate, which has shown in the growth of membership of his ABC party since its formation in October 2006. His dignified status within the society is a plus on his authority. He has incorporated culture, an issue that is very dear to Basotho, in his political vision.

Thababe has also proved to have the ability to convince politicians of different ideologies to work together and he has appeal to different sectors of the society beyond religious denominations, political ideologies, social status and professional backgrounds.

He has ability to engage in dialogue on issues with ordinary people, including those who can neither read nor write. His coalition administration is so far not hostile to the independent media.

For Thabane to be able to wield power, he would need supporting legal framework and a force to use where there is no compliance. The constitution gives him the necessary powers and the ball is in his court to formulate laws that will facilitate his service delivery and policies. He seems to command good support of the military and the police, state institutions that seem to have a buy-in of his policies such as crime prevention, a move that has instilled a sense of security to investments and personal belongings. The buy-in of the elites of society into the idea of a coalition government gives him both authority and power to deliver efficiently. Unfortunately, the judiciary is the weakest link in the pillars of legal support that would give him power and any continuing delay to subscribe to his vision, may frustrate implementation of the policies of the coalition.

#### Delivery and strengths so far

Thabane has proved himself to be above petty politics by making no fuss in having official opposition with full benefits, an opportunity he was maliciously denied by his predecessors.

He has demonstrated to the electorate that he could bring about a modicum of change. For example, there have been advances in the areas of agriculture and food security, mining, and safety and security.

When Thabane took over, the civil service was on the brink of collapse, given the low levels of delivery, which had triggered disenchantment from voters, hence the change of government. But he has shown within 18 months that change is possible, although it is too early to judge him holistically.

It is under his leadership that sector plans have kick started, giving Basotho a ray of hope that the National Strategic Development Plan (NSDP 2012-13 to 2016-17) will be implemented. The sector plans identify and dictate the resources needed, development activities to be carried out and within particular time frames.

The Directorate on Corruption and Economic Offences (DCEO) feel empowered after being given moral support by the government, hence bringing to book even those who had given the impression that they were untouchables as they are now having their day in courts.

Moral behaviour is considered in high esteem and now taken seriously as those who show signs of low morals are exposed and appropriate actions taken. This has seen ministers and civil servants fired for being on the wrong sites of moral principles.

Ministers and civil servants are no longer armchair officers but engaged in legwork to find, discuss and answer the concerns from the electorate through media presentations and continuous visits to villages for report back, a sign of transparency and accountability.

Since 1993, the prime minister is now talking directly to the electorates through national pitsos, not political party rallies.

His mutual relationship with the ministry of labour and employment has improved with close consultations regarding working conditions of workers in and outside Lesotho.

Relationships with the country's only neighbour, South Africa, has improved with implementation of the Joint Bilateral Commission for Cooperation (JBCC).

Social security for the elderly, the orphaned, children and the disabled has been improved with the elevation of the department of social welfare into a full ministry responsible for social development. Pension allowances have been increased.

Criminals across all sectors from white collar, to robbers, car thieves and stock thieves now find Lesotho a cold place for them, with a 'shoot to kill' to those who are armed and resist arrest.

The distinguished features of the coalition government are a noticeable national unity, aroma of peace and political stability that were never experienced in Lesotho before. There is a sense of security of property and personal belongings — an assurance to investors and ordinary citizens. There is social development with assurance of social security and care to the vulnerable members of society.

# Weaknesses

It is one of the characteristics of a prime minister to be a good personnel manager. Although Thabane is restricted by the terms and conditions of the coalition agreement to appoint the best caliber of expertise Lesotho has, at least 65 percent of his cabinet show signs of commitment, sense of urgency and need for efficient service delivery. The question is whether it is possible for him to eliminate the weakest links, especially those who were appointed by his coalition partners.

Despite charisma and experience that make especially intellectuals want to be on his side, Thabane is a bad negotiator on a round table discussion. He goes to a dialogue with his mind already made and therefore debates from a position, a skill that may please his side but often offends his opponents who consider him a dictator and arrogant.

In his party and those of the coalition partners, there is no clear policy of leadership mentoring and coaching, giving ascendance to leadership positions to be determined by chance. Thabane has an attitude of 'we-agree-to-disagree', a leadership folly that saw him not being able to contain an exodus of radical individuals, a trend seen within his ABC party prior the elections whenever differences surfaced – a poor conflict management.

The dim side that the coalition has shown so far is that it is not easy to consolidate their different policies and this has subjected the coalition administration to be run on compromises rather than common values. The coalition partners manage friction more often than managing what they have in common.

The presence of the LCD as a major and more experienced partner in the coalition has retained the majority of the old stock, to whom change might be interpreted as undermining their status quo. This also seems to have restricted a wholesale change in the way the government should operate to accelerate service delivery.

It is under Thabane's leadership that hopes for free education have been thrown in doubt as a result of the coalition's decision to increase school fees, a blow to the gains reached by the predecessors.

Failure by the coalition to increase salaries of factory workers has not gone down well with the industry that boasts almost 35 000 workforce. This has led to some factory workers opting for the better-devil-you-know than the friend you do not know.

It is under the leadership of Thabane that issues that are traditionally to be guarded classified secrets of government are exposed willy-nilly, therefore causing media, the public and opposition interfering in matters that are not yet of public consumption.

While the diplomatic assignments are naturally held by political appointees, but are maintained as dignified state agencies; they have recently been a centre of political scuffles in the coalition government, therefore reducing them to an equivalent of political party agencies abroad.

Signs of war against corruption have been locally and internationally hailed as a positive move towards good and clean governance, at least in those areas where they are managing to get rid of the old stock. However, nepotism, abuse of power and looting of state resources continue taking place under Thabane's very nose in just 18 months in office.

Thabane's political approach to try and sort out problems within the country's judiciary backfired and turned out to be interference in the independence of the courts.

#### Threats

A coalition is a kind of government that is by nature always on the brink of collapse, and every decision is taken giving its survival first preference over everything else. This is likely to be the norm for the entire life span of the Lesotho's coalition government and this in itself is the biggest threat to its survival.

The threats are policies or actions that may lead to its premature collapse or loss of elections.

The decision to increase school fees following the introduction of a successful programme of free education was a brave move and highest risk taken by the newly-elected coalition government. It has given enough ammunition to the opposition and justified claims that free education was a project of their predecessors and without them in power there would be no free education.

The majority of high-ranking civil servants are not loyal to the coalition government, and there is high potential of sabotaging service delivery programmes unless they are converted or replaced.

Thabane must tread carefully on his anti-corruption drive as it may affect his own partners in the coalition and therefore risk destabilising government.

The slow pace or reluctance of the judiciary to buy in to government policies may turn his crime fighting exercise to non-starter if he cannot win cooperation of the courts within the next 12 months.

While Thabane's authority may remain intact, unnecessary consultations within the coalition government even over minor issues, turns out to be a threat to premier's exercising of power to ensure compliance and efficient service delivery.

Old age is taking toll on Thabane's health and astuteness of how he used to do things but there is still no clear successor until after his party's convention early next year, which is likely to produce the deputy leader as obvious successor.

Naughtiness of some of Thabane's strong men like Temeki Tsolo, which led to him being dismissed from cabinet, has affected implementation, as he was one of the strong links upon whom Thabane could have full power to command.

A strong opposition in the form of the Democratic Congress (DC), which has financial muscle and is boasting of experienced names in politicking and governance, is a major threat to the coalition government. It is the first time that Lesotho has an opposition of the DC caliber, which proves to be an alternative government ready and prepared to take office at any moment.

While crime is decreasing, especially stock theft and armed robbery, there is an increase in witchcraft killings and white-collar crime.

Failure of the coalition partners to form a long-term strategic partnership on electioneering may confuse the electorate who see no reason why the partners cannot work as a team on everything. This gives an impression that the common purpose might have been only to obstruct the DC without a long-term common political development goal.

The loyalty of the commander of the army, who served under LCD as one of the partners and then under the DC, which is now in opposition, is not clear at this stage on the current coalition government and it may be dangerous if the coalition cannot establish his position or replace him before it is too late.

### **Opportunities**

The question of whether the coalition will survive its term of office and return to office in 2017 depends on a number of factors.

The coalition has to be strong where the previous regime failed but at the same time amplify the good policies of the previous government. Thabane must take two steps where Pakalitha Mosisili, his predecessor, took one step. Thabane's idea of unity of Basotho beyond political ideologies, colours and religious beliefs, through promotion of nationhood, will remove any political obstacle on his way.

Crime prevention, security of property, investment and personal belongings knows no political ideology or colour and it's a good seller to the electorate.

Service delivery is powerful than military and it makes or breaks governments. Peace and stability lay the foundation for any form of development. Indigenisation of business gives citizens a sense of ownership and it is hard for citizens who have ownership of the economy to burn their towns and loot their shops.

The ball is in the court of Thabane as leader of coalition and leader of the party leading the coalition to pursue these opportunities or ignore them at his own peril.

#### The Character that is Tom Thabane

A veteran civil servant and experienced politician who is conversant with the workings of national, regional and international governance, Thabane stands a better chance than any of his predecessors to champion the positive change that will make Basotho forget their thorny and bloody past.

Having gone through thick and thin of Lesotho's history, Thabane is a tested commander who can hold during difficult times. He has managed to bring difficult situations under control, even to the extent of taking unilateral and unpopular decisions.

His personality has let him to form and lead a party (ABC) that has the unique ability to appeal beyond the traditional political divide of the congress and national ideologies. Thabane appeals to those of royal blood and of natives alike, of different religious and cultural beliefs and practices.

Given his down-to-earth character and ability to maintain friendship, the boy from dusty Ha Abia on the outskirts of the city can mingle with town dwellers and rural dwellers and form friendship with anyone regardless of social status. But make no mistake and think that Thabane is an angel; he is a toughie who can tell anyone at anytime to take his monkey while he takes his rope.

A strong political debater, Thabane's opponents earlier dismissed him as a non-starter elite who cannot appeal to rural folk, because of his academic language on poverty alleviation, and it turned out to be true as he was beaten white wash in the rural constituencies.

#### Tom Thabane's 10 dictums

(The Ten Commandments of "Brother Tom")

- 1. Avoid alcohol if you can: From the outset in 2006 Thabane has been thrashed from the right for his seeming condolence of alcohol abuse and applauded from the left for his presumed appreciation of the value of reasonable consumption of the product. Avoiding to be judgemental, he has incessantly warned against alcoholism, while also eschewing carefully a ban of alcohol in the ranks of the party.
- 2. Sera sa motho ke tlala: The Mantša-Tlala mantra which he learned from his post-colonial civil service days under the BNP was from his own party's birth its flagship war-cry.
- 3. Learn from established wise words: From the blocks, at the beginning of his own political race (i.e. when he wasn't battling from the platform of another's party), Thabane made it a landmark point to read the Bible at the beginning of literally every one of the ABC's indoor conferences and open-air rallies. At one point he even allowed himself to be dragged into a Maseru radio station's campaign for that ambiguous "inclusion of Christianity in the national constitution"!
- 4. Thou shalt not steal: Since his seemingly demoting assignment to the Ministry of Home Affairs, after serving illustriously as foreign minister to retrieve government from the brink in the 1998/2002 cabinet, Thabane has redeemed and/or retained his strong image by waging an unremitting war against crime, especially stock theft which has bereft vast communities of their wealth and livelihoods.
- 5. Unpredictability: Lucky are those who know what Tom will do next, whom his affections will favour and his wrath will visit first. After a short, memorable career in combatting stock theft, he suffered what some observers saw as a malicious transfer to the ministry of communications, where he promptly endeared himself to sectoral players with that open-air broadcast of Lesedi FM's popular morning show from Ha-Abia, only to turn upon the media fraternity soon thereafter.
- 6. Shrewdness turning crisis into opportunity: Most of the time you see him in motion; you just hear the cries of his victims. This attribute tires with (5) above. At this one Thabane has been most adept. After being left out in the cold by exclusion by the then ruling party's national executive despite contesting various posts in January 2006, a sign that his colleagues on the upper deck wanted him out, he broke away to form the ABC in October that year. When the party suffered defeat in the 2007 National General Elections he led a train of weekly party campaign rallies all the way to the 2012 polls, ending up with the trophy of heading the tripartite coalition government.
- 7. Wit and humour: This point naturally belongs together with the immediately preceding two points. One might wish to recall his somewhat unmentionable and stinging exchanges with the former Prime Minister Pakalitha Mosisili on the campaign trails of the snap National Assembly election of 2007.
- 8. No pardons, no forgetfulness: This putative trait is best witnessed by the way he notoriously, single-handedly put to ashes the virtual coup' de tat of 1998 that almost felled the nascent LCD government. The tenacity with which he spearheaded that September 1998 South Africa's military invasion, the scuppering of the all-party covenants, and the hounding of the real or perceived

conspirators against the state and mutineers as well as the unremitting committal of these categories to lengthily imprisonment and to effective banishment from the public sphere, all speak to this profile.

- 9. Thou shalt live by thy sweat/An eye for an eye: Drawing from the Sesotho adage *Lesholu ke ntja le lefa ka hlooho ea lona*, literally meaning a thief is a dog that pays with its head, Thabane has since attracted a mixture of despication and admiration as he criss-crossed the country since becoming prime minister, telling the police in public rallies to shoot-to-kill armed gangs, and calling for rapists to be castrated.
- **10.** Do what you know/think is right: Thabane can swim against the tide of collective vision, and act as a lone-wolf, without submitting to either majoritarian principle or reverting to contrary majority opinion.

**Teaching is more than just sharing information**Published on October 11, 2013 · No Comments



By Flora Teckie

As we celebrated World Teachers' Day on 5 October, let us reflect on some features that could make teaching profession a greater success.

Education is the most effective way to shape the values, attitudes, behaviours and skills of our children. Through proper education, teachers can assist in cultivating in our children "such attributes, skills, virtues and qualities as will enable them to contribute their share to the building of an ever-advancing civilization. True education releases capacities, develops analytical abilities, confidence, will, and goal-setting competencies, and instils the vision that will enable them to become self-motivating change agents, serving the best interests of the community", according to a statement of the Bahá'í International Community.

Education should be examined in light of its contribution to individual growth and to bringing about transformation in society, which are necessary for the creation of just, peaceful and harmonious communities. "Regard man as a mine rich in gems of inestimable value", wrote Bahá'u'lláh. "Education can, alone, cause it to reveal its treasures, and enable mankind to benefit therefrom".

In the Bahá'í view human beings are inherently noble. The education which can enrich our mind and spirit should try to develop, in addition to intellectual faculties, the moral

attributes of our children: truthfulness, courtesy, generosity, compassion, justice, love and trustworthiness. Acquiring such qualities will also bring about harmonious and productive families and communities. Such education, at the same time, should help to instill in every individual the awareness of the oneness of humanity. It should prepare them to live in peace in an atmosphere of understanding, dialogue and respect for others.

#### Teacher as a model of nobility and discipline

Considering that students are inherently noble, but at the same time need patient cultivation, the teacher must be a model of nobility, self-actualization and discipline. In the Bahá'í view, sound character is more important than intellectual brilliance.

"The proper education of children" according to the Bahá'í Writings " is of vital importance to the progress of mankind, and the heart and essential foundation of all education is spiritual and moral training ..." and "knowledge is praiseworthy when it is coupled with ethical conduct and virtuous character. ... A physician of evil character, and who betrayeth his trust, can bring on death, and become the source of numerous infirmities and diseases"

Teachers must see nobility and capacity in each student, recognizing that a lack of opportunity is different from lack of capacity. They should have no prejudices – be it racial, religious, gender or occupational – and treat all children as equals.

They should train children to respect, appreciate and understand diverse ideas and to settle their differences peacefully. All children, even very young ones, can be trained to understand the ideas of others, to defend the weak and to settle their differences peacefully.

Children should be taught to investigate for themselves all matters, instead of just imitating adults. They should be taught to have high aims, contemplate on the consequences of their decisions and the results of their action.

While teaching children about their rights is crucial, it is as important that they are made aware of the corresponding responsibilities — towards their families, their school and communities. It is also important that children are taught from young ages their responsibility to express their God given talents and capacities in service to humanity.

Teachers should nurture an appreciation for the richness and importance of the world's diverse cultural, religious and social systems. They should cultivate tolerance, love, brotherhood, equality, compassion, understanding, sacrifice, humility, and an active commitment to justice and teach unity in diversity as the foundational principle for social integration.

# A shared learning process

Education should make the child a collaborator both in his own growth and in the development of his community. While teachers are normally well equipped to teach, there

is always a great deal to learn during the process of conducting their important responsibility.

As the Bahá'í International Community says in one of its statements: "they [teachers] should form a partnership with their students in a shared learning process, demonstrating by their example that they, too, are learners. This can have a liberating effect on students in that it helps them see themselves as directors of their own learning and as individuals who can determine the course their lives will take".

Education should be relevant to the true needs of a community and contribute to the unification of mankind. Service to humanity, including to one's family, neighbours, community, and nation; should be considered an essential component of education and there should be practical means for its expression in the education process through service-oriented programs.

#### Conclusion

Teachers must become role models and the transmitters of morality and builders of character, in addition to imparting academic knowledge and skills. They should ensure that children acquire a balanced set of capacities that are academic, spiritual and vocational.

Teachers must enjoy the support of the community and respect, which results from their sacrificial services to the community and as role models for the younger generation.

Lilaphalapha goes to Qacha's Nek Published on September 6, 2013 · No Comments



#### By Lerato Matheka

MASERU—The hilarious *Lilaphalapha* crew is tomorrow set to warm up the chilly town of Qacha's Nek with a comedy show at Qacha Community hall.

According to Bofihla 'Neko, the director of the comedy, this would be their first performance in the district.

"We are going to introduce comedy lovers of Qacha to *Lilaphalapha* crew for the first time," 'Neko said, adding the show was aimed at finding acting talent as part of their national search which started earlier this year.

"We have visited Butha-Buthe, Leribe, Berea and Maseru and we are still in search of potential people who will be cast for *Sefaha and Love Chapter*."

'Neko noted they expected to start shooting set one of *Lilaphalapha Teropong* next week.

He added: "We have a variety of projects and *Lilaphalapha* is one of them so this country wide search is for all our productions."

He highlighted they were looking to have at least three people from all the country's 10 districts.

"We are breaking this norm that things are done in Maseru only. We want to take pride in a production that features Basotho from all the corners of the country."

The cast would make part of the major, minor and extras for the productions.

'Neko said they would be interacting with their supporters and sharing skills during their stay in Qacha.

"Qacha is far so we thought instead of going there to look for talent, we would also introduce them into our world of acting and breathe life into the infamous *Lilaphalapha*," he indicated.

The budding actor said the *Lilaphalapha* crew would be responsible for grooming aspiring talent. "We have a team that grooms fresh talent to be ready for set and stage."

He continued: "This is not just a talent search that will end after we shoot our productions but we are looking to build a working relationship with new talent so they are further exposed to the film and acting industry."

'Neko stated their efforts to unleash raw talent were being hampered by lack of sufficient funds. "All this is self-funded. It is very difficult to have support to continue doing what we love, but are we determined to go ahead despite the challenges we face."

"We would like to thank Thabure Technologies who throw in help here and there."

**US Christian rap artistes to rock Maseru**Published on August 3, 2013 · No Comments



#### By Lerato Matheka

MASERU—United States Christian rap artistes Bizzle and Lavoisier are billed to set Victoria Hotel ablaze tomorrow.

The American stars are expected to perform alongside South Africa's DJ Easy, Recruit, III Ceey from Zimbabwe and Abel Chungu from Zambia.

The line-up will also boast locals Painkiller, Trer, Atrax and Case-Closed.

The event dubbed 'Live Wise Die Ready Tour' is organised by a local Christian events management company, Pure Passion.

In an interview with *Public Eye* on Tuesday this week, Peter Mahase of Pure Passion said the event is aimed at uniting Christians across church barriers.

"We are providing a platform to celebrate Christ with other like-minded people from even far beyond their national boundaries, as you can see the line-up features artistes from USA and other African countries," Mahase noted.

He added they organised the show in conjunction with a South African events management company, Fresh Impressions.

"They invited known African gospel artists and youth ministers to join with these two Americans to take a message to the young generation that says —live wise in this present world, as to prepare for the world after."

Mahase said they have worked with Fresh Impressions before and "they approached us to hear if we would want to host the tour in Lesotho and we agreed."

He said their objective was to conscientise the public about Christian hip hop, "which carries a very different message from secular hip hop".

"The aim of this weekend's event is to drive the young kids from the YOLO (You Only Live Once) mentality of 'live wreckless, die young' to a new message of 'Live wise, die ready'. We also seek to give people alternative clean fun,

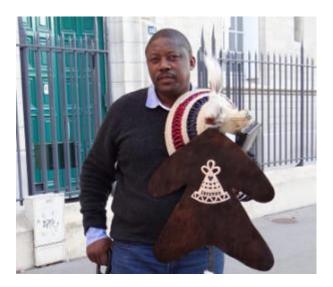
a place for Christians to enjoy outside their local churches."

Mahase noted these type of events brings church together. "We have seen churches more unified, as people from various churches and backgrounds meet in these settings. The events are a platform for networking with other African and international artistes."

He added, "We have seen a rise in the love for Christ from young people, who were slowly but surely starting to leave churches, because the institutional church was become dull for them. Hip hop is not dead; it went gospel and it's here for the youth."

# Moshoeshoe film to screen at schools

Published on August 23, 2013 · No Comments



#### By Lerato Matheka

MASERU—A local film, *Moshoeshoe: The Mountain Kingdom* will soon be showing at schools across the country.

This is courtesy of a school screening project launched last Friday by Moroka-Pula Productions at Pioneer Shopping Centre.

The project according to Kalosi Ramakhula, the producer, is meant to make the film accessible to young Basotho.

Ramakhula said Pioneer Shopping Centre had brought it to their attention that since we had a table selling the DVD at the mall, most people that showed interest were students in primary, secondary and high School so they decided to come up with a way of ensuring the movie reaches this market.

"Showing the documentary at schools was never our plan but thanks to Pioneer and Ster Kinekor who are our key supporters, we will now be showing the film at Ster Kinekor for schools around Maseru," he noted. Ramakhula revealed they had planned to show the film at most of schools in Maseru but due to lack of adequate finances, they would only be taking five schools from the nine districts.

"We will visit five schools at district level and the film will be screen at schools halls."

He said they had hoped to screen the film to "every Mosotho youth".

"This is a pilot phase. We are planning to cover more schools but at the moment we have to start small.

"We started with Tholoana' Bophelo English Medium school in Maseru and we will be visiting more country wide."

Ramakhula said the school screening project is targeting all schools in Lesotho despite subjects offered.

They planned to begin screening the film at secondary and high schools before moving to tertiary and primary schools.

"We would have loved to screen the film for free but so far the production of the film has cost us M1.8 million and to cater for costs, the film will be watched at a cost which is low enough to accommodate everyone to watch." he said.

"We are aware that there are orphans who might not be able to folk out the admission fee so we are working on a plan to also give them an opportunity to watch the packaged Basotho history," he highlighted.

Ramakhula noted, "We believe a nation that knows its history has potential to flourish and at this point the screening is going to help our youth reflect on who they are, how the nation came about. We are also aiming at making our company relevant to the growing generation."

The two-hour film was produced by Phokeng Communications and Moroka-Pula Productions, under the direction of Kalosi Ramakhula.

Moshoeshoe: The Mountain Kingdom tells the story of Basotho origin, its descendants and the great King Moshoeshoe I and his legacy in reign.

It is narrated by Nthakoana Ngatana and features interviews of South African and Lesotho historians like Professor David Ambrose, Tseliso Ramakhula, Professor Pitika Ntuli, George Makana, Batho Hlalele, 'Mamothibeli Sehlabo, among others.

The School Screening Project coordinator, Mamakhethe Phokoane said they sent out invitations and Maseru-based schools gave positive feedback and showed keenness in seeing the film "that is why we have decided to cover many schools in the city."

She noted the biggest challenge of getting the film to schools is a large number of orphans.

"Since we plan to show Basotho the film, there are plans to reach even those who wouldn't be able to pay the entrance fee."

Phokoane said although they chose only five schools, neighbouring schools would also be covered if the halls are big enough.

"The schools screening is meant for people who won't be able to purchase the DVD for M150. And because we are governed and protected by the copyright law, no one can screen the film to masses without our knowledge," she noted.

"We hope to help students and our youth learn their origin and we want to tell the story of Moshoeshoe I to its distinctive origin and this is only our first volume."

Plans were underway to come up with *Moshoeshoe: The Mountain Kingdom* Volume Two.

Rhythm City actor to grace Newtown event Published on July 18, 2013 · 3 Comments



# By Lerato Matheka

MASERU—Rhythm City actor Ivan Chinawa is billed to grace Newtown Jazz & Grill's Tequilla party on July 27 at DLM complex in Khubetsoana.

Although the actor was billed as a special guest, he has indicated after hearing the confirmation of DJ Finzo of Lesedi FM participating actively and live at the venue, he had decided "against my just appearing like a mere TV face, but I will bring along my music equipment – two Djembes and small percussions to co-perform with DJ Finzo. Won't that be just nice?"

Chinawa also promised to bring his personal music project called Umcimbi o'nje.

Besides DJ Finzo, the event also features DJ Counter Force from PC FM, Miss P and Thabo Segonyane.

One of the organisers of the show, Tshedie Mohale said they always host South African celebrities on their big events like the Tequilla night.

"The event is all about socialising and having a good time. It is open to the public," she noted.

"Macks Papo known as Ivan Chinawa will be our special guest along with DJ Finzo and friends and other local celebrities."

Mohale added: "Ivan is not the first celebrity and he is certainly not the last we will be bringing. We realised that Basotho fully support and are familiar with South African celebrities so we are providing a more sociable environment for the locals to get to know their celebrities." The future is in the Stars

Published on July 12, 2013 · No Comments

That is according to Mr Tsepang Hatase—the Accommodation Grading System Coordinator spearheading the star-grading of Lesotho's hospitality sector



## By Tsitsi Matope

MASERU-When Mr Tsepang Hatase joined the Lesotho Tourism Development Corporation (LTDC) in 2009 as an Investment Promotions Officer, all he wanted was to be a very dependable economist.

An economics and statistics graduate, Hatase had stepped into a world that demanded high innovation and limitless exploration.

He had lived and crunched figures during the years he studied for his Bachelor of Arts: Economics and Statistics degree and after his graduation from the National University of Lesotho in 2003.

While the tourism sector also dealt with economics and statistics, this time around, Hatase had to tackle the subjects differently.

He had to use the same figures to come up with strategies that stimulated the sector, as well as promoting and lobbying for the enhancement of tourism products in order to increase investment.

In an interview with *Public Eye*, Hatase—who is the LTDC's Accommodation Grading System Coordinator—on Wednesday this week looked back and narrated the toughest times that led to the successful implementation of the hospitality industry's star-grading initiative.

The southern Africa region harmonised grading system was developed by the Regional Tourism Organisation of Southern Africa (RETOSA), and member-states are expected to use the same set of standards to grade their facilities.

Lesotho becomes the first country to implement the RETOSA-recommended star-grading system, which is to be launched next month.

"This is going to ensure the same level of experience across the SADC (Southern African Development Community) region. For example, a three-star hotel shall be a three-star hotel in all the SADC member-states. Harmonised standards would make it easy for consumers in the travel trade to market the region effectively," Hatase said.

The national roll-out programme, which is highly anticipated to encourage hospitality establishments to provide the desired standards, would follow after the launch.

However, Hatase explained when he joined the LTDC, he was not too sure of what the future held for him.

He came just when the Government and Corporation were beginning a process that would, years later, see a major transformation in the hospitality sector.

"I came in when the corporation was starting the stargrading system project and working on the framework. It was a hectic two-year period. The grading process was long overdue because global hospitality trends demanded we took the grading route for the sector to survive and grow. There was that sense of urgency to have the framework in place, in order to provide guidelines for specific accommodation facilities," Hatase said.

However, the process also came at the backdrop of an accommodation sector that had, for many decades, largely operated without any standard guidelines to follow in its tourist-experience offering.

He said it was worrisome that a significant number of establishment-owners were comfortable with the status quo.

"Situations varied, as seen by other owners who had constructed establishments without paying attention to certain features that would later be important for grading."

This, Hatase said, required upgrading such facilities in order to meet minimum standard requirements.

"The idea was to work towards changing the face of the sector, amid a situation where some owners had become used to operating without full understanding of the differences in accommodation categories and unaware that to be classified as a lodge, for example, the facility had to meet certain minimum requirements. The framework provided the proper classification of categories

and basic requirements, which we needed to lobby the government to use such in licensing procedures," Hatase said

Following an extensive consultative process with various stakeholders, the framework was able to also outline the minimum requirements and grading criteria.

"We devised systems that looked at quality, responsible tourism and accessibility for the disabled and also the type of amenities and quality of other services provided. This was to help determine the rating of the establishments during assessments for stars."

The framework also set the structure of the Lesotho Grading Council—an important body meant to ensure sustainability in grading as well as after the end of the project.

The Council would comprise of an awards committee that would act as a Board and also the final body that awards stars.

It also consists of the grading unit supposed to run daily grading processes under the management of a Grading Coordinator.

"The Grading Coordinator would work closely with the Master Assessor and independent assessors."

Lesotho had its first trained 28 accommodation facility assessors and seven master assessors this year.

However, following his training in tourism management in Belgium and later tourism studies in Malaysia and Singapore in 2009, Hatase, who found himself deep into tourism, became passionate about tackling challenges in the hospitality sector.

He realised despite the sector's huge economic potential, there was a lot of work to be done before the country could start benefitting.

The workload also included mobilising resources to implement the star-grading framework as a starting point to attaining competitiveness in the sector.

"After completing the framework, we were unable to secure adequate funding from the government and development partners to enable implementation. This did not mean the government was not committed, and neither did it mean our potential development partners did not appreciate the urgent need for the system. The timing was just not good for us to get assistance from development partners. Most of them were running other programmes and waiting for their completion before they could take-up other projects," Hatase explained.

After extensive efforts of mobilisation and lobbying by both the Ministry of Tourism, Environment and Culture and the corporation, salvation came from the World Bank last year, through the Private Sector Competitiveness Project (PSCP).

With an injection of \$277 000 (M2.5 million), the funding was enough to kick-start the implementation of the framework.

"The understanding was that the government would then take-over its sustenance beyond the project, which ended last month."

Hatase explained sensitising establishment-owners countrywide was at the heart of the implementation process.

"The readiness of the establishments was critical," he said.

The project stipulated that 12 pilot assessments of accommodation facilities be conducted towards the end of the project.

"This was meant to demonstrate that the systems so far put in place worked, and these included the training of the assessors."

According to Hatase, 12 establishments in Maseru, Butha-Buthe, Leribe and Berea were assessed last month.

"Only one establishment was not gradable; the other eleven were able to attain stars ranging from one to three as the top attainment in the piloted establishments."

He explained the facility which was not gradable had serious issues of management incapacity.

"There were indications that the owner lacked capacity on the basics of operating the facility. With some technical advice, we are optimistic the establishment can be gradable at a very minimal cost," Hatase said, adding despite such glaring incapacity, the facility is getting business.

The corporation, Hatase further said, would soon lobby stakeholders who include the government, to only do business with graded establishments.

He further explained this would contribute towards determining the demand and nature of demand for facilities in various areas.

"According to the RETOSA recommendations, grading should be compulsory by 2016 and we would not like Lesotho's hospitality sector to be found wanting when that time comes."

He also said after the launch of the grading system next month, establishment-owners can request for their facilities to be assessed.

"I see a major shift in Lesotho's hospitality sector by 2016. There is evidence that some establishments are already enthusiastic to change the way they have been doing business. They want employees that are well-trained and are also beginning to see the huge benefits that would come with operating a graded facility. This, indeed, is a new dawn for the hospitality industry and anyone who might wish to relax could just find themselves out of business."

Hatase was born on July 17, 1979. A first child in a family of two, he grew up in Maseru and did his high school education at St Stephen's in the Mohale's Hoek district.

He is married to 'Mamojalefa Hatase and the couple is blessed with a son and a daughter.

#### Historic breakthrough for Lesotho tourism

Published on July 5, 2013 · 1 Comment

...as Sehlabathebe National Park joins exclusive club of iconic heritage sites



#### By Tsitsi Matope

MASERU-The Sehlabathebe National Park in Qacha's Nek has been declared a World Heritage Site by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) in a historic development expected to enhance Lesotho's tourism package.

This is Lesotho's first site to be accorded such a prestigious status, meaning Sehlabathebe joins 980 such celebrated landmarks in the world.

Sehlabathebe's announcement of its new status was made in Cambodia during the 37th session of UNESCO's World Heritage Committee held in Phnom Penh, Cambodia from June 16-27.

The Principal Museum Curator in the Ministry of Environment, Tourism and Culture Mrs Matsosane Molibeli was among Lesotho's representatives at the meeting and on Tuesday this week, told Public Eye that 19 new sites from various countries were added onto the World Heritage Sites list.

"This brought the total to 981 properties on the World Heritage List out of which 759 sites are cultural, 193 natural and 29 mixed. The Sehlabathebe National Park was listed under the mixed-category because it has both natural and cultural elements," Molibeli said.

According to Molibeli, the park was declared a World Heritage Site as an extension of South Africa's uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, which attained the world status in 2000. The two parks will now be known as the Maloti Drakensberg Park.

"We had a tough time compiling information to convince the World Heritage Committee that Sehlabathebe had enough characteristics that warranted the heritage and cultural status. We were strong on the elements of nature and supportive legislation but had to work hard during the session in Cambodia to convince the members that our park also had unique cultural elements. It was important for the evaluators to understand that Sehlabathebe was part of the Maloti Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation Area which is part of the uKhahlamba Drakensberg Park. We argued that its geographic location made Sehlabathebe an extension of uKhahlamba and deserving similar status for the effective and collective management of the Transfrontier conservation area."

The Maloti Drakensberg is an inland mountain range that links the Kingdom of Lesotho and Republic of South Africa along a 300km border on the great escarpment of southern Africa.

The range hosts distinctive yet fragile mountain grasslands and wetland ecosystems, with the 6 500-hectare Sehlabathebe located in Qacha's Nek, which is on the remote eastern escarpment edge of the scenic range.

The Sehlabathebe National Park has exceptional features of distinct and spectacular mountain landscape scenery and a strong sense of wildness and desolation, a concentration of San rock art paintings, the historic cattle post, functional and pristine wetland, the African wild cat, white-tailed rat, the striped weasel, the maloti minnow fish and rainbow trout fish.

The park also hosts 117 bird species consisting of 29 vagrants, 18 visitors and 70 breeding and probable breeding residents. Typical high altitude species endemic to the Maloti Drakensberg region include Drakensburg Siskin, Mountain Pipit and the Orange-breasted Rock-Jumper

Sehlabathebe is also a nesting site to the globally endangered bird species, the Bearded Vulture, and a foraging site for the Cape Vulture, which is also endangered. It is therefore hoped the new world heritage site status will add value to the conservation of these endangered bird species.

With all these characteristics, Molibeli said the World Heritage Committee approved its inclusion on the World Heritage List but with certain conditions which include conducting a rock art research that verifies the first study conducted in 1980.

"The first study recorded 65 rock art sites but does not provide coordinates of the location of the sites. We need to also establish the state of conservation of the rock art and submit a comprehensive report before February 2015. The report should also show how we intend to strengthen protection of the rock art sites."

Molibeli further said after working on acquiring the new status since 2008, Lesotho would press forward to fulfill the new requirements.

"This is a serious matter because we have to work hard or risk being down-listed as a world heritage site in danger. For many years, we have taken a back seat approach and this is a wake-up call for us to appreciate it is now 'business unusual', particularly in the area of managing our heritage sites. There is also need for us to be more focused on what needs to be done and this might also require increasing human capacity."

The new world status, according to Molibeli, demands more collaboration with South Africa to push Sehlabathebe to the same level with uKhahlamba.

On June 11, 2000 the governments of Lesotho and South Africa signed a bilateral Memorandum of Understanding which entailed working closely together in the management of the conservation area.

This followed the Giant's Castle Declaration made on September 14 of 1997 by Lesotho, South Africa, the World Bank and other non-governmental organisations in recognition of the global significant natural and cultural heritage of the Maloti Drakensburg area.

"Management of the park will break or make the park. A lot of groundwork has been done, which includes the establishment of a Bilateral Steering Committee and National Coordination Committee but more still needs to be done in terms of operating the park sustainably. Currently, the park has no manager," said Molibeli.

She further said more contributions are expected from the private sector and local communities to achieve results-orientated management and marketing of products and ensuring successful community-based conservation.

"Our local communities have not been benefitting as much compared to those on the South African side. We expect the situation to soon improve in terms of employmentgeneration and also participation in various cultural activities"

However, discussions on how to effectively manage all government-controlled tourism assets have been going on since 2005.

The government and development partners, such as the World Bank and the International Finance Corporation (IFC) have been working towards structuring Public Private Partnerships (PPPs) for the operation of government-controlled tourism assets, including the Sehlabathebe Heritage Centre.

In an interview on Monday this week, the Investments Promotion Manager at the Lesotho Tourism Development Corporation, Ms Mamello Morojele, said negotiations with a private operator who would manage Sehlabathebe, have been finalised.

A local hospitality businessman, she revealed, has partnered South Africa-based Zambezi-Kanyemba Safaris to run the World Heritage site for five years.

"The intention is for the private operator to run the establishment profitably. Ecotourism trainings for tour guides would be conducted within the Transfrontier Park and this is going to be the only training base of this nature within a conservation area," Morojele said.

She added priority for training and employment would be given to local communities.

This, she explained, means the area would generate more tour guides and promote conservation of the environment among communities while also providing accommodation for tourists.

"We want the local communities to actively participate in the development of the area while we also expect a certain percentage of proceeds generated by the park to go towards community infrastructure development," Morojele said.

The World Bank-funded Private Sector Competitiveness Project (PSCP) has also been working closely with the Ministry of Tourism, Environment and Culture in implementing its tourism strategy development component, which includes among others, Investment Promotion and Marketing.

The PSCP Manager, Mr Chaba Mokuku on Tuesday this week said the strategy looked at ways to improve all government-run tourism assets, including Sehlabathebe Heritage Centre.

According to Mokuku, the effective and sustainable management of tourism assets can be achieved through the creation of an enabling investment climate and transparent regulatory framework that promotes efficiency and predictability.

"It makes sound business sense that the government has partnered with a private operator to manage Sehlabathebe. This should be the case with the rest of the assets because the private sector can help bring the much-needed capital and business expertise, while working with non-governmental organisations can also ensure the provision of fundraising experience and conservation technical know-how," Mokuku said.

Mokuku further explained development partners such as the International Finance Corporation (IFC) of the World Bank Group can also assist with diverse transactionadvice for structuring concessions within protected areas.

He emphasised that making provisions that would see independent operators or investors taking up the management and marketing of sanctuaries on a profitmaking basis, would also immensely benefit local communities and the country.

"While attracting such investment is important, more critical is to ensure Lesotho comes up with a national policy and guidelines for development and management of Public Private Partnership deals for different sectors of the economy," Mokuku said.

Sadon unleashes sizzling debut

Published on June 14, 2013 · No Comments



#### By Lerato Matheka

MASERU—Just as the winter continues to bite, local muso Sibusiso Adontsi has dropped a sizzling album titled Love, Hate and Tears.

The 16-tracked album is the hip hop artiste's first offering after only one mixtape and he didn't disappoint.

According to Sadon, as Adontsi is commonly known in music circles, the album expresses his life challenges and experiences.

"On this project I was inspired by love, hate and tears, and I believe that everyone goes through this experience. That is why I wanted to address the three issues at once," he said.

The album features hits like *Reborn, Believe, Soldier* and *Love*, which are receiving massive airplay on local radio stations.

"I worked with new people in the music industry; people I thought are very gifted, the likes of Leomile Motsetsela, Mpho Sephelane, Fumane Nthebe and Mosili Pebane. They brought an emotional flair to the whole album," Sadon said.

The album also features Isosceles, Chabs Musiq and Alien Heart.

While other Mcees take their time before releasing albums, Sadon told *Public Eye*: "I simply dropped the album because it is a story. I wanted to paint a clear picture with no missing chapters, so dropping an album allowed me to fully express what I was feeling."

He added: "Mixtapes normally use bootlegged background music and if I wanted the market to take me seriously I had to step out and show them I am ready."

Sadon noted the feedback he had received so far following the release of the album was humbling. "My church mates, friends and family are helping with the promotion and the local media loves it, so locally it's doing well."

When other people are inspired by international artistes, Sadon looks up to Isosceles, whom he regards as a true inspiration.

"Isosceles inspired me to do this album after he dropped his project Olive Branch. He is a strong force and inspiration, but mostly he showed he is a true friend," the talented artiste said.

"With this introductory album I want people to remember me as that emcee who always speaks about God in his songs, that emcee who was brave enough to enter the bottomless pits of love, hate and tears and came out with great songs.

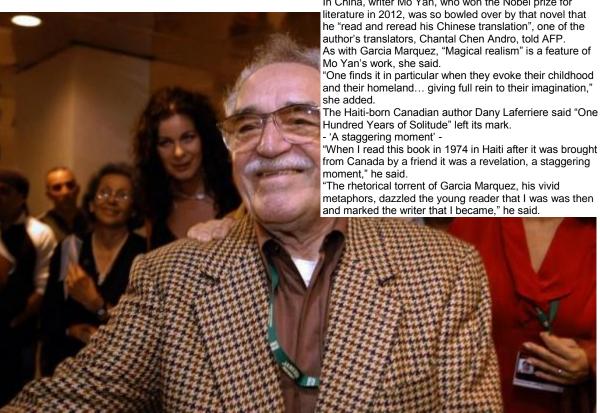
"My favourite song is Dreams Come True featuring Isosceles and produced by Johnson. They should remember me with that and play it at my funeral!" he

Sadon's love of music started during his days at Lesotho High School in early 2000.

In 2008 he featured on a mixtape Hip Hop with other local cats including Poison Foul, Charles Alvin, Nuch, Black Ice, Nash, Alien Heart, Blaq Lloud, Tom kg and Phizzy Khor.

Sadon is signed under a local production company, Magic I Productions.

#### SATURDAY CITIZEN FEATURES



Colombian writer and Nobel Prize for Literature 1982 Gabriel Garcia Marquez attends on December 5, 2006 in Havana the inauguration of the XXVIII New Latin American Cinema festival

Gabriel Garcia Marquez was an enormous influence on a huge number of writers worldwide, in particular through his 1967 novel "One Hundred Years of Solitude".

Hilarious SWA flight attendant makes flying funny

Far beyond South America and the wider Hispanic world, Garcia Marquez's influence was felt by and played out in the work of authors "all over the planet", Claude Durand, the French translator of the landmark novel, told AFP. With its mix of myth, fantasy and family saga, critics have also observed the influence of Garcia Marquez in Salman Rushdie's "Midnight's Children".

Rushdie once told an interviewer that there was "a whole group of writers" including himself and Garcia Marquez 'who, broadly speaking, are thought of as a family", namely a Magical Realism family.

"The thing about Garcia Marquez that I admire, that I think is extraordinary, is that his writing is based on a village view of the world," he added, referring to the imaginary village of Macondo in "One Hundred Years of Solitude". In China, writer Mo Yan, who won the Nobel prize for



(FILE) Former US President Bill Clinton (R) speaks with Colombian writer and 1982 Literature Nobel Prize laureate Gabriel Garcia Marquez during the IV International Congress of the Spanish Language on March 26, 2007 in Cartagena, Colombia

In 2009, Britain's Wasafiri magazine for international contemporary writing asked 25 authors to name the book that had most shaped world literature over the previous 25 years.

years.
"One Hundred Years of Solitude" was the only novel to be picked more than once with three authors citing it.

Chika Unigwe, a Belgium-based Nigerian-born author who won Africa's biggest literary prize in 2012, said Garcia Marquez's masterpiece completely redefined how people looked at reality.

"Its language is powerful; the manner in which it crosses genres is revealing and I cannot think of a single writer friend I know who has not been influenced by Marquez," she said.

Nil Parkes, a British performance poet of Ghanian descent, said: "I think "One Hundred Years of Solitude" taught the West how to read a reality alternative to their own, which in turn opened the gates for other non-Western writers like myself and other writers from Africa and Asia

"Apart from the fact that it's an amazing book, it taught Western readers tolerance for other perspectives," he added.

Sujata Bhatt, an Indian poet who is based in Germany, said the book stood alone.

"I believe that the last book that has had a significant impact on world literature was "One Hundred Years of Solitude"," she said.

In France, the writer had many admirers including the late President Francois Mitterrand who invited him to the Elysee Palace.

"Garcia Marquez showed me the way to narrative freedom. I am an absolute admirer of his work and I have an immense debt to him as to Gunter Grass," French writer Erik Orsenna told AFP.

"When I discovered Garcia Marquez, it was an enormous shock. We were in France and it was the time of the 'nouveau roman (new novel)' and narrative was banned. "And then, suddenly, on the other side of the Atlantic, an author was reinventing quixotic stories, with magnificent characters," he said.



Literature Nobel Prize Colombian Gabriel Garcia Marquez arrives at the University of Guadalajara in Guadalajara, Mexico, on November 23, 2007

Durand said that Garcia Marquez's agent sent him the manuscript for "One Hundred Days of Solitude" before it was published in Spanish.

"He was not known then (but) I understood very quickly, with my wife who is from Cuba, that it was a masterpiece," he said.

And Garcia Marquez's influence even left its mark on Iranian politics.

His 1996 novel "News of a Kidnapping" sold out in Tehran in 2011 when opposition leader Mir Hossein Moussavi said its description of Colombian kidnappings had much in common with his life under house arrest.

"If you want to know about my situation in captivity, read Gabriel Garcia Marquez's "News of a Kidnapping"," he told his daughters during a meeting, resulting in Iranians flocking to book shops.

SA game developers start to receive rock star treatment Arthur Goldstuck



Toxic, the gun-slinging coffee addict bunny who starred in South Africa's first successfully exported computer game 18 years ago, is back.

## Hilarious SWA flight attendant makes flying funny

An updated version of the game has been released as Toxic Bunny HD, for Windows 8 and Windows Phone and will soon be available on the Android platform for Gamestick. A PS Vita version is also in the works. After its release in 1996, the game sold 150 000 units in German, English, French, Dutch and Polish. In South Africa, it briefly became the best-selling game in most stores where it was available.

"There was a lot of hard work, but in the end there was also a lot of luck involved," says Travis Bulford, one of four developers who spent two years creating the game. "We were not the first company to release a computer game in South Africa – we were second by a month or two – although arguably we were the first to do so successfully."



Locally developed game Stasis reached its kickstarter goal It has taken almost two decades for that early success to evolve into a local game development industry. But, suddenly, the game developer rock stars are everywhere. On Kickstarter, the crowd-funding platform for start-ups to get financial backing for their ideas, an adventure game called Stasis has raised \$132 000 (R1.4m) after setting a target of \$100 000 (R1.1m). The funding means Stasis's creator, Johannesburg-based 3D artist Christopher Bischoff, can focus full-time on developing the game. A Cape Town game development studio, Pleasant Company Games, set a more modest target of \$10 000 (R112 000) on Kickstarter, yet raised R303 674 to fund Ancient Terrible Things, a "pulp horror dice game". In the years between Toxic Bunny and Stasis, says Bulford, South Africa has seen a steady increase in the number of games coming out. More important, the local teams are getting recognition on international platforms. "What hasn't happened yet is that same measure of recognition from local platforms. Ultimately it was the support of a local company, Vision Software, which was later bought out by Electronic Arts, that got Toxic Bunny into the international market. We desperately need local business to support the growing games industry." That's one of the missions of a developer community called Make Games SA an association of "professional, indie, hobbyist and student game developers, artists and designers". It aims to "assist game developers in establishing sustainable businesses in South Africa ... and promote proper game development education". Bulford points out that a successful game has the potential to bring millions of dollars to the local economy - "in a

"My feeling is that the South African games development community is on the verge of just such an event. The skills are there; the local community is mature and hungry enough to do the hard work needed. The technical and artistic support structures are in place. We just need a killer local game that gets exceptional international attention," he says.

Some of the most recent South African games success stories include:

#### Desktop Dungeons - QCF

Desktop Dungeons won the excellence in design award at the 13th Independent Game Festival in San Francisco in 2011. The game was made available on Steam, one of the world's largest online gaming communities, with more than 40 million users at the beginning of 2014. Mobile versions of the product are now in development.

#### Bro Force - Free Lives

Bro Force has been "green-lit" for inclusion on the Steam distribution platform. Being green-lit means that Steam's owner, Valve Corporation, works with the developer to bring the game to the Steam marketplace. The demo version of Bro Force, funded from sales of a previous mobile title, has been downloaded more than a million times. The game will be ready to ship in the next few weeks.



# Viscera Cleanup Detail - Runestorm

Viscera Cleanup Detail was created in 10 days as an internal team jam, and the game was greenlit in record time. Since then, another Runestorm game, Rooks Keep, has also been greenlit.

## Pixel Boy - Giant Box Games

Pixel Boy started out as a matric project by programmer Dominic Obojkovits and artist David Nickerson and has been deve-loped to the point where it has been greenlit on Steam. Giant Box Games has also secured a publishing deal with Nintendo to bring the game to the Wii U later this year.



#### Tasty Poison Studio

"Tasty Poison has too many titles to choose just one success story," says Bulford. Their successful games include Pocket RPG, Rhino Raid, Neon Shadow and Dig!. With new PC titles on the way and their own development kits for Sony's PS Vita, it is regarded as one of the most successful game studios in South Africa.

## Bladeslinger - Luma Arcade/Karosene Games

Bladeslinger, developed locally by Luma Arcade, was featured by TouchArcade, which covers iOS gaming, as one of app users' Top Ten Most Anticipated Upcoming Games, and named one of the best games of 2012. "There are in fact many other games and success stories," says Bulford. "These show how diverse our young games development industry is."

Entertainment 4.12.2013 06.45 am

# S. Korea soap operas tap North defectors for drama

South Korean actors from the popular soap opera, "Cheer Up, Mr. Kim," which featured as a major supporting character a young North Korean defector in Seoul, are shown in this KBS photo on November 11, 2013

South Korea's massively popular soap operas are not known for embracing diversity, with gay or disabled characters only recently making inroads. But now a new minority type is emerging – the sympathetic North Korean.



Multimedia



Hilarious SWA flight attendant makes flying funny

Since the end of the 1950-53 war that sealed the division of the Korean peninsula, the perception of North Koreans in the South has been moulded by Cold War politics. Images of life north of the border have largely been limited to South Korean TV news broadcasts showing members of the ruling Kim dynasty, goose-stepping soldiers, or grim-faced Pyongyang news anchors reading out threats to turn the South into a "sea of flames."

But cultural representations of North Koreans have undergone significant change in recent years. One example is the North Korean secret agent — a stock character in South Korean films down the decades and

traditionally played as a soulless, brainwashed villain.

South Korean actors in the popular soap opera, "Cheer Up, Mr. Kim," which features as a major supporting character a young North Korean defector, are shown in this KBS photo on November 11, 2013

Recent movies have sought to paint a more human, even sympathetic profile, portraying spies as conflicted action

heroes whose personal struggles embody a divided Korean peninsula. Actors are vying for such roles, as opposed to fearing the potential impact on their image. The culturally conservative TV industry has been slower to shift its ground, but the search for fresh twists to popular soap opera plot lines has uncovered a rich seam of untapped potential in the North Korean defector community.

"North Koreans, especially defectors who have come to the South, have very dramatic stories to tell — a life in the country like the North, a harrowing journey to escape it and a struggle to survive in a new world," Nam Gunn, a director at SBS, one of the South's three major TV stations, told AFP.

"Naturally, these characters have much to offer TV dramas ... and they are largely uncharted territory," he said. Since the end of the Korean War, about 25,000 North Koreans have escaped and settled in the South. For many freedom has come at a price, as they struggle to survive in a highly-competitive market economy where they are often treated with a mixture of sympathy,

suspicion and condescension.



South Korean actors in the popular soap opera, "Cheer Up, Mr. Kim," which features as a major supporting character a young North Korean defector, are shown in this KBS photo on November 11, 2013

In the past year or so, at least five soap operas have decided the defector experience offers storyline possibilities and have written in roles for North Korean

Nam recently directed a critically-acclaimed two-episode black comedy, featuring a North Korean character — a

former member of Pyongyang's political elite — who suffers a series of mishaps in the South.

The main character of "A Stranger" — aired in early November — eventually tries to sneak back to the North, only to be rejected. Then, on his return to Seoul, he is accused of spying.

Nam cited as one of his inspirations a popular weekly talk show, "On My Way to Meet You," which features 15 female North Korean defectors as regular guests.

The show — launched in 2011 — shows the women recounting, often tearfully, their family, cultural and political lives in North Korea and the challenges of life in the South. A critical and commercial success, it proved that there was considerable viewer interest in defector stories.

State-run KBS, probably the most conservative broadcaster, featured a North Korean defector character in its hugely popular prime-time soap opera "Cheer Up, Mr Kim" last year.

Played by a South Korean actor, the role was of a teenage boy, Ri Chol-Young, who lost most of his family members in a prison camp in the North and fled to Seoul.

Overcoming his initial difficulties, Ri meets neighbours who embrace him as their own and falls in love with a South Korean girl — an unlikely match in reality given the financial insecurity of most defectors in the South.

"I wanted to shed a light on this minority group that is so isolated and discriminated against in our society," Hong Seok-Gu, the producer of the show, told AFP.

"I wanted the audience to realise that North Koreans can be our own neighbours who are actually just like us, our brothers or sisters," Hong said.

Seoul's Unification Ministry, which handles relations with the North, clearly approved and gave the producers a special award in recognition of their efforts to promote inter-Korean understanding.

"It helped the public to view North Korean refugees as their own neighbours, rather than strangers," the award citation said.

The defector issue is a particularly sensitive one, and not all efforts at portraying their experience have been welcomed.

Production of "A Stranger" almost came to a halt after a group of defectors said it made fun of them and reinforced prejudices.
"The show only focused on crimes committed by a few

"The show only focused on crimes committed by a few rogue defectors, while most of us struggle to live a decent, honest life," said Han Chang-Kwon, a defector and activist who led protests against the production in July.

Han said most defectors were too busy trying to survive to watch TV shows.

"We just wish they would show us in a positive light ... because life in the South is already challenging enough," he said.

3.12.2013 10.35 pm

Pussy Riot documentary makes Oscars long list



Writer and director Sebastian Junger attends "Which Way Is The Front Line From Here? The Life and Time of Tim Hetherington" New York Screening at New School's Tischman Auditorium on May 13, 2013 in New York City

A film about jailed Russian punk band Pussy Riot and a documentary about a British war photographer killed in Libya made it onto an Oscar candidate long list published Tuesday.

"Pussy Riot: A Punk Prayer" and "Which Way Is the Front Line from Here? The Life and Time of Tim Hetherington" are among 15 films in the running for the documentary feature Academy Award.

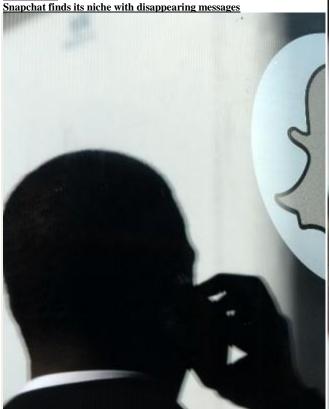
Other candidates — to be cut to five nominees for the Oscars show — include "The Armstrong Lie" about the rise and fall of disgraced cyclist Lance Armstrong, and "20 Feet from Stardom," about the lives of back-up singers. As usual many of the films in the running for Tinseltown's top awards had their premieres at the Sundance Film Festival in January this year.

The Pussy Riot film's co-director Maxim Pozdorovkin said the punk group, whose members were jailed last year for taking part in a "punk prayer" at a Moscow cathedral, is against far more than just President Vladimir Putin. "Their problem is not Putin per se. Putin for them symbolizes an entire system of government, old-fashioned and patriotic... Their target is much larger, they want a feminist revolution in society," he told AFP at Sundance. Photographer Hetherington was himself nominated for an Oscar with his 2010 film "Restrepo," along with co-director Sebastian Junger. Junger made "Which Way Is the Frontline?" after his friend's death covering the 2011 Libya uprising.

Produced by US cable channel HBO, it follows the training and career over a decade of the Briton, from his first warzone images in Liberia to his death on April 20, 2011 at the age of 41, with fellow photographer Chris Hondros. Others on the Oscars documentary long list are: "Blackfish," "The Crash Reel," "The Act of Killing," "Cutie and the Boxer," "Dirty Wars," "First Cousin Once Removed," "God Loves Uganda," "Life According to Sam," "The Square," "Stories We Tell," and "Tim's Vermeer."

The Academy of Motion Picture Arts and Sciences will announce the final shortlists of nominees for the Oscars on January 16. The Oscars show, the climax of Hollywood's annual awards season, is on March 2. © AFP

Digital Life 27.11.2013 04.20 am



The Snapchat logo is seen at the front entrance to the messaging company's new headquarters in California, pictured November 14, 2013

### For 13-year-old Coral Fairchild, Snapchat trumps oldstyle text messaging as the way to socialize with friends in the mobile Internet age.

The northern California girl adds mustaches to faces in pictures or speech bubbles using touch-screen features that allow people to draw on Snapchat images being sent. "You can take a regular selfie and customize it into a princess or a unicorn or whatever you want," she explained. "It's just a more fun way to communicate." But if the message turns out to be too embarrassing, no problem. It will disappear in seconds.

The Southern California-based service has gained notoriety for the app that lets people send smartphone photos or video snippets timed to self-destruct 10 seconds or less after being opened.

Snapchat has rocketed to popularity since the initial app was released in September of 2011. Its growth initially sparked fears that, in a world of selfies, it would provide a false sense of security for teenagers thinking of sexting risque photos.

That concern appears unfounded, according to Matthew Johnson, director of education at Canadian not-for-profit digital literacy organization MediaSmarts.

"There is no evidence that Snapchat is being used any more recklessly than any other message service," Johnson said.



Evan Spiegel of Snapchat attends TechCruch Disrupt SF 2013 at San Francisco Design Center on September 9, in San Francisco

"Young people expect their friends and peers to do the right thing and rely on social pressure when it goes wrong," he continued, citing research done by MediaSmarts.

"In general, their instincts are very good, and they have in many ways a better handle on the social and emotional aspects of these technologies than we tend to think." Conversations based on ephemeral images also reduce the potential for misunderstanding by providing expressions and other visual cues absent in email or basic text messages, according to Johnson.

"Many adults can relate to reading an email and not knowing whether the person who sent it was being angry or sarcastic," he said.
"Move that to text messaging where there is a limit to the

"Move that to text messaging where there is a limit to the number of characters you can use and the back-and-forth is faster, and there is always the possibility of something exploding because someone misunderstands something." Along with providing pictures, typically selfies showing expressions, the mere fact someone is using Snapchat usually sends a signal that they are being playful and not serious, according to Johnson.

"Snapchat is essentially one big Smiley," he said, referring to a well-known happy-face emoticon.

The startup made news when the Wall Street Journal reported it rejected a \$3 billion offer from Facebook, presumably because its founders believed it would be worth more than that.

And other reports said Snapchat delivers some 400 million photos or videos daily from users, although the number is believed to count each time a recipient opens a file, possibly counting some messages more than once. Snapchat skews young due to the fact it is aimed at people who prefer messaging from mobile gadgets. Snapchat chief Evan Spiegel was recently quoted by the Wall Street Journal as saying that 70 percent of Snapchat users are women.

The company's in-house sociology researcher, Nathan Jurgenson, sees the service as a natural place for pictures that won't return to haunt people.

that won't return to hadn't people.

Snapchat allows users to compose picture and text messages which 'self-destruct' some 10 seconds after the recipient opens them

"It's easy to underestimate the significance of injecting more ephemerality into social media," Jurgenson said in a blog post.

"Part of the Snapchat appeal is that it serves as a social cue that something shouldn't be saved, not that it can't," he said.

"Young people say they will use it for something silly or a little embarrassing that they still want to share just with friends."

Jurgenson said the fact that the messages are timed to destruct means people will give them more attention: "When you look fast, you look hard."

Snapchat recently added a "Stories" feature that strings together a series of "snaps" to create a narrative that is available for repeated viewing by recipients for 24 hours.

But even with though the messages disappear, it is quite easy to copy Snapchat messages or pictures before they vanish, and research shows that young people are aware of that, according to Johnson.

Johnson expected the merging of pictures and text to become the new standard in messaging, while Coral Fairchild portrayed Snapchat as the "great next step" in mobile communications.

"I don't Snapchat anyone I don't know; that would be weird," Coral Fairchild said, noting she would make an exception for Harry Styles of mega-popular boy band One Direction.

"He wouldn't get my ugly faces, unless we were best friends."

© AFP

Digital Life 25.11.2013 09.25 pm

Yahoo hires talk show star Katie Couric as news anchor

Journalist Katie Couric speaks at a gala in New York on October 23, 2013

Yahoo announced Monday that US newscaster and talk show star Katie Couric will be joining the Internet firm as it seeks to broaden its reach as a media

company. Couric, 56, will continue to host her daytime talk show "Katie" while being the "face" of Yahoo News and being part of features for the Internet pioneer's home page, according to Yahoo chief executive Marissa Mayer. "Starting in early 2014, Katie will lead a growing team of correspondents at Yahoo News who will cover the world's most interesting stories and newsmakers," Mayer said. "From pivotal coverage of natural disasters and historic elections to the Royal Wedding and the Olympic Games, groundbreaking interviews with heads of state and leading tastemakers, her experience is unmatched." Couric has worked for each of the three major US television networks, becoming a well-known figure on the "Today" show before becoming the main news anchor at CBS, and going on to have her own talk program. Couric will become a "global anchor" on a Yahoo news team that includes well-known names such as Megan Liberman, David Pogue, and Matt Bai.

Yahoo last month hired New York Times reporter Pogue to head a grand expansion of consumer-focused technology news.

The Couric recruitment comes as the faded Internet search star continued a quest to redefine itself as an online venue for "premier digital content."

Couric joined the CBS Evening News in 2006 after 15 years presenting NBC's Today" show. and left CBS in 2011. She has had her own show since 2012 with ABC, which has a news partnership with Yahoo.

Digital Life 15.11.2013 09.15 pm

Facebook: ad policy unchanged, users in control

A girl logs into Facebook on her smartphone in Kuala Lumpur on May 15, 2012.

Facebook said Friday that ads on the social network featuring user endorsements and pictures were nothing new, and that members remain in control of their own content and images.

The company's chief privacy officer Erin Egan, in a blog post responding to complaints about user-picture ads, said the policies of the billion-member social network had not changed but that Facebook needed to explain things better.

The new policy language posted earlier this year by Facebook led to a flurry of protests from privacy activists, who claimed the policy could turn users' data and pictures into advertising, often without their knowledge.

The policy update noted that when a Facebook member clicks on a "like" button, that could be used in advertising, and could feature a picture of that user endorsing a product or service.

Facebook unveiled the changes as part of a settlement of a class action suit over the use of user names and images in so-called "sponsored stories."

But Egan said: "We want you to know that nothing about this update has changed our advertising policies and practices. We heard this question a lot so we want to be clear. The goal of the update was to clarify language, not to change policies or practices."

Egan said that Facebook users can control who sees their "likes" and endorsements through their privacy settings.

"We want to reiterate that you own the content you post on Facebook," she wrote.

"This includes your photos. We don't share your private posts with others without your permission. When you post, you choose how to share and with whom, and we respect your choice. This has long been key to our terms and policies and has not changed as a result of this update." Egan provided an example of a hypothetical user named Krishna who "liked" a merchant called Sweet Stop. "Once he liked it, her friends were eligible to see that 'like' elsewhere on Facebook," she wrote.

"If Krishna only allowed family members to see that he 'liked' Sweet Stop — then only his family members could see this ad paired with the 'like' story. So, at the end of the day, Krishna —and you — have control over the information sharing on this type of ad. You can also control this by opting out of social advertising." In September, several privacy organizations complained in a letter to the Federal Trade Commission that the policy would "dramatically expand the use of personal information for advertising purposes," and could violate a 2011 consent decree with the US consumer protection watchdog.

© AFP

Digital Life 4.10.2013 11.18 am

Five gamers who had too much time (and too little sanity)
Chris Kemp

You probably read that title and felt like you could relate. Maybe you spent 16 hours trying to beat one level of Super Meat Boy, maybe you beat Diablo 3 on Inferno. Let me head that off at the pass – you can't. Put all the time you've ever spent playing games together, and to these people that'll be like a game of *Monopoly*. If anyone thinks they've bested anyone in these stories in sheer time-wasting, we'd love to hear about it in the comment section below.

The WoW Pacifist

Now whenever you're writing a list of people who spent way too much time playing a game, *World of Warcraft* is going to feature.

The MMORPG is notorious for being a soul-sucking destroyer of relationships, diet and personal hygiene. It's also one of those elite few games that have actually killed people.

I made the choice a long time ago to keep the game at arm's length, to never truly try and "get into it" for fear that I too would disappear into the Bermuda Triangle of gaming. Keep in mind this is coming from someone who is baking 600 million cookies per second in <a href="Cookie">Cookie</a> Clicker and has no plans on stopping (please make it stop).

Playing World of Warcraft was essentially about reaching level 80 (and later, level 85), so you could enter the PvP arenas and hardcore dungeons without being immediately destroyed for your insolence. To do this, you have to complete a series of mundane missions where you skin some boars and rabbits or whatever – it's fun, apparently. That didn't work for one dedicated pacifist however, who decided that a life of marauding and murder wasn't for her; like those annoying *Grand Theft Auto* players who stop at red lights and only kill people accidentally.

Going by the appropriate name of Everbloom, she reached level 85 by simply strolling through the forest picking flowers and collecting crap. As you might expect, in-game gardening gives you a fractional amount of experience, so the time it must have taken to do this is inconceivable.

The most incredible thing to me is how mind-numbingly boring it must be to collect in-game flowers for 12 hours a day. I suspect that Everbloom, wherever she might be, has a debilitating addiction to hallucinogenic drugs.

Anyone can load up a game and do something stupid, but doing something bizarre and actually doing well... that's different.

My favourite of his videos, one you might have seen, is a tutorial on how to play Skyrim using only your fists. It isn't just a stupidly funny video (it's hilarious), but also a full-on guide on what skills to level and what items to craft in order to make it an actually viable strategy.

Check it out, but make sure there are no young

children/co-workers/easily offended people around you, as this one is laced with profanity.

## Happily Ever After

Ah yes, Japan. Much like the WoW fanatic, you just can't have a list like this without some crazy Japanese dude. Our particular brand of Japanese insane is a guy who calls himself Sal 9000, who spent so much time playing Love Plus, a dating simulator for the Nintendo DS and second sign of the apocalypse, that he decided to marry one of the characters

Being not a real person the legal contract was a bit of a no-no, but that didn't stop Sal from donning a white tux and having a ceremony, with some close friends watching. Oh, and a few thousand other people watching the live stream

According to Sal, "Nene Anegasaki" is "better than a normal girlfriend" as she "forgives him quickly" for his transgressions. I bet the sex isn't great though.

#### Over 9,000 Perfect Games of Wii Bowling

I may have lied in the title just to use a tired meme, but as of August 2011 one John Bates had 8,850 perfect games on record, so he probably found some time in the last couple of years to get that number up to the realms of my journalistic integrity.

Now people like to joke that *Wii Sports* is for old people and the filthiest of demographics, "casual gamers". Does John Bates break that mould? Not really, the dude will be 87 this year.

Say what you like, he's still better at Wii Bowling than any of us. According to John, it's all about using two hands instead of one. So next time you're at a really lame party or visiting grandma, be sure to bust out your secret weapon.



## The Viking Dragon-Puncher

One of my favourite YouTube channels is that of robbaz, a self-proclaimed Viking with a hilarious accent who plays games in ways you never would have thought of. While his commentary and in-game shenanigans are hilarious, my favourite thing about his videos is that he often spends an awful lot of time planning things through.



#### **Speedrunners**

I've had to lump these all together because honestly, there's not a single speedrun that doesn't require an ungodly amount of time and effort.

I spent a good couple of weeks down the YouTube rabbithole watching countless speedruns; it makes no difference whether you've even played the game before yourself. The amount of planning, perseverance and mind-numbing repetition that goes into shaving off precious seconds is somewhat of an art.

My personal favourites are the *Super Mario 64* speedruns, as they generally rely on pure skill rather than abusing glitches in the game to get ahead faster. The skill is also immediately apparent, even to someone who doesn't know which way to hold a controller. Set aside an hour and a half, and prepare to be amazed.

All contestants must wear headscarves in their daily lives. "We're just trying to show the world that Islam is beautiful," Obabiyi Aishah Ajibola, a 21-year-old contestant from Nigeria, told AFP backstage in the capital, Jakarta, before the final got under way. "We are free and the hijab (Muslim headscarf) is our

"We are free and the hijab (Muslim headscart) is our pride," she said, adding that the pageant was "nothing like Miss World, where women expose their bodies". Organisers say they want to show Muslim women there is an alternative to the idea of beauty put forward by the British-run Miss World pageant, and also want to show that opposition to the event can be expressed nonviolently.

#### http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IXk8eR4FoQw

World 18.9.2013 06.55 pm



Contestants of the Muslimah World pageant take part in a rehearsal for the grand final of the contest in Jakarta on September 18, 2013. The finale of a beauty pageant exclusively for Muslim women will take place in the Indonesian capital Wednesday, in a riposte to the Miss World contest in Bali that has drawn fierce opposition from Islamic radicals.

Muslim women in headscarves and elaborately embroidered dresses took to the stage Wednesday for the finale of an Islamic beauty pageant in Indonesia, a riposte to the Miss World contest that has sparked hardline anger.

The twenty contestants began the Muslimah World show by elegantly descending a flight of stairs into public view — all covered head to toe wearing shimmering and sparkling materials.

While the women, from six countries, will be assessed on their appearance the judges are also looking at piety and Islamic knowledge and skills, such as recitation of the Koran.



Muslimah World pageant contestant Dayangku Rabiatul Adawiyah (L) of Brunei talks to other contestants while they prepare backstage for the grand final of the contest in Jakarta on September 18, 2013. The finale of a beauty pageant exclusively for Muslim women will take place in the Indonesian capital Wednesday, in a riposte to the Miss World contest in Bali that has drawn fierce opposition.

Eka Shanti, who founded the pageant three years ago after losing her job as a TV news anchor for refusing to remove her headscarf, bills the contest as "Islam's answer to Miss World".

"This year we deliberately held our event just before the Miss World final to show that there are alternative role models for Muslim women," she told AFP.

"But it's about more than Miss World. Muslim women are increasingly working in the entertainment industry in a sexually explicit way, and they become role models, which is a concern."

Hosted by Dewi Sandra, an Indonesian actress and pop star who recently hung up her racy dresses for a headscarf, the pageant began with a choral performance of a song about modesty, one the traits judges will be looking for in the winner.

While the contestants looked glamourous, the venue, the exhibition hall of a shopping mall, was a far cry from the likely lavish setting of the Miss World final on Bali. And the pageant, which features Indonesian Islamic designer wear and popular bands, is a starkly different way of protesting Miss World than the approach taken by Islamic radicals.

Thousands have taken to the streets in Indonesia in recent weeks to protest Miss World, denouncing the contest as "pornography" and burning effigies of the organisers. Despite a pledge by organisers to drop the famous bikini round, radical anger was not appeased and the protest movement snowballed.

The government eventually bowed to pressure and ordered the whole three-week pageant be moved to the Hindu-majority island of Bali, where it opened on September 8.



Contestants of the Muslimah World pageant take part in a rehearsal for the grand final of the contest in Jakarta on September 18, 2013. The finale of a beauty pageant

exclusively for Muslim women will take place in the Indonesian capital Wednesday, in a riposte to the Miss World contest in Bali that has drawn fierce opposition from Islamic radicals.

Later rounds and the September 28 final were to be held in and around Jakarta, where there is considerable hardline influence.

More than 500 contestants competed in online rounds to get to the Muslimah World final in Indonesia, one of which involved the contenders comparing stories of how they came to wear the headscarf.

Contestants will retell these stories and answer questions from judges at the final, with the 20 women whittled down before a winner is crowned and awarded 25 million rupiah (\$2,179) and trips to Mecca and India.

"What I will be looking for is strength of personality — someone with a vision for the future, who gives back to their community and shows that beauty is not just about bodies," said Jameyah Sheriff, an education expert from Malaysia who is on the judging panel.

The contest was first held in 2011 under a different name and was only open to Indonesians, Shanti said, but after the media began comparing it to Miss World, it was rebranded as a Muslim alternative to the world-famous pageant.

Because of its popularity, organisers accepted foreign contestants this year, with Iran, Malaysia, Bangladesh, Brunei, Nigeria and Indonesia represented.

# Assange, promising the "full story" behind the whistleblower website.

"The Fifth Estate" by director Bill Condon is based on a book by Assange's once-trusted lieutenant and former WikiLeaks spokesman Daniel Domscheit-Berg, about events leading to the largest secrets leak in American history in 2010.

Its world premiere comes just weeks after soldier Chelsea Manning was sentenced to 35 years in prison for sending 700,000 documents — military war logs and US diplomatic cables — to WikiLeaks, which published them. Manning, who has asked to be recognized as a woman following his trial, was arrested in 2010 while serving as a junior intelligence analyst at a US base near Baghdad. The young soldier has been hailed by supporters as a hero for exposing what they see as US abuses in the wars in Iraq and Afghanistan, but denounced by prosecutors as a traitor who put country and comrades at risk. Assange meanwhile remains holed up at the Ecuador embassy in London after claiming asylum from that country a year ago to avoid extradition to Sweden, where he is wanted for questioning over allegations of sexual assault against two women.

9.2013 05.50 am



This file photo shows a general view of the TIFF schedule for last year's Toronto International Film Festival, on September 5, 2012. North America's largest film festival opens on Thursday with a drama about real life WikiLeaks founder Julian Assange, promising the "full story" behind the whistleblower website.

North America's largest film festival opens Thursday with a drama about real life WikiLeaks founder Julian



This file photo shows director Bill Condon, pictured in Los Angeles, California, on November 14, 2011. A new drama, "The Fifth Estate," directed by Condon, is based on a book by WikiLeaks founder Julian Assange's once-trusted lieutenant and former spokesman Daniel Domscheit-Berg, about events leading to the largest secrets leak in American history in 2010.

"It's not that common for a feature film, particularly a Hollywood feature film, to deal with a story that is so current in the news," commented festival boss Cameron Bailey. "So it's interesting to see."



Canadian director Atom Egoyan, pictured during the Tribeca Film Festival, in New York, on April 28, 2011. At this year's Toronto Film Festival, Egoyan will screen his new movie, "Devil's Knot," about Damien Echols, Jessie Misskelley Jr. and Jason Baldwin, tried and convicted in 1994 of the murders of three boys in West Memphis, Arkansas.

The film festival, which gets underway on September 5 and runs through September 15, will showcase 366 feature films, including 146 world premieres.

Though it does not award a jury prize like at Cannes or Venice, the Toronto film festival has traditionally been a key event for Oscar-conscious studios and distributors, and attracts hundreds of filmmakers and actors to its red carpet.

This year's lineup includes celebrities such as Meryl Streep, Colin Firth, Julia Roberts, Kate Winslet and Jennifer Aniston.

In addition to Condon's latest title, the festival will showcase several stories ripped from the headlines, such as Justin Chadwick's "Mandela: Long Walk to Freedom," starring British actor Idris Elba as the legendary South African freedom fighter and based on his autobiography. "It's far more than any news article or broadcast news could ever give you. It really gives you the feeling of transformation that this man underwent... to become a figure of inspiration for a country that he felt needed it," said Bailey.

"I don't think a simple recounting of the facts of Mandela's life is enough to give you the power of the emotion that this film does," he said. "You can only get that through fiction, whether in books or film."

Canadian filmmaker Atom Egoyan will also screen his "Devil's Knot" about Damien Echols, Jessie Misskelley Jr. and Jason Baldwin. The three men were tried and convicted in 1994 of the murders of three boys in West Memphis, Arkansas. Prosecutors alleged the children were killed as part of a satanic ritual.

But new forensic evidence presented in 2011 led them to reach a deal with prosecutors which allowed them to assert their innocence while acknowledging that prosecutors had enough evidence to convict them. They were released after having spent 18 years in prison. Several documentaries, including Amy Berg's documentary "West of Memphis," which premiered at last year's Toronto film festival, have been made about the case. Egoyan is the first to turn it into a feature film.

Movies 15.8.2013 04.55 pm



Lee Daniels and Professor Henry Louis Gates Jr. at a screening of The Butler on Wednesday in Martha's Vineyard. Spanning more than 50 years of history and a series of presidents, "The Butler" spotlights the US civil rights struggle through the life and career of a White House servant.

Spanning more than 50 years of history and a series of presidents, "The Butler" spotlights the US civil rights struggle through the life and career of a White House servant.

Inspired by Eugene Allen, who held the post for 34 years, the film hits North American theaters Friday and is already seen as a serious contender for the Oscars.

Director Lee Daniels, known for "Precious" and "The Paperboy," used Allen's persona to create a character called Cecil Gaines, played by Forest Whitaker.

Through Gaines, viewers are taken from cotton fields in segregationist Georgia to the election of Barack Obama as America's first black president in 2008.

Allen died in 2010 at the age of 90.

From segregation and the Freedom Riders to Martin Luther King and the Black Panther Party, the film deals with major aspects of the civil rights movement at the risk

of touching on them only superficially.

radical activist and the other enlisting to fight in the Vietnam War.

"There's something that's not said, which is: Why don't these stories get told more?" Whitaker recently told the New York Times.

"Sometimes people are afraid to look at the face of what's going on. So the fact of the matter is that many of these social issues are still being addressed," he added. In the same interview, Winfrey — who last appeared on the big screen in Jonathan Demme's 1998 "Beloved" recalled that actress Viola Davis was taken to task for playing a domestic in "The Help" (2011) by other blacks. "Why do you have to tell that story? Why do we have to keep being maids?" Winfrey said.

"Because it happened, and none of us would be here were it not for them. My mother was a maid, my grandmother was a maid, her mother was a maid.'

Nominated for an Academy Award for best supporting actress in 1986 for "The Color Purple," Winfrey stood her ground vis a vis Daniels, in particular over a scene that follows the assassination of president John F. Kennedy. "He had her being such a bitch that I said, 'Lee, I lived through the assassination," Winfrey told the Times.

"I go: 'You young buck, the assassination did to this country what 9/11 did to this country. The country was in mourning, and so she would have to have some empathy.

Produced by the Weinstein brothers — who walked away with five Oscars for "The Artist — "The Butler" also appears poised to pick up a number of prizes.

The Hollywood rumor mill is already hinting at an Oscar

nomination for either Winfrey or Whitaker, who took home a statuette for his portrayal of dictator Idi Amin in "The Last King of Scotland." "The Butler" also features big names in secondary roles, including Mariah Carey, Lenny Kravitz, Robin Williams, Vanessa Redgrave, John Cusak, Liev Schreiber and Jane Fonda who slips into the role of former first lady Nancy Reagan. © AFP Business 13.11.2013 04.14 pm Small improvement in 2012/13 audits - AG WRITTEN BY DANNY STRONG DIRECTED BY LEE DANIELS

Guests at a screening of The Butler on Wednesday in Martha's Vineyard. Inspired by Eugene Allen, who held the post for 34 years, the film hits North American theaters Friday and is already seen as a serious contender for the Oscars.

Still, the film succeeds in anchoring its message in its solid cast of characters.

There's not only Cecil but also his wife Gloria, personified by talk show queen Oprah Winfrey.

Then there are sons Louis (David Oyelowo) and Charlie (Elijah Kelley). The two are polar opposites, with one a



File picture: Auditor General Terence Nombembe. Picture: Christine Vermooten

There has been a slight improvement in the audit outcomes of national and provincial departments and public entities, outgoing Auditor General Terence Nombembe said on Wednesday.

Releasing his office's 2012/13 Consolidated General Report on National and Provincial Audit Outcomes, he noted that more than a hundred of those audited had achieved a clean audit.

"The audit outcomes are improving and moving in the right direction... there are 105 that have achieved a clean audit."

Nombembe said this translated to a percentage of about 22 percent, compared to last year's 17 percent. This was an indication that things were moving in the right direction, he said.

According to the report, 450 departments and entities were audited. A further 26 had outstanding audits. Nombembe emphasised the need for internal controls within government departments and entities. "When every department and entity has a sustainable system of internal controls there ought not to be a surprise when it comes to the audit outcome, because there's a great correlation between the two."

Asked if there were any departments showing "red lights" in terms of poor audit outcomes, he singled out education, health, and public works, "right across the country".

"For us, this is where the red lights are, [due to] the sheer size of these portfolios.

"If you look at the quantum of the audit outcomes in these departments, this is where the... areas of qualified reports reside."

According to the report, 57 percent of these departments received qualified opinions, compared to 17 percent of other departments.

"All five departments that received a disclaimer of opinion on their financial statements for 2012/13 are in the education, health, and public works sectors."

The report found that fruitless and wasteful spending by departments and entities had soared over the past year. It

defined such spending as "expenditure that was made in vain and that could have been avoided had reasonable care been taken".

In 2011/12, a total of R1.49 billion was deemed fruitless and wasteful; last year (2012/13), this rose to R2.13bn. On the quality of financial statements submitted for audit, the report found that only 195 auditees (43 percent) submitted statements "that did not contain material misstatements".

Overall, there had been no improvement in this regard from the previous year.

Nombembe will complete his term of office at the end of the month. His post will be filled by his deputy Kimi Makwetu.

- Sapa

#### SUNDAY INDEPENDENT FEATURES Business ban looms for Malema October 27 2013 at 02:01pm By LOYISO SIDIMBA

Comment on this story



Reuters

File photo: Economic Freedom Fighters leader Julius Malema sports the party's trademark red beret.

Johannesburg - A total of 41 tenderpreneurs, senior government officials and politicians – including Economic Freedom Fighters leader Julius Malema – criminally charged after the government's intervention in Limpopo face lengthy bans from doing business with the state.

The 41, who have been charged and/or arrested since the intervention in December 2011, also include Malema's cousin Tshepo, former Health and Social Development MEC Miriam Segabutla, former Roads Agency Limpopo boss Mashanoke Mogotlane, former health department chief financial officer Friday Mushwana and businessmen Pieter Erasmus and William Lucas.

In a report, Hawks head Lieutenant-General Anwar Dramat said the national Treasury would seek orders of endorsement in terms of Section 29 of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act to register the affected entities and parties on the Register of Tender Defaulters who were banned from doing business with the state.

Malema's business partner and co-accused in his fraud and corruption trial, Lesiba Gwangwa, is already on the register.

In February, Gwangwa and his company, On-Point Engineering, were barred from doing business with the government and its entities for five years.

The national Treasury cites the reason for Gwangwa and On-Point Engineering's listing as alleged fraud in competing for a multimillion-rand tender.

Gwangwa was listed after Public Protector Thuli Madonsela ordered national Treasury director-general Lungisa Fuzile to bar him and On- Point Engineering from doing business with the government. Malema, Gwangwa, Kagisho Dichabe, Helen Moreroa and Makgetsi Manthatha are accused of fraudulently securing a R52 million Limpopo roads and transport department tender to manage its project management unit in October 2009.

Guilder Investments 59, a 33 percent shareholder in On-Point Engineering, was owned by Malema's Ratanang Family Trust and the Gwangwa Family Trust.

Their trial is set down for November 18 to 29 at Polokwane Magistrate's Court.

Malema is out on R10 000 bail while his co-accused were each released on R40 000 bail.

Dramat also revealed that the Treasury had reports on 27 forensic investigations conducted by SizweNtsalubaGobodo and PricewaterhouseCoopers. The reports had been referred to the police for criminal investigations and 39 cases had been opened.

Of the 39, 13 had been closed because prosecutors were unwilling to pursue them, another 13 were still under investigation and 13 were in court, he said.

The Treasury's forensic reports include two on Edu-Solutions' contracts to supply the Limpopo Education Department with toys for Grade R pupils and assist with its learner attainment strategy.

Other reports relate to theft of laptops in the education department, security contracts and tenders to fix potholes.

Spokesman Jabulani Sikhakhane said the list was not generated by the national Treasury as part of a criminal matter, but that the the names of banned entities and individuals had been sent by the relevant departments to the Treasury.

Public Service and Administration Deputy Minister Ayanda Dlodlo is also blacklisted for VIP Consulting Engineers' bungling of a R5.2m contract to build toilets in Etwatwa, Ekurhuleni.

She is a former VIP director.

Western Cape ANC provincial secretary Songezo Mjongile, his ex-wife Linda and their company, Lidamed, are blacklisted until next October for breach of contract relating to a deal with the province's health department.

By close of business on Friday, the Register of Tender Defaulters contained 890 names.

loyiso.sidimba@inl.co.za Sunday Independent

**MEC vows to act on Malema-linked contract** July 22 2013 at 12:38pm By MOLOKO MOLOTO

Comment on this story



INDEPENDENT NEWSPAPERS

Newly appointed Limpopo Roads and Transport MEC Lehlogonolo Masoga

Related Stories

ANC welcomes new Limpopo leadership

Limpopo - Newly appointed Limpopo Roads and Transport MEC Lehlogonolo Masoga has promised to fully implement Public Protector Thuli Madonsela's recommendations into the fraudulent awarding of a R52 million contract to a company linked to Julius Malema.

He would "act accordingly" to ensure former departmental head Ntau Letebele's role in the awarding of the project management unit contract to On-Point Engineering in 2010 was probed internally, he said.

Former premier Cassel Mathale and his roads and transport MEC, Pitsi Moloto, not only ignored Madonsela's recommendations but also sparked a public outcry when Letebele resigned.

This left him untouchable because he was no longer in the department's employ.

In what was seen as a strategy to protect Letebele from the law or internal probes, the Mathale government immediately redeployed him as chief executive of Great North Transport – a bus firm overseen by the Limpopo Economic Development Department. He was later forced to resign, however, after it emerged his appointment was irregular.

Masoga vowed to follow up on Sunday and possibly sanction Letebele.

"I will request a copy and familiarise myself with it, and be able to act accordingly."

The fact that Letebele was no longer in the employ of the Limpopo government would not make it impossible for action to be taken because "the government has rules and I will act in terms of these".

Should Letebele be charged criminally, he would join Malema and his business associates – Lesiba Gwangwa, Kagisho Dichabe, Selbie Manthatha, his wife Helen and brother Makgetsi – in the dock.

They face charges such as fraud and corruption, or money laundering and racketeering in connection with the On-Point contract.

The former Limpopo ANCYL chairman has denied claims that his elevation was partly meant to rub salt into Malema's wounds because he summarily fired him from the league for challenging his authority.

moloko.moloto@inl.co.za

ANC welcomes new Limpopo leadership
July 20 2013 at 01:04pm
By SAPA

Comment on this story



Independent Newspapers

Limpopo Premier Stan Mathabatha.

Johannesburg - The recent Limpopo cabinet reshuffle indicates that government strives to deliver a people orientated government in the province, the ANC said on Saturday.

The provincial task team (PTT) brought change in certain areas, although there were more challenges that overshadowed their successes to date, the African National Congress in Limpopo said in a statement.

"We are acutely aware that these challenges have led to a loss of confidence in the administration amongst the electorate," said PTT spokeswoman Joyce Matshoge said.

The ANC Youth League said the reshuffle was a necessary step in "re-engineering the ANC's machinery".

"... The youth league believes that the new members of the executive committee understands the task that lies ahead," said spokesman Bandile Masuku.

Newly appointed Limpopo Premier Stanley Mathabatha reshuffled his executive council on Friday, a day after he was sworn in.

Mathabatha succeeded Mathale, who resigned on Monday after being "recalled" by the ANC.

Mathabatha told reporters in Polokwane the new executive would "deliver".

He said the new executive would commit itself to restoring confidence and trust in the provincial government so that national government could consider rescinding the decision to put five departments under administration.

Info Bill now in hands of rural citizens December 8 2011 at 12:17pm By Deon de Lange

Comment on this story



Associated Press

A man shouts his objections during a protest against the Protection of State Information Bill outside Parliament in Cape Town on Saturday 17 September this year.

"Ordinary" citizens – in rural areas, not cities – are to be consulted on the Protection of State Information Bill before the National Council of Provinces (NCOP) accepts or rejects the contested piece of legislation, ANC MP Johannes Tau has said.

The bill entered the next phase of its passage through the parliamentary system on Wednesday when Tau was elected unopposed to chair the ad hoc committee established by the NCOP to deal with the bill.

The committee had set itself a deadline of April to complete its work, but would not be "mechanical" about meeting this deadline, Tau said.

Tau told journalists in Cape Town that the multiparty committee – and the NCOP – would not "rubber-stamp" the bill, but would invite submissions from interested parties during its deliberations.

He also gave the assurance that the committee would hold public hearings on the bill and, if necessary and time allowed, would travel to all nine provinces to hear what "ordinary citizens" thought of it.

"And of course when I say all provinces, I don't mean the big cities. We want to reach out to ordinary citizens," he said.

Asked why urban residents would be sidelined, Tau said the debate about the bill had been dominated by "elites".

"If you look at the nature and level of the debate, it has been highly, highly elite.

"It has been a process that has been de-linked from the ordinary citizen. So that is where, as the NCOP, we would want to push our energy towards – to ensure that our ordinary people on the ground understand what this piece of legislation is all about."

Asked what he understood the bill to be about, Tau said his committee would have to be briefed on the "objectives and everything of the bill".

But his "basic understanding" was that the bill "is in the main to protect state information".

Tau implied that citizens were confused by the public debate about the bill and by the "many different messages" being communicated.

"So it would be in our interests to ensure that whatever product we arrive at as the NCOP is a product that is understood by that ordinary South African," he said.

To fulfil its mandate of representing the interests of provinces, the NCOP would "engage with ordinary citizens on how they feel, how they see the bill, how the bill is going to impact on them and what their views are".

At the end of the NCOP process, the House may concur with the bill as it stands, in which case it would go directly to President Jacob Zuma for his signature, or it may propose amendments before referring it back to the National Assembly.

As the bill is classified as a Section 75 bill – an ordinary bill that does not affect the provinces – the National Assembly may choose to ignore any NCOP amendments and pass it as it stands. Only in the case of a Section 76 bill – an ordinary bill affecting provinces – does the constitution require agreement between the two Houses.

The National Assembly passed the bill in November with 229 votes in favour and 107 against, despite unprecedented unity among opposition parties – and a well-publicised civil society campaign – to oppose it.

The DA said it would push for the "broadest possible public participation in the deliberations on the bill". It called on Tau to "produce a detailed public participation plan" as required by NCOP rules.

Cosatu general secretary Zwelinzima Vavi has said he was told the NCOP process would "open the space" for amendments.

While Cosatu was "unequivocally opposed to acts of espionage or activities that are hostile to the state", it was "concerned that relevant provisions in the bill are capable of such broad interpretation that it would have the effect of imposing criminal responsibility on whistle-blowers who disclose information in the public interest". - Political Bureau

Info Bill concerns legal groups December 4 2011 at 10:46pm

Comment on this story



Reuters

File picture - A demonstrator protests against the passing of the Protection of State Information Bill outside Parliament in Cape Town.

Johannesburg - South Africa's record as a beacon of democracy was being tarnished by the Protection of State

Information Bill (POIB), said legal advocacy bodies in a joint statement on Sunday.

Freedom Under Law and the Bingham Centre for the Rule of Law in London said: "The South African Constitution is a model to the world in its endorsement of the rule of law.

"The core principle is that no one is above the law, as interpreted by a judiciary that is independent of government influence."

The groups said South Africa's Constitution was one of the first to include the right of access to information, in order to promote government accountability.

The recent proposals also threatened an about-turn in South Africa from the rule of law, towards authoritarian attitudes of the past.

"In particular, the POIB will curtail openness of the exercise of public power, make it more difficult to combat corruption, and will reduce governmental accountability and fair sentencing in trials."

Both organisations were also deeply concerned about Cabinet-commissioned research to test whether the courts were pursuing goals such as transformation.

"This kind of inquiry, dressed up as an objective and innocent investigation, is completely unjustified."

In contrast, the South African Communist Party (SACP) said on Sunday "that the intent and scope of the (Information) Bill were absolutely essential for the consolidation and flourishing of our democracy".

The SACP said while the South African National Editors' Forum had "persuaded itself and parts of the public that the Bill is primarily directed at the media", the real challenge facing South Africa was factionalised intelligence and security services embroiled in "palace politics and tender-preneuring rivalries".

"This Bill seeks, quite correctly, to criminalise information peddling, pay-as-you-go information declassification, and the by-passing of what must now become clearly defined procedures for handling sensitive state information," they said. - Sapa

Maths, science pass rates improve January 2 2013 at 07:26pm By SAPA

Comment on this story



Independent Newspapers

Johannesburg - The matric pass rate in South Africa improved in 2012 with 73.9 percent of grade 12 pupils passing their final exams, Basic Education Minister Angie Motshekga said on Wednesday.

"It really gives me great pleasure to announce that the pass rate for grade 12 in 2012 is 73.9 percent," said Motshekga in Johannesburg.

This is an improvement on the 70.2 percent pass rate in 2011.

"Heartiest congratulations to the class of 2012, our born frees."

Of the 623 897 students who wrote the national senior certificate exam, over 136 000 achieved results that qualified them to go to university. Another 135 000 achieved results that qualified them to attend other higher education institutions.

The number of students who passed mathematics rose from 46.3 percent in 2011, to 54 percent in 2012.

In science, 61.3 percent of the students passed, compared to 53.4 who did so in 2011.

Motshekga said in the ten main subjects, excluding languages and other minor subjects, 55 650 distinctions had been achieved.

In the provincial breakdown of marks, Gauteng had the highest pass rate at 83.9 percent, a 2.8 percent increase from its 2011 result.

Motshekga said while teaching was "severely disrupted" in the Northern Cape, camps were set up where students learnt and eventually wrote their exams. Those students that could not write, would have a chance to do so during supplementary exams.

Yet, this province in which many schools were closed for lengthy periods last year due to service delivery protests, in fact recorded the highest improve rate - 5.9 percent - in its passes.

A total of 74.6 percent of Northern Cape matriculants passed compared to 2011's 68.6 percent.

Motshekga said the Eastern Cape and Limpopo were both under national administration and therefore had been given "priority" support.

The Eastern Cape scored a 61.6 percent 2012 pass rate - up from its 2011 58.1 percent equivalant.

A total of 66.9 percent of Limpopo matric students passed - three percent more than in the class of 2011.

The Western Cape was the only province in the country that recorded a decline in its pass rate. There was a .1 percent difference in its 82.8 pass rate in 2012, compared to the 82.9 percent of Western Cape matrics that passed in 2011.

The Free State scored the second largest improvement as its pass rate was 81.1 percent in 2012, compared to 2011's 75.7.

Mpumalanga scored 70 percent in 2012, compared to 64.8 percent in 2011.

KwaZulu-Natal scored 73.1 percent in 2012, compared to 68.1 percent in 2011.

The North West improved from 77.8 percent in 2011 to 79.5 percent this year.

The national 2012 pass rate is a 13.3 percent leap from the 60.6 percent pass rate recorded in 2009.

Motshekga gave out messages to two different groups of the 2012 matriculants.

She said for those who excelled, "the world is your oyster". She encouraged them to make their dreams come true and reminded than that "your country needs you".

For those who did not achieve what they wanted in these exams, Motshekga said that they must "not lose heart". There would be opportunities to improve these results or seek different options for the future.

"This is not the end of the world".

Motshekga acknowledged some of the difficulties her department had faced last year, including the Limpopo textbook scandal and controversy over the stipulated percentages needed to pass a subject.

"2012 was a year and a half. Ask me about it! It was hectic year!"

While it was "indeed very unfortunate" that textbooks for certain grades had not been delivered until late in the year, Motshekga said grade 12 was not affected by this.

She also said teaching in other grades had continued.

Motshekga said people who suggested it was more difficult to pass matric during apartheid were wrong.

"I can assure South Africa it is far more difficult to pass matric now."

Despite these issues, the department was "steadily and carefully taking this Titanic out of its troubled water".

Motshekga said it was all systems go for 2013. "I think we are more ready than we have been before," she said.

She wanted at least a 75 percent matric pass rate in 2013.

"It's cum laude next year." - Sapa Consumption-led growth reaches its limits in Brazil June 10 2012 at 12:39pm By Reuters

Comment on this story



BLOOMBERG NEWS

Traffic is backed up during rush hour on the Avenida 23 de Maio highway in Sao, Paulo, Brazil. Photo: Bloomberg.

For many Brazilian executives, it was a day from hell. Last Friday, Brazil's statistics agency published data showing the economy grew just 0.2 percent from January to March, marking a third consecutive quarter of stagnation – a shock for a country that only recently was booming.

Later in the day, São Paulo was brought to its knees by what city authorities described as its worst-ever traffic jam, with more than 295km of clogged roadways snaking through Brazil's business capital and some furious commuters needing more than four hours to get home.

The symbolism was inescapable: Brazil has done a superb job of building and selling cars in recent years, but failed to build enough roads to accommodate them. Similarly, the economy as a whole has depended too much on stoking consumer demand and not enough on increasing supply by way of investment, resulting in terrible bottlenecks that have left Brazil at a standstill.

Some of Brazil's top business leaders, speaking at a Reuters Latin America Investment Summit, said the demand-led model had probably run its course. They said that for Brazil to break out of its current logjam of annual growth rates below 3 percent, President Dilma Rousseff's government would have to take bolder – and more difficult – steps to improve infrastructure and create a better investment climate.

"The simple stuff has already been done," said Frederico Curado, the chief executive of Embraer, the largest maker of regional jets.

"Credit is not going to stimulate the economy the way it did in recent years. There's no way.

"Consumption alone is not going to get it done. There has to be investment," Curado reasoned.

Here again, the example of cars is instructive. A boom in consumer credit, and the entry of 30 million Brazilians into the middle class over the past decade, has caused vehicle sales to nearly double in the past five years. In São Paulo alone, more than 900 new vehicles were hitting the streets every day.

Yet, so far this year, car and light truck sales are down 4.4 percent compared with the year before. That's despite positive tailwinds such as record-low unemployment, high consumer confidence, and several stimulus programmes passed by Rousseff's government aimed at stimulating vehicle purchases.

The sales slowdown suggests, then, that many Brazilians either cannot afford to take out more loans, or that for logistical reasons, including worsening traffic in several big cities, acquiring a new car just does not make sense.

Executives in other industries cite the same pattern.

"All the factors are there... (but) the extremely positive factors are not being reflected in consumption," Hugo Bethlem, the senior vice-president for corporate relations for Grupo Pão de Açúcar, Brazil's biggest retailer, said at the summit.

He, too, suggested that Brazilian consumers have simply pushed themselves – and the economy – as far as they can

"Are we going to reach a balance between internal savings and consumption? And could that be the factor that's draining resources a bit today? Did people decide to get their lives back in order (by paying debts) so they can get back to consuming?"

A growing body of evidence suggests the answer to all of those questions is "yes".

#### Debts mount

Looking at the economy more broadly, consumer default rates rose in April to their highest level since November 2009, which was the middle of the global crisis. O Estado de S Paulo newspaper said last Sunday that household debts now equalled 42 percent of disposable income, up from about 20 percent in 2005.

Executives at the summit said there was no reason to panic – they did not see a credit bubble waiting to pop – but they agreed something else must take credit's place to drive the economy.

"The growth trend for credit has slowed down. It's absolutely natural, normal and healthy," said Henrique Meirelles, Brazil's central bank president from 2003 to 2010 and now chairman of the holding company that controls JBS, the world's biggest beef producer.

Meirelles said Brazil had already squeezed the benefits out of what he called a "perverse demographic bonus" – millions of young Brazilians finding work in an expanding economy where unemployment has fallen to 6 percent from 13 percent in 2003.

"The next challenge now is productivity," Meirelles said.
"Some say Brazil will never (tackle) that, (but) I think it will.
It's not something that takes place overnight."

Yet the pendulum is swinging in the wrong direction. The data showed spending on capital goods – a measure of investment in technology and equipment to boost productivity – fell 1.8 percent in the first quarter compared with the previous quarter. Brazil's investment rate, now at 18.7 percent of gross domestic product (GDP), is the lowest in the Brics group of emerging markets that includes Russia, India, China and South Africa.

Many economists said the bearish investment trend, more than any other single factor, caused them to slash their growth forecasts after the data were released. The median forecast in a weekly central bank poll released last week saw just 2.72 percent GDP growth for 2012, down from 2.99 percent last week.

If the new consensus forecast is correct, that would mean a repeat performance of Brazil's disappointing 2.7 percent growth last year – a far cry from the torrid 7.5 percent expansion in 2010 that made Brazil a favourite among investors

Senior officials in Rousseff's government, also speaking at the summit, acknowledged the slowdown was sharper than expected but said they were taking necessary steps.

Finance Minister Guido Mantega said struggling industries were Brazil's biggest problem, and blamed that sector's troubles mostly on risk aversion caused by the euro zone crisis.

He expressed confidence that a wave of recent tax incentives, including for the automotive industry, and recent declines in both Brazil's currency and its interest rates would be enough to stimulate consumption and investment.

"Brazil will go back to having greater investment rates," Mantega said. "It's a country that's profitable, solid, stable, and it will attract investment because, starting shortly, when that momentary flight to safety (of foreign capital) stops, then investors will look at opportunities again."

#### Inflation rises

Yet, even if the crisis in Europe is "momentary" – which many doubt – the executives at the summit said bigger changes were probably necessary to get Brazil back to its glory days.

Persistent inflationary pressure resulting from the severe infrastructure bottlenecks would limit the central bank's scope for further rate cuts, they said. And speakers generally downplayed the effect of the currency's 16 percent depreciation against the dollar since March, saying it was helpful but not a game changer.

That is partly because exports play a surprisingly small role in Brazil's economy. Despite its global reputation as a commodities giant, trade actually accounts for just a quarter of GDP, making Brazil the most closed major economy in the western hemisphere, according to the International Monetary Fund.

Consequently, the boost to growth must probably come from within. The idea most frequently cited by executives at the summit was a sweeping reform of Brazil's tax system – which is classified by the World Bank as by far the world's most complex – which would then open up new funds for investment.

But members of Rousseff's economic team have said such a broad tax reform is not politically viable – a reality that executives with connections in Brasilia are fully aware of

"It's a complex process, it's been attempted for years," said Almir Barbassa, the chief financial officer for Petrobras, Brazil's state-run oil giant. "It seems that those that could benefit don't really believe in the idea, while those who would be damaged end up against it, so it's really difficult to push forward."

In the absence of ambitious changes, few executives seemed to expect much improvement in the economy going forward.

Roberto Setubal, the chief executive of Itau Unibanco Holding, Brazil's largest private-sector bank, said Brazil had "the conditions to grow 4 percent a year" but also acknowledged the country was "not as attractive as in other moments".

Gustavo Franco, a former central bank chief who is now the chief executive for Rio Bravo Investimentos, an asset management firm, also cited 4 percent growth as a possible new ceiling.

"This perhaps is the limit," he said. "There is a feeling that the model of growth is not exhausted, but tired." – Reuters

Malema's plans for 2013 December 28 2012 at 10:12am

**Comment on this story** 



An engineering company, in which former ANC Youth League president Julius Malema hold shares through his family trust, cannot apply for state tenders for five years, according to a report. File photo: Reuters.

Johannesburg - Ousted ANC Youth League leader Julius Malema tells The Star about his New Year's Eve plans and what he'll be up to in 2013.

"On New Year's Eve I'll be home. Then on January 1 we'll go to the all-white party – exclusive and private.

"The year 2013 should be a good year. Most issues that confronted us have, in the main, been dealt with in 2012. We all know where we stand now politically, and we know what the future looks like.

"I'm out of the ANC because I've exhausted all the internal processes. I'm an ordinary South African, so people should now be able to convince me where to put my cross in 2014.

"I'm even much happier that I'm not in that space where I'll be going around selling things to people that are not sellable. I want to have that feeling of being canvassed, where politicians knock on my door canvassing me.

"The second one is the case I'm facing – fraud and racketeering. I'm going to appear (in court) in April, so we'll be appealing the venue as it was to be moved to Pretoria.

"I'm doing well with farming – I've got tomato, cabbage, butternut and cattle. So, during harvesting in February, those who want to buy can approach me."

From 'The Spear' to Nkandla December 27 2012 at 01:28pm By STAFF REPORTERS

Comment on this story



INDEPENDENT NEWSPAPERS

#### President Jacob Zuma

Cape Town - The year 2012 has been an interesting year in South African politics:

\* In April, the ANC pulled the plug on motor-mouth Youth League president Julius Malema.

Malema's membership was suspended with immediate effect by the party's national disciplinary committee (NDC). This followed Malema's verbal attack on President Jacob Zuma, a few days earlier, when he called him a dictator and said he was suppressing the league. Malema appealed the decision without success. Two weeks later, his appeal process resulted in his expulsion from the ANC, with immediate effect.

\* President Jacob Zuma's manhood came under the spotlight on May 10, when a painting, The Spear, was exhibited at the Goodman Gallery.

The portrait, by local artist Brett Murray, showed Zuma standing with his genitals exposed. The publication of the image in the City Press provoked an outcry from the ruling party and also fuelled heated debates on social networks. Zuma took the paper and the gallery to court.

\* Renovations to Zuma's private homestead in Nkandla, alleged to have cost more than R200 million of taxpayers' money, made news in South Africa and around the world.



DA leader Helen Zille emerged stronger than ever from the party s federal congress. CAPE ARGUS

DA leader Helen Zille made headlines when she demanded that the government disclose the costs involved and the funder of the renovations, or face court action. She later followed with an "inspection" of Nkandla, with six other senior party members. They were forced to abort their mission a kilometre before they reached their destination, after angry Zuma supporters, many of them armed with traditional weapons, blocked the road.

\* The Western Cape was a hotspot for service delivery protests this year. Violent protests involving burning tyres and stone-throwing, with some threatening to shut down the Cape Town International Airport, wrought havoc across the city. Several people died, including a Golden Arrow driver Sandile Hoko, 67, of Khayelitsha. His bus crashed into four shacks after being stoned by protesters.

The ANCYL also launched its Economic Freedom march and threatened to make the city ungovernable. Premier Helen Zille slammed this as unconstitutional and criminal intimidation and called for the league to apologise. They refused. Zille and Mayor Patricia de Lille later lodged a complaint with the police about the league's threats.

\* Zuma won a second term as party president at the ANC national conference in Mangaung. He was elected to a second term with 2 983 votes to the 991 cast for his challenger, Kgalema Motlanthe. Cyril Ramaphosa was voted in as the new deputy president; a position from which Motlanthe withdrew his nomination.

Gwede Mantashe was voted in as secretary-general, Jessie Duarte as deputy secretary-general, Baleka Mbete as national chairperson and Zweli Mkhize as treasurergeneral.

\* There were several casualties to the national executive committee at Mangaung



The Gupta family should be charged with treason for using Waterkloof Air Force Base, former ANC Youth League president Julius Malema said. File photo: AP

Fikile Mbalula, Tokyo Sexwale, Mathews Phosa, Thandi Modise and Paul Mashatile were all punished for challenging the leadership status quo, and failed to attract enough votes to make the cut for the key decision-making body.

\* The ANC celebrated 100 years. On January 8, tens of thousands of people, including at least 46 heads of state, descended on Mangaung to celebrate the birth of the ANC.

President Jacob Zuma pledged that the ANC would take "urgent and practical" steps to restore its "core values, stamp out factionalism and promote political discipline".

\* DA leader Helen Zille emerged stronger than ever from the party's federal congress.

Re-elected unopposed, Zille will lead the party into the 2014 elections with a secondary leadership tier peppered with those close to her. They include Wilmot James, who was re-elected federal chairman and, among his deputies, national spokesman Mmusi Maimane.

Doubtless Zille will lead the 2014 election campaign aggressively and with seemingly boundless energy. Even if the elections do not bring the DA its touted takeover of Gauteng and the Northern Cape, they will produce polling success, say analysts.

High hopes for the class of 2013 October 28 2013 at 04:48am

Comment on this story



Independent Newspapers

Matric pupils across the country are preparing to write their final exams. File photo: Jason Boud

Johannesburg - South Africa's expectations for the class of 2013 were high as matric exams were set begin, the African National Congress said on Sunday.

"The African National Congress sends its well wishes to the matric class of 2013 as they start their final examinations tomorrow (Monday)," spokesman Jackson Mthembu said in a statement.

"This assessment is a culmination of many years of hard work and dedication by the learners, educators and administrators alike and we wish them all possible success during this important time."

It was hoped that the class of 2013 could emulate and even surpass the achievements of their predecessors, who over the last five years had shown a steady and consistent increase in the matric pass rate.

This culminated in the 75.7 percent pass rate achieved last year.

"The African National Congress calls upon families and communities to unreservedly support our matriculants by providing a conducive environment for them to study and thrive in their quest for academic excellence during this time," Mthembu said.

"This support must further extend to the period following the announcement of the results. Failure to attain desired success should never result in any young person being left behind, dejected or feeling hopeless."

He said the gains made in education were commendable as to date, more than 80 percent of public schools were

no-fee schools, ensuring that steadily and surely the vision of free education was being realised.

"More than seven million children get fed at our schools daily, providing much-needed nutritional sustenance to the most needy in our society," Mthembu said.

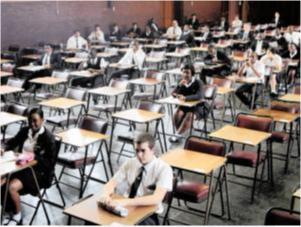
The Commission for Gender Equality (CGE) also wished matrics well for the coming exams on Sunday.

"The CGE calls upon parents, guardians, relatives and community members to give matriculants ample and adequate time and space to prepare and concentrate on their exams," the commission said in a statement.

"It is incumbent on parents, guardians, relatives and community members to be supportive and encourage students to do well in the examinations regardless of their gender, ethnic or social origin, religious belief, sex and sexual orientation."

Commission chairman Mfanozelwe Shozi said: "Hard work, coupled with support and encouragement, will inspire and ensure that students perform exceptionally well." - Sapa

Transparency call in selection of markers
October 24 2013 at 04:19pm
By DEVINA HARIPERSAD | and LAUREN ANTHONY
Comment on this story



Independent Newspapers

Durban - Education stakeholders are questioning the selection process for matric markers, saying they are concerned that the best candidates might have been overlooked.

The KwaZulu-Natal Department of Education announced on Tuesday that it had sent appointment letters to 8 426 markers, 1 610 senior markers, 209 deputy chief markers, 79 chief markers as well as exam assistants for the 27 provincial marking centres.

The department said: "The different layers of markers appointed are to ensure that the quality of marking is maintained. It is also to ensure that marking is conducted in a fair and transparent manner, offering each candidate a fair chance of evaluation and therefore a chance to succeed."

However, complaints were received about teacher union favouritism in the selection process, with seasoned markers being sidelined.

One teacher, who asked not to be named, had been a matric marker for the past two years, but wasn't selected this year.

The Pinetown teacher believed union affiliation determined who was selected

"Before, subject advisers would do the selection, but now it is Sadtu (SA Democratic Teachers Union) members who do the selection," she claimed.

"They choose you according to which union you belong to. It's too political."

However, Sadtu's provincial deputy secretary, Nomarashiya Caluza, said the selection processes were fair

"All unions participate, which means there is transparency in the whole process. The list of markers include teachers of all races, but I don't think you expect to have people who are not necessarily teaching the subject to be selected."

In response to questions about the selection process, Lucky Ditaunyane, the spokesman for Umalusi, the body that sets and monitors standards for general and further education and training in South Africa, said markers were appointed by provincial departments according to specific minimum criteria.

Markers must be qualified to teach the subject, as well as have experience in teaching it at Grade 12 level, he said.

Umalusi approves the marking memo, which is decided upon at national discussions, and monitors the marking process at marking centres.

The spokesman for the provincial education department, Muzi Mahlambi, said the process was fair, but could not explain in detail how the selection process worked.

"We have more than 90 000 educators in the country and 150 000 learners, but only 9 500 markers," he said.

"We can't afford for everyone to be markers; there are thousands of applicants."

Professor Kobus Maree, head of the Education Department at the University of Pretoria, said the selection process needed to be more transparent.

He said there had been enough concerns raised, particularly with regards to markers' competency, that should prompt the department to clarify its processes.

"This concerns children's futures. There is no room for politics or incompetence," he said.

"...It's time the Department of Education took the responsibility to investigate and tell us what is happening. There is a veil of secrecy hanging over the selection process."

Maree said he understood the markers' demographic should reflect that of the population, but there were enough highly intelligent, highly skilled people to make up the numbers.

"The minister must publish the rules and regulations that govern the selection of matric markers in the newspapers.

"We need a public pronouncement to say 'this is what's happening'."

The KZN chief executive of the National Professional Teachers' Organisation of South Africa, Anthony Pierce,

said the selection process started early in the year when an invitation was extended to teachers in the higher grades to apply.

He did not feel there was a racial imbalance, but that there were flaws

"The process isn't rigorous and is highly contested. We've had many disgruntled members saying the process is flawed."

He said a selection team made up of department officials, district officials and union representatives would select candidates

However, bigger unions had more team members.

"These members are considered above quality or competency," he said.

Pierce conceded that bigger unions should get more representation, but said there needed to be a chance for discussion on who made up the selection team itself.

National Teachers' Union deputy president Allen Thompson said the union had a say in the selection process, but only as observers.

He said they were in a consultation process at the moment, requesting that the selection process be reviewed.

"The union has received complaints about the selection process based on union affiliation and teachers in different grades being selected. Complaints were that teachers who belonged to certain unions were being sidelined, but we believe there is no grounds for this complaint, as the application forms for marking did not ask the applicant which union they belonged to," he said.

"Not everyone is satisfied with the selection process, but this is expected, as being selected is beneficial because it means extra income for the teacher, and it improves you as you tend to know what is expected for exams, and can teach that in class the following year."

Unfortunately, not everyone could be selected and there was tension because of this, Thompson said.

"But all teachers, regardless of race, gender and the union they belong to, should be given a chance to mark, as this will help them improve their teaching in the classroom in the build-up to exams."

In Defence of Paintings March 19 2012 at 12:13pm By Mary Corrigall

Comment on this story



It's called A Case for Painting (2011) and features a young woman about to pry open a case that presumably contains tubes of paint. Colour has yet to be unleashed, so the canvas is black with a few white brushstrokes alluding to it being an unfinished work, a hesitant gesture even. The title of Claire Gavronsky's irreverent painting is a play on words that evokes the historical baggage that accompanies painting but also the question that every artist is forced to ask before they pick up a paint brush: do I need to say this with paint?

With such an array of mediums and forms now viewed as legitimate conduits for expression, it seems artists cannot simply acquiesce to an intuitive desire to work with this medium without being able to justify it conceptually. In Immaterial Matters, all the painted works make wry reference to the history of Western art, which immediately substantiates the artist's use of paint. Rosenclaire – an artistic duo made up of Rose Shakinovsky and Claire Gavronsky – are females so using this medium has gendered significance too: it was once the preserve of men.

L'avanguardia non si arrende mai (the avante garde never gives up) contains the figure of a young girl in period dress which suggests she hails from an historical work.

A faint dark line over her upper lip, suggesting a moustache, recalls Salvador Dali's signature feature. Once again the canvas is black, disconnecting the subject from its historical context. It appears like a blackboard, and with white writing it implies the work is part of a "lesson". This type of painting is thus instructive about the past, a dialogue, a response. Because of this its existence does not require "a defence."

The title of their exhibition, Immaterial Matters, is another irreverent double play on words, which implies that the materials of a work shouldn't carry such significance, historical or ideological, but also it advances the idea that that which is seen and is tangible is less significant than what is unspoken, invisible. In this way they point to the process that occurs when the viewer looks at an art work and interprets meaning.



Reader Orientation (2010), an installation which presents a miniature plastic cow staring at a large dice, hints at the difficulties in this process – if you view the cow as the viewer and the dice as the work of art. Even if both are deemed to be the latter, the sense of interchangeability remains pertinent to the process of viewing. A reverse process occurs in Hermann Niebuhr's exhibition City Chromatic, an exhibition where the artist seems only interested in the visible. Every painting is an attempt to describe Joburg's city skyline. Niebuhr approaches his muse from almost every angle – a number of titles fix the position of his gaze.

The thoroughness not only of his representational renderings, which evoke a realist mode, but the angles and times of day, seasons, at which he chooses to revisit his subject, hint at a scientific, rationalist approach. Like studying a specimen under a variety of conditions.

Niebuhr is in fact mapping the surface of Joburg. The "surface" here refers to the uppermost layer, the glitzy, mirrored buildings and structures that give Joburg its identifiable (physical) character. Inhabitants do not get to experience this side of the city, except from viewing aerial photographs or the like that might appear in postcards promulgating an idealised view of the city. It is this view that suggests the city's potential – its status is embodied in the tall buildings.

The question must be: why has Niebuhr painted the city from this vantage point when there is an excess of imagery offering this point of view? Of course, this is a reminder that this city has become a fetish object. The most significant reason for Niebuhr's study – it is too detailed and thorough to be anything but – is that his obsessive interest in the "surface" of the city can only be enacted through a drawn-out and meticulous process of representation. Painting also presents the room to challenge the very surface that holds his attention. A number of his paintings suggest a desire to destroy and erode it – interestingly, Rosenclaire's art-making begins at a point in which they take for granted this has already occurred.

As such, while Niebuhr presents these picturesque cityscapes, the dripped painting technique which he applies in a number of works implies a degradation of the surface, not just the painterly one but the architectural structure of the city. In some paintings, the dripped effect recalls rust – associated with dilapidation.

Because Niebuhr's gaze is focused above ground level, he presents an unoccupied city. In this way he sidesteps the discourses around the inner city that have held the attention of other documenters – Guy Tillim, David Goldblatt and Andrew Tshanbangu. Nevertheless, the

persistent degradation speaks not only to the idea that the inner city has been (and is going) through a cycle of decline, but implies a desire to peel back and see what lies beneath the surface. The sociopolitical aspect has been obviated in favour of a study of form, reaching towards a deconstruction of the physical character of the city.

Works like Colour Grid, which reduce the shapes of buildings to abstract patterns, is evidence of this, but Niebuhr is unwilling to move fully into abstraction. He is far too enthralled by his muse; his larger canvases are devoted to creating an immersive experience for viewers, creating the illusion that this view of the city from above is always within our reach.

There is no irony present in Niebuhr's study. His selfconsciousness is related to form. This is in contrast to Rosenclaire's attitude towards painting, which they see more as an act of erasure than construction - seeing as everything has been painted before.

Ilmmaterial Matters shows at the Goodman Gallery in Joburg until March 24. City Chromatic is showing at the Everard Read Gallery in Joburg until April 5.

An unsteady flame of inner fire October 20 2011 at 03:10pm By Arja Salafranca

Comment on this story



Ingrid Jonker
Black Butterflies
Director: Paula van der Oest

There's tragedy in any suicide; and tragedy when the person who takes their own life is a creative person is that their voice is stilled, there will be no more work from them.

There's tragedy too in that the memory of such a life is blighted by the violent, sad fact of their premature death. Recall the works and life of Ingrid Jonker, and immediately there's the memory of the fact that she walked into the sea at the age of 31, leaving a daughter, a life, a foam of chaos behind her, including a litter of broken relationships. She also left a body of work that has been lauded and applauded both in her lifetime and in the years since.

But the fact of the nature of her death remains, that she chose to take her life. You cannot get away from that. Black Butterflies, the first full-length film to feature the poet, trembles with this knowledge. Jonker's personality, in all its tumultuousness, ensures a headlong plunge into what almost seems inevitable, we know what's coming,

we're pulled along, compelled, even horrified at times. The ending's clear, inevitable.



Carice van Houten as Ingrid Jonker and Liam Cunningham as Jack Cope in Black Butterflies.

Dutch actress Carice van Houten takes the role of the doomed poet, playing the part with an intensity that would seem to echo the original Jonker.

Emotions play violently across Van Houten's face: Jonker was a woman who was deeply psychologically troubled, a woman who drew people to her, and yet her intensity burned through the relationships, ending so many. Van Houten's Jonker is a likeable woman, despite the violence of inner demons. The mercurial nature of the poet shines through Van Houten's features.

The film is directed by Dutch director Paula van der Oest, and the cast is a mix of Dutch actors, Irish actor Liam Cunningham and a sprinkling of local actors.

Cape Town, where Jonker lived, is the brilliantly bright background of much of this film, as much a character as Jonker and those who surrounded her.

It is a surprise to hear the actors speaking English. After all, Jonker was an Afrikaans poet, and when you read that her grasp of English was sometimes uncertain, it is disconcerting to hear the Van Houten's Dutch-accented English. You can harp on this point – as some have – or accept it, which you must to appreciate this film.

The story unfolds like a tragedy: there's the early death of her mother, which saw Ingrid and her sister being forced to live with their father, Abraham Jonker (Rutger Hauer), a censor for the National Party government; the early marriage to a man Ingrid would later divorce, and which would produce a child, Simone; and Ingrid's desperate need for approval and validation from her father despite the repeated clashes with his ideology.



In one of the more heartbreaking scenes Abraham tears up her poetry when she shows it to him. Yet the need for his approval remains.

The film opens with Ingrid's near drowing; she's saved by a man whom she discovers is Jack Cope, the writer and poet.

She begins an affair with Cope (Liam Cunningham), then moves in with him, and moves among his circle of friends, including Uys Krige (local actor Graham Clarke), and Andre Brink. Ingrid's tempestuousness colours and tears apart her relationship with Cope: we watch as her increasingly fragile and mercurial nature come to the fore, and the violence of that splits them apart.

Jonker flirts with Brink, and then grows angry when Cope feels threatened by this.

Within minutes the force and contradiction of her personality are displayed. Cope looks on, and can only react against Jonker's irrationality. Once more it's doomed – we feel, again, that there can be no happy ending. Also surprisingly, Black Butterflies does not reflect the relationship between writer Brink and Jonker. In reality the two had as tempestuous relationship as she had with Cope. Brink wrote movingly about this in his autobiography, A Fork in the Road, and one wonders at this ommission.



Those unfamiliar with Jonker's biography will not miss this, but with a more detailed reading of her life, the ommision is not only surprising, but glaringly obvious and doesn't seem to make sense at all.

In addition, the fact remains that it is yet another example of the seam of madness and emotional upheaval that marked her life and journey through it.

Again and again the mad force of her personlity, the immaturity and neediness, threatens and tears holes in her relationships and life. She loses her job as a secretary, has no money, briefly stays with her father, lies to Cope who comes to fetch her, and she then increasingly makes her home in seedy hotels.

Despair overwhelm her, she is hospitalised, but the mental remedies of the 1960s is no cure at all.

Through it all, Jonker's blonde daughter remains with her, an anchor to life.

Black Butterflies is compellingly told. Van Houten holds the movie through her potrayal of the poet. Jonker emerges as both an extremely difficult woman to know, yet one who, time and again, drew people to her through her genius, the bright unsteady flame of her inner fire, and the loyalty she inspired despite the intense highs and lows of her personality.



In one scene, when Jonker is recovering in a mental home, we watch as Cope and Krige sort through her papers, ordering her poems, creating a book which later became Rook en oker (Smoke and Ochre), both men so dedicated to her talent, determined on her publication.

The film is shot through with lines of Jonker's poetry, which seems a fitting showcase to her talent.

It's beautifully filmed, from beach scenes, to a hotel scene in which rain falls and Jonker succumbs to the demons within.

We also watch as Jonker scribbles lines of poetry on the wall of her bedroom, hearing that: "The illusion that life was beautiful" or "I repeat you/without beginning or end/repeat your body", along with the lines of her famous Little Grain of Sand, and The child who was shot dead by soldiers in Nyanga, which was read by Nelson Mandela at his inaguration as president in 1994.

The period details are faultness, with 1960s Cape Town captured in many scenes, from the bourgeois respectability of Abraham Jonker's home, to the dilapidated hotel rooms, contrasted with the brightness of the beaches.

Black Butterflies is a beautiful portrait of an artist felled in her prime by her own psychological demons, flailing powerless against the noise within, a noise that produced violently beautiful poetry and, chillingly, also served as knife and ending.

#### How to fix SA's education

### Comment on this story



Motshwari Mofokeng

03/01/2012 Estatic matric students from Partkown Girls High School celebrate after receiving their results for the 2012 Matric exams. Picture: Motshwari Mofokeng

THE National Senior Certificate national pass rate of 73.9 percent is the highest since 1994 and gives cause for celebration. A long-term review gives perspective: from a start of 58 percent in 1994, the pass rate improved steadily until 2003, when it peaked at 73.3 percent, before five "lean years" of gradual decline until a low of 60.2 percent in 2008. From 2009, we have improved annually. The national trend is one of overall improvement over the past 19 years. It is this progression over time that is the surest indicator of some of the sustained progress being made

An analysis of the trends for each of the provinces for the past 15 years shows the same pattern of gradual improvement, with some interesting provincial variations.

Gauteng has over this period gradually improved its performance relative to the national average – from its lowest base of 52 percent in 1997, when it was only 4 percent above the national average, to 84 percent in 2012 – 10 percent above the national average.

The Western Cape, with 74 percent in 1997, had a 27 percent lead on the national average, but is now only 13 percent ahead of the pack, which is catching up.

But the historical and current contexts of the provinces differ markedly. The Western Cape and Gauteng are both relatively well-resourced provinces. Limpopo, a poorly resourced province, has, despite several troughs, gradually improved its performance from 32 percent in 1997 to 67 percent in 2012 – an increase of 35 percent over 17 years.

Other provinces show similar trends, particularly the Free State and the North West, which have improved steadily, from 43 percent and 50 percent respectively in 1997 to both now achieving in the region of an 80 percent pass rate.

Professor Sizwe Mabizela, the chairman of Umalusi, said in December that, while our "education system still fails dismally to free the full potential of the majority of our young people", we need to interpret our progress in an understanding of the current state of education in South Africa and "resist the temptation of joining the chorus of the cynics, the pessimists and the doomsayers who would have us believe that ours is a lost cause".

But what are the challenges? In summary, there are five priority challenges. First, we must improve the pass rates in those provinces which have the greatest number of candidates: KwaZulu-Natal offers a massive 25 percent of the NSC candidates nationally. Together with the Eastern Cape and Limpopo, it accounts for 53 percent of all NSC candidates. There is room for improvement in both the Eastern Cape and Limpopo, while KZN performs comparatively well.

KZN's steady improvement from 54 percent in 1997 to 73 percent in 2012 is significant in other respects. Despite being one of the poorest provinces with high infrastructure backlogs, it has the highest retention rate in the country of pupils between Grade 10 and Grade 12. It retains more than 60 percent of its pupils between these grades, while the national retention rate between Grade 10 and Grade 12 is about 50 percent.

We must retain more of our pupils to Grade 12 and cut the human cost of the large numbers who leave with no formal school-leaving certificate – particularly male pupils. My calculation is that, for the Grade 12 classes of each of the years of 2008, 2009 and 2010, only 52 percent of the pupils in Grade 10 (two years before Grade 12) wrote matric. In 2011, this dropped to 50 percent, and in 2012 only 49 percent of the Grade 10 class of 2010 wrote matric.

On the basis of the 2012 rate, we can estimate that only 36 percent of the 2010 Grade 10s passed the NSC in 2012. This ratio is a rough measure – there are a large number of "repeaters" in Grade 10 (in seven provinces this is the largest of the 12 grades). But it does give us an indication of how many young people who register in Grade 10 eventually write matric.

The Department of Basic Education should publish annually, with the NSC results, for each province and nationally, the retention rate between Grade 10 and Grade 12 for that year's NSC cohort.

Each province (and every school) should account for both retention and pass rate.

There are marked differences in retention between provinces. Some showing improvement in pass rates over time have retention rates well below the national average. If we improve retention, we might have a much larger number of candidates, but a lower pass rate. This requires a shift from our narrow focus on the pass rate alone to holding both pass rates and retention rates in balance.

Would a 55 percent pass rate with a 75 percent retention rate be better than a 75 percent pass rate and a 55 percent retention rate? This speaks to our values: retaining more pupils to a credible exit point increases skills levels for economic development, and it would also increase the number of young people with a sense of belonging, participation and inclusion, which is surely a pressing social goal.

Perhaps we should fix the pass rate at a target of 75 percent, and emphasise annually improving targets for reducing dropout, while the pass rate remains constant.

Increasing the retention rate is therefore the second challenge. This requires building quality foundations from the early years. Repetition is linked to dropout. Sarah Gilbert Meny has shown that 52 percent of the pupils in Grades 11 to 12 have repeated a grade, and 9 percent have repeated three times or more.

This is directly related to the third challenge, to improve performance from the early years. The 2012 Annual National Assessment (ANA) for Grade 4 reflects a 37 percent national average for mathematics, and 43 percent for home language. This poor performance lays the basis for the large dropout rate six to seven years later and the low levels at which people are passing matric. Improving quality in the foundation will improve retention, and improve the quality of passes at NSC.

The fourth challenge is therefore to increase the number of students who are passing at higher levels. In many subjects, marks "bunch" below 50 percent in the NSC.

In 2012, only 36 percent of the candidates who wrote maths passed with a mark above 40 percent. We do not know how many candidates passed at the higher intervals, but there are declining single-digit pass rates above 50 percent in maths.

We need reasonable proportions of good and excellent marks, and more candidates passing at higher levels. The report on the 2013 NSC should provide information on the proportion of pupils passing at intervals of between 40 and 90 percent for all subjects. The recently announced ministerial commission will provide this information for the previous years of the NSC, so that trends can be assessed over time.

The fifth and fundamental challenge is obscured in the "averages" of the NSC pass rate and ANA performance. There is a chasm of inequality in education, with poor schools concentrated well below the mean, dragging overall performance down. In 2011, 74 percent of schools situated in the wealthiest 20 percent of communities nationally achieved an 80 to 100 percent pass rate, while only 30 percent of schools serving the poorest 60 percent of communities achieved this.

We cannot continue to fail our poorest pupils and communities. In the 2012 ANA, 42 percent of the Western Cape's 84 000 Grade 4 pupils achieved "adequate and higher" levels of performance in maths.

This is overshadowed by the 118 000 Grade 4 pupils in Limpopo who only achieved 14 percent at this level. If we want to improve overall performance, we must significantly improve education for the poorest of our children, who are the majority.

The five challenges are clear: improve success from primary school; reduce the dropout rate in Grades 10 to 12; increase the proportion of pupils who are passing at higher levels; focus on the provinces which have inherited the greatest portion of the apartheid devastation, and where the largest numbers of the poorest children live; and reduce the huge inequalities that are pervasive across the system.

An education system in a just society has a responsibility to deliver an improving quality of learning, but this is more than merely a quest for "higher marks". It also means a quality of caring and citizen-building in school and community life, and of nourishing responsibility, empathy and creativity. And it means closing the gap between pupils doing well and those doing badly.

Equity is a key feature of productive and happy societies. To achieve it requires both sound policies and effective implementation. The Department of Basic Education has diagnosed these and other challenges, and has a clear and credible plan to address them in its Action Plan to 2014. The National Development Plan reinforces this. Achieving these goals requires strong educational institutions.

The first line of responsibility is with the department and its political and executive leadership. But it is also through citizens actively supporting teachers and schools, and

working in partnership with provincial and national leaders, that implementation can succeed, and we can progressively make access to a quality public education for all a reality. To give this support is our individual and collective responsibility as parents and citizens, as is our parallel responsibility to hold officials accountable, to ensure fairness and that promises are kept.

n Metcalfe is an education specialist at the Development Bank of Southern Africa and a visiting professor at Wits and the University of Johannesburg.

Families come out of the closet July 11 2011 at 09:44am By Lena Corner



REUTERS

Elton John and his partner, David Furnish, introduced their surrogate son Zachary on the front of OK! magazine. Picture: Lucas Jackson/Reuters| Below: Glee s Jane Lynch, below, is stepmother to her partner s daughters.

Over the past 50 years, we have seen a complete shift in what the model of the family looks like, and it appears that the rise of the gay family is a big part of the next chapter.

Eleven years ago, when Karen decided to try for a baby with her long-term partner, Erika, she had no idea how to go about it.

She felt uncomfortable disclosing her lesbian relationship to her doctor and wasn't keen on using a sperm bank because she felt strongly that she wanted her child to know who its father was.

In the end, by chance, a friend offered to donate sperm.

"When I found out I was pregnant, I was over the moon," she says. "But back then, there wasn't any information for gay and lesbian couples so throughout the whole thing we felt isolated and totally unaware of any legal issues, which could easily have arisen."

Barrie and Tony Drewitt-Barlow made legal history in 1999 when they won a battle to bring their twins, conceived via donor eggs and carried to term by a surrogate mother, home to Britain after they were born in America. The twins became the first British children to be registered as having two fathers and no mother.



Actress Jane Lynch of the television show "Glee" arrives at the 67th annual Golden Globe Awards in Beverly Hills, California.

### REUTERS

Nowadays things are a bit different. We've got Elton John and David Furnish introducing their surrogate son, Zachary, on the front of OK! magazine. In February, we had Sex and the City's Cynthia Nixon introducing the world to the baby boy she had with her girlfriend, Christine Marinoni.

Glee star Jane Lynch is stepmother to two daughters from the previous relationship of her partner, Dr Lara Embry. And there's even a gay adoption plot brewing inEastEnders.

It's now so commonplace, a new bi-monthly glossy entitled Pink Parenting is due to hit the newsstands next month in the UK.

The magazine is the creation of long-term gay couple Jeff Crockett and Giorgiou Severi, who also publish Europe's leading fertility magazine, Fertility Road.

The first issue features an interview with Ricky Martin talking about his twin boys, Valentino and Matteo, recipes from children's food expert Annabel Karmel, plus everything same-sex couples need to know about adoption, fostering and surrogacy.



TV and movie star Cynthia Nixon, right, and her partner, Christine Marinoni, have been raising their family out of the spotlight for years.

Over the past 50 years, we have seen a complete shift in what the model of the family looks like and it appears the rise of the gay family is a big part of the next chapter.

INLSA

According to the British Department of Education, 120 same-sex couples adopted in 2010.

Crockett and Severi cite figures from the 2000 American census, which revealed that 39 percent of same-sex couples in the US between the ages of 22 and 55 were raising children.

"Gay surrogacy or adoption is becoming a common occurrence; we are used to the idea. The world is ready for it now," Severi says.

Karen and Erika agree. After their less-than-happy experience 11 years ago, they decided to set up a website, Pride Angel, which is now the world's leading connection site putting lesbian and gay couples together with donors.

It provides masses of information, including how to draw up the all-important donor or co-parenting agreements that outline financial and legal obligations. That Pride Angel now has more than 7 000 members is testament to how big this issue has become.

When Oskana decided to have a baby with her long-term partner, Stacey, they too were lucky enough to have a friend volunteer to donate sperm. They now have a two-year-old and a four-year-old, both of whom were carried by Oskana but adopted by Stacey within weeks of the birth. Now both mothers have names on the birth certificate and equal parenting rights.

"We sat down with the donor and worked everything out," Oskana says. "He wanted to have visibility but in a sort of 'distant uncle' kind of way. We agreed he would have no rights and no responsibilities and that he wouldn't be morally or financially obligated to do anything."

Stuart and Mark, who live near Manchester and have been in a civil partnership since 2008, took the adoption route. This month, the papers finally came through saying that the two young boys placed with them since last May were officially theirs.

Even though it's now enshrined in law, in the British Adoption and Children Act 2002, that same-sex couples get exactly the same rights as heterosexual couples when it comes to adoption, Stuart says he definitely felt they were treated differently because they were gay.

"We went for an open evening at Stockport Council and noticed that our names were highlighted in red on the attendance register but nobody else's was," Stuart says. "But once we found the right agency – After Adoption – it was superb. They were very supportive, really thorough, and it really wasn't an issue that we were gay."

When London partners Scott and Greg decided to adopt, they put in an enormous amount of time researching which London council would be the most gay-friendly and discovered that many had never even had a same-sex couple on their books. They now have a two-year-old and a seven-year-old and Greg is an adoption champion for the British Association for Adoption and Fostering (BAAF).

"Often the assumption is that I am one half of a straight couple," Scott says. "People say things like 'Oh, I guess his mother does his hair,' and so I find myself constantly having to tell people about our situation. It's like having to come out over and over again."

There are other concerns, too. What happens if you fall out with your donor? Or if you split up? And how and when do you tell your child where he or she really came from?

None of these children has yet gone through secondary school, either, so it's impossible to say what issues that's going to bring, but many parents are concerned.

"We are worried about the boys being bullied and it probably will be an issue later in life," Stuart says, "but we do think kids will find a reason to bully someone whether it's about having gay parents or not.

"So it's going to be all about how we prepare them to deal with that."

In January this year, Barnardo's children's charity issued a statement in Wales requesting that more same-sex couples come forward and offer to adopt. According to figures from Barnardo's Cymru, of 230 children adopted in Wales in 2009-10, only five went to same-sex couples. There are 5 162 children in the care system in Wales, so it makes sense.

According to research by Birkbeck College, London University, same-sex couples can actually make better parents because their children cannot be conceived naturally so an active decision must be made either to adopt or find a sperm donor.

In 2009, Stephen Scott, director of research at the UK National Academy for Parenting, found himself drawn into a controversy when he told the think-tank Demos that "lesbians make better parents than a man and a woman".

Alex Drummond, a cognitive-behavioural psychotherapist with a speciality in sexual minorities, who works in South Wales, agrees with him. "Research papers on same-sex parenting have consistently come up with evidence that it is a positive and beneficial relationship," he says. "Children benefit from a greater appreciation of diversity issues, more tolerance and less gender-stereotyping.

"But in a sense there is no difference between a good same-sex couple and a good heterosexual one. What matters is the quality of relationship and the feelings of safety the children experience.

"So ultimately it's nothing to do with the sexuality of the parents, but the relationship they form with their children." The Pink Guide to Adoption is out now – see www.baaf.org.uk for details or www.pink-parenting.com

Same-sex couples: the facts:

I A 2007 ICM poll for Newsnight found that 64 percent of people thought same-sex couples should be allowed to adopt.

I In a 2009 Populus poll, 40 percent of men and 57 percent of women said gay couples should have the same rights to adopt children as heterosexual couples.

I Birkbeck College's and Clark University's research suggests that same-sex couples make better parents, and that children of two mothers are more aspirational and more confident that those with two straight parents.

The data showed that children of gay parents were no more or less likely to be gay.

I Out of 3 200 children adopted in 2010, 4 percent were adopted by same-sex couples. – Foreign Service I Gay adoption is also legal in South Africa. For more information visit http://www.child-adoption-matters.com/gay-adoption-rights.html. To adopt a child in South Africa contact Child Welfare on +27 11 452 4110 or website:

http://www.childwelfaresa.org.za/index.php/contact-us. Children can also be adopted privately.

Power to the poor June 13 2011 at 11:20am By Mary Corrigall



Zwelethu Mthethwa only enforces one rule on his sitters: they must not smile. It's the anti-thesis of what one would expect a photographer to demand. This idea is founded in Mthethwa's belief that smiles are rarely genuine. They're a knee-jerk response to awkwardness, he suggests.

"I see the smile as a façade, as a mask. When we are not sure what to do, we smile. So for me as an artist smiling becomes some kind of a blockage."

This ethos has contributed towards an extensive oeuvre of portraiture offering authentic views into the lives of marginalised South Africans. Though he has painted too, it's his photographs that have caught the world's attention – he regularly exhibits on international exhibitions and a new monograph was published by the Aperture Foundation last year.

You could argue that his images of impoverished subjects satiates stereotypical notions of Africa. Undoubtedly the fact that they don't smile might underscore their dejection. However, Mthethwa employs a number of devices to foreground the inventive ways in which they respond to difficult circumstances.

In fact Mthethwa likens the subjects to artists, and is challenged and inspired by their tenaciousness.

Mthethwa is relieved to be talking about his work; he has a new exhibition on at Cape Town's iArt Gallery, and has grown weary of discussing his involvement in South Africa's stand at the Venice Biennale.



#### VISIONARY: Zwelethu Mthethwa

There has been much controversy around South Africa's participation in this exhibition because of the manner in which the Department of Arts and Culture failed to follow proper protocol and appointed a commercial dealer, Monna Mokoena, as commissioner.

Mthethwa laughs nervously when I raise the issue. I explain that at this juncture it's a prerequisite to any conversation with him but suggest he could use the opportunity to clear up any misconceptions.

It seems there is one. It was widely reported that Mthethwa refused to participate because of the circumstances around Mokoena's appointment, but as he explains the back-and-forth negotiations between them, it becomes clear that his withdrawal from what must be the biggest and most important international art exhibitions, had to do with a lack transparency and disorganisation.

"No one seemed to know what the budget was. I print my photographs in New York so I needed advance warning."

When Mthethwa finally received a contract from Mokoena, it was too late and the budget was far too meagre. "There was not enough time to reproduce the work. I pulled out because I didn't want to appear to be a clown."

Dignity is an important quality to this artist, particularly that

of his unsmiling subjects.



Though most of his photographic essays are centred on people living on the margins – stock subject matter for the documentary photographer – he rallies against the way subjects have historically been positioned through that genre of photography.

Choosing to shoot in colour and conceiving of himself as "the other", rather than his subjects are just a few of the ways he has tried to renegotiate this brand of portraiture. From 1995 to 2005 he photographed shack dwellers in the township of Crossroads in Cape Town. With a focus on subjects inside their makeshift homes, the series was dubbed Interiors.

It featured a range of people pictured in the most intimate place in their homes, their bedrooms, which often doubled as kitchens. These neat, ordered and colourful settings, most often decorated with bold advertising leaflets, implied that these individuals had found ways of transcending their poverty, which is associated with chaos and filth. In one room a wall is adorned with a slogan or newspaper headline that reads "Battle of the mind", pointing to the psychological games these impoverished subjects must negotiate to survive.

A 2003 series features lonely sugar cane labourers who are pictured in barren fields battling nature with nothing more than pangas. Like the sitters in Interiors they too wear these stoic expressions.

Had they been smiling, the viewers' response would be quite different; perhaps they would feel less pathos. Mthethwa aims to evoke empathy, not pity. His intention is to give these subjects a voice and allow them to claim ownership of their subjectivity, a condition that photojournalists and historical ethnographic studies often denied them.



"There is a kind of a soberness (about the photographs). In almost all the portraiture I have done, the people are aware of me. I ask them to look at the camera. It is like they are looking at the audience. It is kind of like they are returning the gaze of the onlooker in a gallery or museum. I do that on purpose as it includes some baggage with the history of photography, especially in South Africa."

It is in response to this "baggage" that Mthethwa has embraced colour photography. He doesn't just associate black and white photography with a journalistic mode, but with a far more loaded kind of photograph: that of the ID book or "dompass" (passbook) – the one occasion when black subjects were encouraged to gaze at the camera.

"They are uncomfortable but they look at the camera. Most of those photographs were really horrible and people were forced to live with those photographs because they were in their ID books or dompass."

Haunted by this brand of imagery, which subtly reinforced each subjects' status within the apartheid system, Mthethwa has developed a brand of photography engineered to counter it. Not only does he shoot in colour, but he will go to any lengths to put his subject at ease. He doesn't use artificial light and, most importantly, he goes to them

"The moment I come into your house and photograph in your house, it is me who comes from the outside. I am unfamiliar with your turf. But if I bring you to the studio it is my turf and you will be uncomfortable. I would rather it be me that is uncomfortable. I stick out as a sore thumb. I am actually the Other."

Mthethwa's new series, Brave Ones, features portraits of subjects, which are difficult to place. They are young male followers of the Shembe Church, but they wear unconventional ensembles that scramble gender and cultural codes.

Frilly blouses with old-fashioned bow ties are teamed with Scottish kilts and some wear pith helmets, evoking colonial dress of a bygone era. For some time now many

South Africa artists have been mining identity-based themes.

This has manifested in a brand of art in which the artists figure themselves in photographic images, where they are adorned in outfits that confuse and deflect their identity. What makes Mthethwa's Brave One's series so interesting is that he has encountered individuals who have quite unselfconsciously assumed ensembles that achieve the same objective.

In this case this eclectic dress is designed for a New Year's Day ritual.

They are photographed in a lush rural KwaZulu-Natal setting, which evokes idealistic images of the English landscape, further disconnecting them from any perceivable reality.

For Mthethwa the landscapes in the background of his images are as important as his subjects. In theSugar Cane series the picturesque sugar cane fields which dominate the visual plane are in stark opposition to his subjects, the labourers, who are attired in tattered grey outfits

He attributes his fascination for the rural landscape to an obsession with spaghetti westerns and Japanese samurai movies during his youth. Dress was important in those types of films and it piqued his interest in the interplay between clothing and identity, which has culminated in the Brave Ones series.

"Both of those (filmic) genres are about costume. Second, they are genres concerned with the landscape. When I looked at those young men it felt like a follow-up to the sugar cane cutters. The skirts they wear remind me of the samurai warrior. But this (the outfits of the Shembe worshippers) is a little bit complicated because they also wear sports socks and workmen's shoes... I was fascinated by this."

Mthethwa's interest in the informal and spontaneous uniforms that emerge from particular groups of people underpinned the Sugar Cane and Brick Ladies series, portraits of women who reclaim disused bricks.

Each photographic series he undertakes features individuals in similar circumstances, and most often they are manual labourers.

Mthethwa is particularly interested how communities form and adapt to particular conditions — it's an unselfconscious form of expression. "Whether it is in the sugar cane fields or in the mines, they are people who come from quite different backgrounds and they are forced to make a culture, where they have to make sense of what they are doing."

Transformation and adaptation intrigue Mthethwa. How mineworkers adapt to living in hostels informed his Empty Bed and End of an Era series. The latter is part of his current exhibition.

"People (living) on the margin are great artists. They are very creative and resourceful. If you look at theInteriors series they have very little resources but they make their homes liveable and warm.

"And if they go to the (mine) hostels, they manage to live with each other. When they go back home some of the men have families, they are well respected in the villages, some are indunas."

"When they come to the hostels they have to reinvent themselves and adapt to that way of life. That transformation fascinates me. They have taught me to be very comfortable with the many identities I have." Though it appears that Mthethwa's subjects have surrendered their individuality to form part of a cohesive group, subtle differences between them imply there is still room for them to assert their uniqueness.

Nevertheless he denies their individuality in the sense that he doesn't title any of his images or parade the names of his subjects. It's a device to underscore their status within a community, he says.

"I was reading an article by Duma Ndlovu (the playwright) and he said he was comfortable to go back to Bergville where his family comes from because when he gets there he is seen as son of so and so: he is not seen as Duma, the man who has achieved this and that.

"He ceases to be an individual and becomes a member of the clan. This is the point I am trying to talk to when I don't give my subjects names."

Mthethwa can spend up to four years on a series. "I don't have any expectations. I let the project dictate to me how I move. I am very fluid in the way that I work."

I ask him how he knows when a series is complete. "It's like when you are drinking and you know you have had enough drink."

I Mthethwa's New Works are showing at the iArt Gallery in Cape Town until June 29

Alliance partners need an overhaul March 24 2013 at 09:32am By Karima Brown

Comment on this story



**INLSA** 

## Karima Brown

The decision by the ANC to disband its youth league leadership is unsurprising, despite the feigned "shock" by the remnants of the league's national executive committee brought to power by stealth under Julius Malema in July 2011, when it was ushered in unopposed.

It also serves as a warning to those in the ANC who thought they could stage comebacks after the Mangaung conference through a youth league that was about to get a facelift.

While Ronald Lamola grovelled at Nkandla and swore fealty to President Jacob Zuma in the immediate aftermath of the Mangaung conference, which destroyed the league's much-vaunted king-maker status in the ANC, his efforts were never going to compensate for the political and organisational turmoil that accompanied the league's attempts to oust Zuma from power in the party.

Despite Lamola's seeking to assure the newly elected ANC NEC of his loyalty, it did not change the fact that Lamola and the majority of the league's national leadership had been an active part of the machinery that landed the league, and in some instances ANC provincial structures, in a political and organisational quagmire.

More so Zuma, and many of his acolytes, were all too aware of the flip-flop politics of the league as many of its remaining leaders sought to re-engineer their survival after Mangaung.

The fickle behaviour of Lamola and his crowd was not likely to be overlooked by Zuma and his top six and many of those who serve in the ANC's powerful national working committee. After all, they were veterans of the sustained and relentless campaign launched by the league in concert with senior ANC figures, and of which Lamola had been an integral part, bent on gaining control of the ANC despite the costs.

While the veneer of unity in the league was publicly shattered after Malema's expulsion in 2012, the reality is that the youth league fractured long before his axing.

In fact Malema's second term as youth league president came off the back of a relentless and ruthless purge of all who opposed him in the run-up to the youth league's elective conference.

The youth league NEC that emerged at Gallagher Estate in June 2011 was a coterie of hand-picked individuals, the outcome of a set of careful trade-offs between youth league powerbrokers in the provinces who converged their patronage links with their political ambitions.

Before and after Malema's re-election, provincial structures of the league were the sites of intense battles between pro- and anti-Malema forces, including in his then-Limpopo backyard, where he engineered the ouster of former confidant and ANCYL Limpopo chairman Lehlogonolo Masoga. The league found Masoga guilty of "grave and serious" offences after he fell out with his erstwhile comrades in the league.

This narrative stretched to many other youth league provinces.

In June 2010 a High Court ruling in Grahamstown prevented a youth league elective conference from going ahead in the divided province.

That was of course before Andile Lungisa fell on his sword and became a Malema loyalist.

At that time he was the man many touted as the one who would stand up to Malema.

In 2011, Gauteng youth league leader Lebogang Maile did a Lungisa and also fell on his sword, retreating from contesting Malema after reportedly taking advice from ANC Gauteng chairman Paul Mashatile, who warned against going toe to toe with Malema.

Of course, as the recent history of ANC palace politics shows, there was method in Mashatile's political ploy. Malema was an important battering ram against Zuma to mask the ambitions of the real pretenders to the throne. Interestingly enough, both Lamola and Maile dumped Malema when he no longer enjoyed leverage.

The youth league's predilection for using patronage as a way to secure political survival and influence was publicly acknowledged by party secretary-general Gwede Mantashe when he explained the ANC NEC's decision behind disbanding the league's leadership. He said the

NEC was aware of efforts to buy leadership and create "instant" youth league leaders.

Hence the NEC's instruction to halt all provincial and regional conferences meant to usher in new blood.

Clearly Lamola and the league leadership's quick acquiescence to all and everything the new top six and NEC decided did not convince ANC leaders well versed in the expediency so prevalent in the league and the ANC.

While the ANC NEC took a bold decision that could open a window for genuine change, it would all come to naught if the experience of rebuilding the youth league did not serve as an opportunity to usher in even greater boldness beyond the league.

The swirling mess in the league is often mirrored by many ANC provincial structures as well as regions and branches of the party.

If truth be told, the sorry state of organisation, lack of political leadership and the politics of patronage are features of the entire tripartite alliance.

When one scratches the surface of what lies behind the recent political fallout surrounding leaders of the labour federation Cosatu, it appears that the sins of incumbency are being visited upon all the allies, not just the governing party.

But that is the subject of an entirely different column.

Suffice to say, the rebuilding of the youth league cannot happen in a vacuum in the ANC in particular and in the alliance in general.

Unless the process has an effect in recalibrating the alliance as a whole, the exercise will be one in futility.

\* Brown is CNBC Africa anchor for Political Exchange, a current affairs show focusing on African political economy. **Sunday Independent** 

Women's bodies are a terrain of struggle November 21 2011 at 03:03pm By Nomboniso Gasa

Comment on this story



SPECIAL FORCES: A woman fires an AK-47 rifle after hearing that Libyan leader Muammar Gaddafi s forces have withdrawn from Benghazi. Women in conflict zones continue to be raped and murdered. Picture: Reuters

November 25 marks the 21st anniversary of the 16 Days of Activism Against Gender Violence campaign. Tracing the origins of this campaign is important, as it developed from campaigns started by women in their immediate communities.

In 1981, the Feminist Encuentro, held in Bogota, Colombia, in July, decided to mark November 25 as the day of no violence against women in honour of the Mirabal sisters – Minerva, Patricia Mercedes and Antonia Maria Teresa.

In 1960 the Dominican Republic sisters were the victims of a violent assassination by the Rafaelo Trujillo dictatorship, whose reign of terror lasted 31 years, from 1930 to 1961.

All four Mirabal sisters were very active in the resistance against Trujillo's dictatorship. Several imprisonments as well as torture did not deter the strong-willed sisters from their resistance work.

In the end, three of the sisters were killed.

Belgica Adela "Dede" Mirabal survived and continues to tell the story of her sisters' resistance, their assassination



POLITICS of the flesh: Visual activist and photographer, Zanele Muholi s Difficult Love presents a lively personal take on the challenges facing black lesbians in South Africa today. Women s bodies continue to be battlefields everywhere we look.

That this day has become part of the international calendar of the UN, nation states and many in the women's and social movements is befitting tribute to the tenacity and commitment of the feminist activists of Latin America and the Caribbean.

It was that single-minded commitment to justice and to not forgetting which made it possible for these women and their allies to take this proposal to the Fourth World Conference on Women, in Beijing 1995, followed by the adoption of the day by the UN General Assembly in 1999.

The proposal resonated, with tens of thousands of women gathering in Beijing. Many of us carried similar baggage from our own histories. We, too, irrespective of the different circumstances and details, had our own versions of the terror that had been visited upon our people.

For South Africans the memory of Victoria Mxenge and many others was still fresh. Mxenge was brutally killed because, together with her husband Griffiths, who suffered the same fate, they dared to fight for justice.

Like Minerva Mirabal, Victoria Mxenge was, among other things, an attorney. She was articled in 1981, the same year the Latin American and Caribbean feminists decided to declare November 25 the day of violence against women.

But, Minerva Mirabal qualified as a lawyer 20 years before Mxenge could practise – and this contributed in no small measure to her death.

Mirabal had the misfortune of attracting unwanted romantic interest from Trujillo. She did not return these feelings.

So Trujillo ordered that she should not be issued a licence. She was not allowed to practise law.

In the mind of the dictator, if the woman did not want his advances, she had no professional future in the country he perceived as his own playground and property.

Nothing new there, many will say. In every corner of the globe, those who hold power believe they are entitled to get what they want. Should they be denied it, they will take it by force or even destroy it, including human life and great talent, because they can. They have the power to do so. As Eduardo Galeano, the Uruguayan writer, so eloquently put it, "the crime of power is the mother of all crimes".

The story of the Mirabal sisters, shocking and vile as it was, is familiar to many women across the globe. It is a story with which many women and men in the world can easily identify, because, although the details may be different, the core is the same.

Fifty-one years later, these methods have not completely disappeared from our global political landscape.

During the Fourth World Conference in Beijing, women deliberated much harder than before, I believe, to make connections between the specific conditions in their own countries or regions, and those confronting others elsewhere.

The Beijing Platform of Action also speaks to a strenuous grappling to make visible the connections between all forms of oppression, marginalisation and discrimination suffered by women and the vulnerable.

The contestations during the deliberations in the NGO and the inter-governmental platforms bear witness to this. They also speak of a growing awareness of the political nature of violence against women.

They bear witness to hard work that has been done by women for decades, particularly those campaigns and struggles which pushed the boundaries of definition of what is "political". However, despite these advances and the final recognition of rape as a war crime, in times of conflict, very little has been achieved in the way of tangible redress. There remain few cases of the trial, let alone conviction, of perpetrators.

Women's bodies continue to be battlefields everywhere we look. The disturbing images of women in Somalia, their vulnerability and that of their children, are multiplied by those who believe their political and religious convictions are more important than human life.

We have seen women using their last strength as they crawl to the gates of the humanitarian camps to get one small morsel of food or badly needed medical attention, or just a drop of water.

We have seen men wearing military boots and carrying guns as they push them away from the gates, because, according to them, these camps are part of the "western imperialist" agenda. The assumption, of course, is that these women do not have an agency of their own. Many are left dying as they are provided with no alternative care.

It seems the conflict in Syria may break into a full-blown war. As the planes whizz in the skies in that part of the world, we know already that war will be waged on many sites, including women's bodies. We saw in the war against the Taliban and Iraq, in particular, how prevalent sexual violence was as a weapon of war.

None of us will forget soon the horror of Abu Gharib, where captured Iraqi men were sexually molested. And yet, even as we take note of this violation, we recall that women went through similar experiences. But the response of their families and communities was different. Many returned home after their detention and found their families rejected them. They had been raped, you see, and that meant dishonour to their families. In defence of family honour, these women were sacrificed in "honour" killings.

Honour killings are a common feature of women's lives in western Asia, north Africa and south Asia. Even in what seemingly are peaceful times, women who have been sexually violated are considered to bring shame to their families.

Africa is marked by the unpleasant and consistently growing epidemic of traumatic fistula resulting from gang rape and the insertion of foreign objects into women's bodies during times of war. In Rwanda this was a popular method of torture.

The HIV/Aids pandemic has also created new victims and destroyed lives of young women. Girl children are being sacrificed in the interest of continued lineage by those who fear loss of lineage, despite fervent assertions to the opposite.

This year, the theme for the 16 Days of Activism is "From Peace in the Home to Peace in World: Let Us Challenge Militarism and End Violence against Women".

In highlighting political violence and the proliferation of the arms trade, and how these feature in the domestic sphere, and the use of sexual violence during and after conflict, the aim is to look at sexual violence as a public issue which is manifested in different ways and in different arenas.

It is critical that these linkages are drawn, because the structural basis for continued violence against women, children and some men remains very strong. The solutions, therefore, must be political as well as legal. Without a commitment to probe, to seek understanding and to ask difficult questions about the militarisation of our society, we are not going to get far in changing these patterns.

Some of these questions must be directed to the state and the arms trade industry. For decades, the women's movement has fought the increasing militarisation of our societies. Activists have questioned the big budget spend on the military in face of the great economic challenges that face our societies.

- n This piece is an introduction to a series on the complexities of disparate societies. The contributors come from different corners of the globe.
- n Margaret Randall and Eduardo Galeano are two of the established voices on the issues in the Americas and the

abuse of power and militarism. We have invited them to contribute because there is much to learn from their reflections. Lola Shoneyin comes from Nigeria, a country that has lived under militarism for a long time and where the culture has taken root even in civilian politics.

n Caroline Kihato is a Kenyan whose work and writing confront issues faced by migrant women and the complex spaces they have to navigate.

n Raymond Suttner wrestles with the notion of manhood, heroism and masculinity, especially in the liberation movement

n Ziad Majed is a Lebanese who works on political issues in the Middle East. He traverses the spaces between "home" and other places where many are forced to reside and explores the violence and "othering" of the people who have been brutalised.

n Gasa is an analyst on gender, politics and culture

# Love isn't blind July 25 2011 at 02:24pm



Cameron Diaz plays an ordinary Jane and Tom Cruise a superspy in the 2010 movie Knight and Day. Romance between mismatched couples is a Hollywood staple. Picture: AP / Alastair Grant

They're the words that have been uttered by every unattached woman at some point in the dating game: "He's out of my league."

You may be dazzled by the Adonis on the dance floor or at the bar, but a little voice inside your head tells you it will never happen.

To boost your ego, your friends egg you on with cries of "Rubbish! There's no such thing", and with exaggerated tales of your attractiveness.

Sadly, they're wrong. Fairytales may be full of mismatched couples - think Beauty and the Beast - but new research suggests they are just that: fairytales. There really are different leagues of attractiveness - and we stick to our

The study by the University of California shows that when looking for a mate, we select partners whose social desirability approximately matches our own. Most strikingly, people who were the least attractive opted for similarly unattractive mates.

"It's called assortative mating," says Dr George Fieldman, a cognitive behavioural therapist. "By and large, people don't mate randomly. They choose people who they

perceive, rightly or wrongly, have things in common with them."



There are exceptions: Marilyn Monroe paired up with gawky, bespectacled playwright Arthur Miller. Picture: AP AP

And the most important part of this is looks.

Numerous research studies have shown that girls who have a good relationship with their fathers will often end up falling for a man who looks like him; the same goes for men and their mothers. In one study, people shown faces with their own features morphed into them rated them as more attractive.

But what seems to matter most is choosing someone in the same league of physical appeal. Which is why Brad Pitt goes for Angelina Jolie, and Tony Blair falls for Cherie.

There are exceptions: Marilyn Monroe paired up with gawky playwright Arthur Miller, Julia Roberts fell for hatchet-featured Lyle Lovett and Claudia Schiffer dated big-nosed perma-tanned magician David Copperfield.

But none of those relationships lasted. Even though the men concerned were high (or high-ish) status individuals, the looks gap between them and their lover was just too great.

"There's an element of potential humiliation in falling for someone much better-looking than you," says Fieldman. "If you're rejected, that might mean a loss of status, so in some circumstances it's better not to try."

My own first serious boyfriend was a fashion photographer. I was still a schoolgirl and he swept me off my feet. The only downside was that he was a decade older and several centimetres shorter than me, not to mention bald.

At first, I didn't notice his physical shortcomings: I was dazzled by the lifestyle. But it changed when I took him to a school dance and saw my classmates giggling.

But dating-up doesn't work either. My friend Nicole (who is very pretty, if a bit overweight) was flattered to be pursued by a male model. "I knew he was out of my league, but it was really gratifying," she admits. "When we went out, women would actually stuff their phone numbers into his pocket."

Unfortunately, Tom's personality and intellect didn't match up to his looks.

"I knew I was being immature and behaving exactly like those men who date bimbos."

She's now happily married to an attractive (but not too attractive) man.

A 1991 survey of 1 300 married couples by Goldsmiths College found that good-looking people married other good-looking people, rich men fell for wealthy women and, by and large, most couples were in the same age range. "Similarity is the general rule. How many young women really have sugar daddies?" asked the study's author, psychologist Robin Russell.

Which may explain why Hugh Hefner's love life doesn't seem to be panning out too well.

Another important factor is a similar level of education. Some social scientists say this is because such couples are likely to earn the same; others point to lifestyle factors such as an appreciation of the same books and music.

And a study of film star marriages in the Journal of Human Capital found that they, too, tend to have similar educational backgrounds.

There's also the question of status and, here, there's a sex divide: men are less preoccupied with their partner's standing than women.

"Women tend to choose people of higher status than themselves," says Fieldman. "These days, with women approaching parity of status, it makes less sense. But even very high-status women will tend to want partners with higher status."

Hence, no doubt, mega-famous and mega-rich Harry Potter star Emma Watson's difficulty finding a boyfriend.

When female celebs try to downdate, it rarely seems to end happily: think of Britney and Kevin Federline, Cameron Diaz and Paul Sculfor, or Madonna and Carlos Leon

The discontent cuts both ways: even the most dazzled civilian gets tired of being elbowed out of the way by fans desperate to meet their famous other half.

"The disparity of status is usually too big," explains Dr Arthur Cassidy, celebrity media psychologist. "And celebrities' lives are chaotic. They have much more in common with other celebrities."

There are blissfully happy couples out there whose union defies simple analysis: the clever can marry the stupid, the wealthy hitch up with the poverty-stricken and beauties live happily ever after with beasts (the dazzling Cate Blanchett and her homely-looking hubby Andrew Upton come to mind). But, in general, unless you're Angelina Jolie, you'd probably be happier with Mr Average than Mr Pitt.

Students keen to learn an African language June 19 2011 at 01:56pm By Dianne Hawker



Higher Education Minister Blade Nzimande Photo: Jeffrey Abrahams

Multilingualism advocates say there is considerable evidence that university students and academics are keen to learn an African language as part of their courses.

A group of academics who call themselves the South African Interest Group on Multilingualism (Sigom) plan to meet in September to discuss ways in which universities and academics can promote the use of and instruction in African languages at university level.

The group comprise academics from various tertiary institutions, including lecturers from the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Johannesburg, the University of KwaZulu-Natal (UKZN) and the University of Cape Town (UCT).

Last week Higher Education Minister Blade Nzimande renewed his call for all university students to learn "at least one African language as a condition for graduation".

When announcing his budget last month, Nzimande told Parliament his department would "increase the number of universities offering foundation phase teacher education programmes, specifically for the preparation of teachers who are able to teach in the African languages" between 2011 and 2014.

He has also set up an advisory panel on African languages "to strengthen the teaching, research and development of African languages at universities".

Meanwhile, academics at UKZN and UCT have rubbished the idea that students are not interested in learning African languages. Both universities offer an African language component as part of their medicine and medical sciences courses.

While UKZN offers aspiring doctors, physiotherapists, chemists and medical technicians a semester course in Zulu, medical courses at UCT currently include four semesters of Xhosa and Afrikaans.

Head of the School of Zulu at UKZN Professor Nhlanhla Mathonsi says there has been an increasing interest in Zulu courses among those who are not mother-tongue speakers.

The numbers applying for the second language course far outstripped those of the mother-tongue course, with the university seeing 300 students registering at the Durban campus, between 150 and 200 at Pietermaritzburg and a further 150 at the Westville Campus per semester, Mathonsi said.

"There is a big demand. Last year we had to start teaching lecturers because some of them noticed that there was a communication breakdown with some students," he said.

Mathonsi said medicine and health sciences students found the course helpful, but said it should be shifted towards the end of their programme instead of the first year, where it is now.

"Where they are going to be working they are going to come across mostly Africans and have to know the language. The problem is that they start them early (in the course) and by the time they go into communities they have already forgotten."

Mathonsi said he saw Nzimande's call as a way "to improve relations" between different races in South Africa. "He's trying to say 'let's meet each other half way'," he said

However, Mathonsi said it would be better if African languages were taught at high school and primary school levels, so that more students already had an understanding of the basics once they entered tertiary institutions.

He also said there were too few people qualified to teach African languages, but hoped the numbers would increase as universities continued to train more teachers.

Meanwhile Professor Mbulungeni Madiba, who coordinates the multilingualism education project at UCT, also agrees that there needs to be a greater push to ensure African languages are taught at basic education level.

"The basic education curriculum should encourage learning an African language. Most of the kids are from former Model C schools and many (of these) don't cater for African languages.

"In some cases even the mother-tongue speakers can't write and read in their own languages."

"If the opportunity is provided for learners at a basic education level, it would give them an advantage once they got to university level. Then we would be teaching them the specialist language," Madiba said.

He explained that instead of learning the specific terminology of their industries, most university students were learning the basics of Afrikaans or Xhosa in order to help them relate to the rural and township communities they would eventually work in.

As at UKZN, the health faculties had made an African language course part of the curriculum and the departments want to expand the current four semester course to six semesters.

Madiba said law students were also requesting an African language course because they "find it very difficult" when practising in Western Cape communities where the dominant language is not English.

Last year UCT piloted a Xhosa course for 30 law students and, at the request of students. This year the course will include Afrikaans.

"We are hoping that by 2012, 2013 it will be incorporated into the main course." Madiba said.

He added that lecturers and students from other faculties had expressed interest in "non-formal courses" in both languages. "In 2006 we had 800 staff members who had gone through the course and they did this during lunch and after hours. A number of students from the psychology department were also doing the course during lunch-breaks," he said

Madiba said among those who took Xhosa classes were Sotho, Venda and Xhosa speaking students who recognised that they needed to know the dominant languages of the province. -Sunday Independent

True Grit February 23 2011 at 11:39am



Lorey Sebastian

This new cinematic offering by the Coen brothers, Joel and Ethan, has been hailed as their most "unaffected" film. The suggestion is that their repertoire has been marked by a brand of self-conscious filmmaking.

For those who revel in the cerebral and self-referential dimensions of storytelling, this signature quality has been one of the most prized aspects of the Coens' body of work

A Serious Man, their previous film which was released last year, perhaps marked the apogee of this feature.

Perhaps because of this the Coen brothers have decided to dispense with any sophisticated analysis of storytelling, choosing to embrace a straightforward narrative propelled by basic human compulsions such as retribution. In a sense True Grit has brought them full circle to Blood Simple, their first feature, a tight tale centred on a cuckold bent on avenging his wife and her lover.

Twists aside it was a simple story well told. Such is the case with True Grit, an adaptation of a 1968 novel by Charles Portis, which recounts a young girl's journey to avenge her father's murderer.

There are no unexpected twists in this story, nor is it infused with the brothers' characteristic penchant for suspense. So in a way this is the most un-Coen movie the maverick brothers have produced.

This is perhaps most obvious when Mattie Ross (Hailee Steinfeld) finally comes face-to-face with her father's murderer, Tom Chaney (Josh Brolin), a scene that is seemingly bereft of significance and is rendered as a banal.

The focus of this film is not vengeance and the politics thereof but the unexpected relationship that blossoms between Ross and Rooster Cogburn (Jeff Bridges), a marshal whom Ross hires to track down Chaney.

Cogburn is the antithesis of Ross; he is a heavy-drinker driven by a questionable moral code. His flabby, heavy

body, his discursive manner of speech, underpins this sense of him as a directionless man past his prime. In contrast Ross is a bright-eyed, determined and sharp 14-year-old full of promise, who appears to be guided by an unwavering sense of right and wrong. She is adamant that Chaney must pay for taking the life of her father. It is not quite a question of an "eye for an eye": she wants to ensure that he is sentenced in a court of law before being treated to a public hanging.

Unable to chase after Chaney and capture him on her own, she secures the services of Cogburn, who is rumoured to possess "true grit". That term has little currency in this day and age but in the mid-1800s and in the Wild West, the setting of this story, this quality would have been highly prized.

Ironically, it is the young Ross, the bold teenager with chutzpah, who evinces a more enduring sense of "true grit". Undoubtedly the harsh living conditions and ruthless social mores of that era compel such a trait. Nevertheless, she certainly seems to have cultivated it in bucket-loads.

As with the Western genre, the Coen brothers summon the unforgiving conditions of the Wild West, but they up the ante as the level of idealism that perhaps pervaded that genre around the 50s is quite absent. As Cogburn and Ross head into the Indian Territory to track down Chaney they enter no-man's land, where life is cheap and man metes out his own form of justice.

In one haunting scene they encounter a man's limp body hanging high from a tree. After it is cut down it is traded: here cadavers are commodities that are exchanged for food, medicine. This is survivalist territory, where there are no witnesses to a man's or woman's actions.

Consequently the schism between law and human nature forms the subtext of this western tale. In this Wild West zone, people are exempt from reason and the rule of law. In such a setting Ross's desire to force Chaney to surrender to the rule of law is naïve and untenable.

While at first it seemed as if the Coen brothers had finally transcended their cynical tact, demonstrated by the presentation of such a pure and untainted character made of firm moral fibre, they suggest that in the face of such pervasive immorality defiant ethical resolves cannot be completely sustained – particularly when survival is at stake.

Predictably, Ross must pay a price for her unyielding need for justice – it's a steep cost but one she can live with.

It is not so much the story that leaves a lasting impression, but the visual texture of this film. The barren, flat landscape, which forms the backdrop to the action underscores the vastness of the territory the characters occupy, thus almost dwarfing their significance and their petty preoccupations.

In contrast the Coens offer a close study of the textures of life in that era; like the yellow stains on Cogburn's sagging long johns.

Ultimately, though, True Grit is an old-fashioned tale well told and nothing more. For Coen devotees this will come as a disappointment but for those who were perplexed by their more sophisticated offerings, such as A Serious Man or Burn After Reading, it might come as a relief.

Students debt weighs heavy on universities March 3 2013 at 03:45pm By Bongekile Macupe

Comment on this story



INDEPENDENT NEWSPAPERS

Wits University could outlaw relationships between staff and students, as a measure to curb incidents of sexual harassment.

Universities are owed millions of rand by students, with some of the debt dating back to the early 1980s. Even though some institutions feel the pinch more than others, the debt mountain takes a heavy toll because tuition fees form a significant part of the income of universities.

For those students who don't pay up, their diplomas or degrees are withheld until their debt is settled, often putting them in a Catch-22 bind.

Jabulani Mathebula finished his public management diploma at the University of Johannesburg last year and is due to graduate in April.

But he owes the university R6 000 and if he doesn't raise the money before April he won't get his diploma.

"It's the most frustrating thing... I won't be able to get a good-paying job if I don't have my diploma," said the distraught 22-year-old. Both Mathebula's parents are unemployed and he estimates it could take him six to 12 months to get a "good job" that would enable him to pay back the institution. He also fears that even though he is applying for internships, he would be overlooked by prospective employers without proof that he actually studied for his qualification.

Jeffrey Mabelebele, the acting chief director of Higher Education SA, an association of vice-chancellors, sympathises with students like Mathebula. However, he emphasises that universities must fund their running costs and students need to pay back their debts. "Unpaid student debt impacts on operations of universities because the money they owe in terms of tuition contributes to the efficient and effective running of our institutions," says Mabelebele.

The University of KwaZulu-Natal has a total of student debt which includes loans running to about R220 million.

Executive director of corporate relations at the institution, Nomonde Mbadi, says students who owe the institution money are not allowed to register for further study until they settle their debts. Director of corporate communications at North-West University, Louis Jacobs, says, "Quite often students in arrears who have successfully completed their studies pay the outstanding amounts closer to graduation ceremonies, because they realise they will not be receiving their degrees or diploma."

Some institutions such as the University of Venda have carried the burden of student debt for decades. The institution still has debt dating back to 1982. Although spokeswoman Welheminah Mabogo could not provide the total owed, she said it was more than R100m owed by 15 000 students.

And the problem is not unique to the University of Venda. Spokesman for the University of the Western Cape, Luthando Tyhalibongo, said many of their alumni owed fees to the university. Even though the debt went back many years, the institution did not write off student debt and held on to student records.

The University of Limpopo is similarly struggling. In 2009 the institution had a student debt of R50m which had risen to R81.9m by the end of last year.

Unisa has 83 905 students dating back to the 2011 academic year in debt to the university.

Gerard Grobler, Unisa's director of communications, says R166m is owed by students. The overdue balances are carried over a period of two years from the last academic year of registration. Thereafter the accounts are written off and handed over to a debt collector.

Lebogang Manyani completed her media studies degree at Wits in 2006 and was not able to pay her debt. After finishing her studies Manyani stayed at home, unable to get a job without proof of her qualification.

But why couldn't she pay the debt? "My dad died and it was just my mom so she couldn't carry the load alone," she savs.

Why hasn't she managed to make a plan to pay back her debt in six years? She has done odd jobs to keep her alive, but isn't getting paid enough to pay back the university.

Manyani felt the way the institution had treated her was "unfair" as they could have made some arrangement with her to see how she could pay back her debt.

In 2007, Wits started sending her letters "demanding" their money. "I got upset at the way they hounded me, threatening to take me to their lawyers and blacklist me if I don't pay them their money," she says.

She only got a permanent job last year in March, and even though she has aspirations of pursuing a career in the media industry that dream looks far-fetched without her degree. "You end up doing useless jobs, and you get bosses who don't even recognise your other talents."

Her plan is to get a better-paying job, and start paying off her debt.

She said she believed universities should "cut a deal" with students who were unable to pay their debt; that they should give them their results and make an arrangement on how to pay the institution.

Professor Tawana Kupe, deputy vice-chancellor of finance at Wits, says that if a student does not "voluntarily" discuss ways of repayment, the institution contacts the student or the person responsible for payment to develop a "repayment schedule".

"Only if this process is not successful will the university embark on implementing the formal debt collection process," he said.

Kupe said Wits was one of the more "fortunate" institutions as it had the "lowest burden of debt". He attributed this to a "number of flexible-payment options offered to students".

In January last year, the institution had R13.3m in outstanding fees. He said all outstanding monies were recovered in January, before registration for the current academic year.

"The university continues to collect any shortfall throughout the year and does not permit a student to escalate their debt through a further year of registration... It would be irresponsible of the university to encourage an escalation of such debt." said Kupe.

At the University of Cape Town the situation is similar. According to executive director of communication and marketing Gerda Kruger, they have a small percentage of outstanding debt and just more than 1 percent of fees raised in 2011 was outstanding by March last year.

Department of Higher Education and Training spokeswoman Vuyelwa Qinga said that in addition to the normal National Student Financial Aid Scheme (Nsfas) allocations to universities, in 2011 the department made an additional allocation of R200m in loans for graduates with outstanding fees who met the scheme's criteria. The money assisted graduates who completed their studies between 2000 and 2010, but had not received their certificates because of outstanding fees.

"The aim of this special funding was, first, to assist unemployed graduates get their certificates, thereby improving their chances of getting employment, and, second, to improve the cash flow of universities by settling eligible students' outstanding debts," she says.

Qinga said from the R200m allocated in 2011, R52.4m benefiting 3 521 students was claimed from Nsfas by universities.

For the 2012 academic year, a historical debt allocation of R30m was made available and by the end of December 2012, universities had claimed only R16.8m.

She said the department had made another amount of R350m available for universities to settle historic debts for continuing students. Qinga said, however, that a report by Nsfas showed that R220m was claimed by universities at the end of last year.

Institutions such as the Walter Sisulu University have used the helping hand by the department. Spokeswoman for the university, Angela Church, said "longstanding debt has been taken care of in various ways".

The department made "special provision" for final-year students so that they could successfully "exit the system". - Sunday Independent

bongekile.macupe@inl.co.za **He loves me, he loves me not**June 6 2011 at 11:10am

By Lydia Slater



INI SA

Relationships, happy gazing staring ogling eyeing eyes dating romancing romance

When Emma was unexpectedly made redundant from her high-profile job, she was able to count on the sympathy and support of her nearest and dearest. All, that is, except for her husband, Bill.

Bill, a successful businessman, was in the fortunate position to be able to support his wife while she looked for a new job. And he did – to the tune of a £2 daily "allowance".

"It didn't even cover one Tube fare," she says sadly. "What made it really hurtful is that he would then go out with his friends and throw his money around like water.

"It wasn't the money I resented, it was the fact that when I needed it most, all his attention and love were focused on his friends."

Bill's friends think of him as the life and soul of the party. He's generous with his time and money, ready to drop everything to help a mate in trouble. But what they don't know is that he does it to avoid being alone with his wife.

As a result, Emma (a glamorous blonde) has seen her self-esteem plummet. "He'll spend hours on the internet, or texting, but he seems to have nothing to say to me," she says. And he's always too tired or too drunk to make



A woman holds a rose to celebrate Valentine's Day in Dubai in this February 14, 2006 file photo. Online daters, disappointed by potential partners lying about their age, weight or marital status, are turning to professional matchmakers to find love. To match feature LIFE DATING

REUTERS/Ahmed Jadallah/Files (UNITED ARAB EMIRATES) zenaide, rose, romance, romantic, flower, relationship, dating, valentine REUTERS

"It wasn't always like this; when we first started seeing each other he was so demonstrative and loving, he swept me off my feet – but as soon as we got married it was like a door had shut."

Oddly enough, Bill would insist he loves his wife. His problem is "intimacy anorexia", a term coined by the US psychologist Dr Douglas Weiss to describe a hurtful form of withdrawal which he says is destroying millions of marriages – the withholding of emotional, spiritual and sexual intimacy by one half of the couple.

"I have seen beauty queens whose husbands wouldn't sleep with them. Over time, it was clear this had a lot more to do with avoiding intimacy than it had to do with avoiding sex. It's an addiction to withholding and it has always been there," says Weiss, whose book Intimacy Anorexia: Healing The Hidden Addiction In Your Marriage is out in the US.

According to Weiss, modern life is prompting a rise in intimacy anorexia. Before, he says, people had to be more inventive with excuses about why they were repeatedly late home from the office. "Now people are on their mobiles at dinner, they spend hours on the computer or watching TV, and they are more connected to their Facebook friends than to the person they promised to love and cherish till death do them part."

According to Weiss, intimacy anorexia arises from various causes. People may have had difficulty relating to the opposite gender parent. "The child then locks into a survival mode that will keep them from intimacy in their marriage."

A child whose parents displayed little connection may grow up simply to copy their behaviour patterns; sexual abuse also leads people to fear an emotional and physical connection with others and seek safety in distance and control.



Cyber romance. Picture: Thys Dullaart ING

"The trouble is, it's almost impossible to spot an intimacy anorexic before it's too late and you've tied the knot.

"Intimacy anorexics do really well at the boyfriend/girlfriend stage," says Weiss. "They're great at the chase and the capture, but after marriage they shut down and begin to withhold love, sex and attention."

So are you an intimacy anorexic, or married to one? If you can tick five or more of the following, you may have a problem.

# BEING Busy

The first characteristic is being so busy they have little time for their spouse. They are doing housework, or focusing on the children or burying themselves in work.



Is he just too busy to love you? You can get your relationship back on that honeymoon track ING

When an issue comes up in the marriage, the intimacy anorexic blames the spouse in order to avoid looking flawed or less than perfect.

#### WITHHOLDING LOVE

"The intimacy anorexic already knows how the spouse wants to be loved," says Weiss, "otherwise they'd never have managed to get hitched in the first place."

# WITHHOLDING PRAISE

"All of us have positive qualities. Intimacy anorexia, over time, closes this positive vision and tends to focus on the flaws of the spouse," says Weiss. "I made his favourite chocolate cake many times and he says nothing," is one example offered by Nancy, wife of an intimacy anorexic. "His sister made it once and he praised her all night."

# WITHHOLDING sex



Cyber romance. Picture: Thys Dullaart

The most obvious behaviour. "I have counselled a couple who didn't have sex for 20 years, although they slept in the same bed," says Weiss.

### WITHHOLDING EMOTIONS

This means having difficulty sharing feelings, refusing to talk about hopes about the relationship.

#### **CRITICISing**

An emotional anorexic will indulge in constant low-grade put-downs of the spouse. "The intimacy anorexic will be much faster at making a list of what's wrong about their spouse than what is amazing."

### MAINTAINING DISTANCE



INDONESIA TOURISM: Western tourists watch the sun set near Kuta beach on the Indonesian resort island of Bali, in this May 28, 2005 file photo. Tourism in Indonesia, a sprawling archipelago of some 17,000 islands, has been shaken to the core by a string of disasters from bomb attacks on the resort island of Bali to deadly tsunamis and bird flu outbreaks. The drop in tourism since the 2004 tsunami continued this year with foreign tourist arrivals dropping 7.5 percent to 1.89 million in the first half of 2006, the statistics bureau said. To match feature INDONESIA TOURISM REUTERS/Darren Whiteside/Files ROMANCE / SUNSET / LOVE / RAMANTIC COUPLE

Anger or silence to push away, punish or control the spouse. Some are able to go weeks without talking to their other half.

### **MONEY AS A WEAPON**

Intimacy anorexics might keep the spouse ignorant of their finances, or keep them short of money. Or they use it to control their spouse. "Their attitude is, I buy you everything, so don't complain about a lack of intimacy, love or sex," says Weiss.
THE CRUNCH QUESTION

Finally, do you feel like you have a flatmate rather than a spouse? "I have heard this same comment so many times from spouses that I often add it to the end of my assessment," says Weiss.

Anybody in a long-term relationship will recognise a few of these behaviours after the initial honeymoon period is over. But, for most couples, they'll wear off. With the intimacy anorexic, the behaviour patterns are intentional and constant.

What's particularly damaging about this form of addiction is that the effect on the partner is worse than on the addict themselves, says Weiss.

"The spouse suffers tremendously - they often gain weight, they lose their self-esteem and they become depressed.

In order not to allow themselves to be destroyed by this behaviour, some spouses adapt to become intimacy anorexic themselves. "Either way is really painful."

And to add insult to injury, because the intimacy anorexic's behaviour has transformed their spouse into an angry, depressed or insecure individual, the emotional anorexic is then able to play the victim to outsiders, and use it to create still more distance between them and their suffering spouse.

"I had one female intimacy anorexic client who hadn't had sex with her husband for eight months and couldn't understand why he was so angry. Talk about denial."

If you're unlucky enough to be married to an intimacy anorexic, it doesn't mean your relationship is necessarily doomed.

"I've seen couples who haven't had sex in 10 years and, within six weeks, they were having sex," says Weiss.

He recommends following a 12-step process similar to that used by Alcoholics Anonymous, and insists on a programme of daily repetition of several key strategies to reintroduce intimacy into the relationship.

"You need to share two feelings with your spouse every day, pay two compliments and have a spiritual connection," he says.

Winnie: the hidden Struggle April 28 2011 at 12:40pm By Andrea van Wyk



The woman, clad in a white nightdress, grips the chair. Bars of light fall across her from a prison window. She stares at her tormentor in fear. In his hands is a whip: the instrument of her pain. As the music rises and falls so does the voice of her enemy: he calls her a whore, a bitch, a k\*\*\*\*r. She cries for her husband who cannot help her, as he himself is locked away in a prison on a small island. "My tears dried up, they no longer flow. I forget who I am, they don't want me to know," she sings. But her voice is steady, unwayering,

She is the "Mother of the Nation". She is the voice of her people and "surrender" is not part of her lexicon.

Her name is Winnie Madikizela-Mandela - one that evokes many contrasting emotions - and she is played by Tsakane Maswangani. Loved and hated, revered and scorned, she is a prodigious and anomalous figure in South African history. Hollywood will present her to the world on the silver screen later this year in a feature film starring Jennifer Hudson in the lead, but her story will

make its operatic debut at the State Theatre in Pretoria on Thursday.

Winnie The Opera is the brainchild of acclaimed local composer Bongani Ndodana-Breen and award-winning filmmaker Warren Wilensky.

They approached Mfundi Vundla, creator of several popular local soapies such

as Generations andBackstage, to help produce the project, and with funding from the Department of Arts and Culture, the first opera written and orchestrated by a black man came to life.

Opera is not popular in South Africa. Tickets are expensive and shows are long and mostly written in European languages such as German and Italian. But Wilenksy says it is the ideal medium to tell the Winnie story. "The story is so grand, the character so dramatic. She (Winnie) lends herself to opera: the highs and the lows she's been through. I don't feel it can be told in any better way than through opera – that is the story's natural medium," he explains.



Ndodana-Breen, whose music has been described by The New York Times as "complex" and "delicately made", agrees with Wilensky. "To me, as a South African composer, she (Winnie) is classic material for an opera. Tragic heroines like her are what the great canon of European repertoire are about and as a classical musician I have always wanted to see my culture, my values and things about my country reflected on an opera stage.

"Opera can really address subject material that's larger than life. You've got 65 people in the orchestra pit that can accentuate a look, a gesture, a word or even a silence and it is a wonderful means to play around with who and what Winnie is. Opera is the language of people who are larger than life." Like the lady herself.

The plot begins as a defiant Winnie is called before the Truth and Reconciliation Commission, where she is implicated in murder, torture, arson and assault. As the accounts of the alleged incidents are being told, she remembers her past and pieces of her tumultuous story unfold

"When you mention the name Winnie Mandela there's either overwhelming adulation or people talk about Stompie," says Ndodana-Breen. "So I thought let's start there and get that out of the way."

Winnie was charged with kidnapping and assaulting 14-year-old child activist Stompie Sepei in 1989. He died after being seized by her bodyguards and was later found dead. Two years later she was found guilty of the kidnapping charges but details of Stompie's murder, allegedly on Madikizela-Mandela's orders, only emerged during the TRC hearings in 1997.

However, Wilensky feels that the public often does not realise that Nelson Mandela's ex-wife is also just a human being



Winnie spent years under house arrest, was harassed by police and tortured during her 18 months in solitary confinement at Pretoria Central Prison in 1969. She had "to navigate through an unjust system at a time of war and that's what grabbed me about the story. I felt that people didn't grasp that," explains Wilkensky. "People judge her... while sitting on their comfortable couches in their lounges saying, 'You shouldn't fight with rubber tyres and you shouldn't be throwing stones or lighting matches...', but what choices did she have?"

The prima donna is played by Sowetan-born opera singer Maswangani, who has toured Europe, Russia and Japan as part of the UK-based group Amici. Previous roles include Musetta in Puccini's La Bohème and Valencienne in Lehár's operetta, Die Lustige Witwe (The Merry Widow).

Despite the status of the figure she's playing, Maswangani says she does not feel any extra pressure.

"If there's any pressure, it comes rather from the fact that I'm working on a big-scale opera, not from the character I'm playing. I'm looking at it as I would any other role, as telling a story," she says.

Winnie was approached by the writers, but was not interested in weighing in on the production. She did, however, tell them to invite her to the opening night and that she hoped to be surprised.

Many in the audience might certainly be surprised, if not shocked. The libretto is written in the vernacular and using both English and Xhosa, while Swanepoel, for example, uses Afrikaans swear words in his songs. Judging from the rehearsal, the set and lighting appears impressive with backdrops portraying the shacks in the Soweto township with its spaza shops and skew streetlights.



The opera is unlikely to sway opinion, but as Wilensky says, "art can be used to heal", or in this case, at least bring a better understanding of the woman behind the headlines.

I The opera is on at the Pretoria State Theatre from April 28 to May 3.

I Van Wyk is an Eyewitness News reporter.

#### Spa treat February 21 2011 at 05:48pm



Enter the Star/Sunday Independent Travel Club competition to win a getaway for two at African Pride Crystal Towers Hotel & Spa. This prize includes two nights' accommodation for two sharing, including breakfast and digner.

To enter, post your details, including your e-mail address, Travel Club number and the hotel name to: The Marketing Dept. PO Box 1014, Joburg, 2000 by March 9. To join The Star Travel Club enclose a R140 membership fee payable to The Star Travel Club with your entry, as only members can enter this competition. Alternatively, call 011 633 2341 (am) with your credit card details. This includes a threemonth subscription to Saturday Star or Pretoria News Weekend. If you join or renew your membership this year, you could win an 11-night cruise aboard the MSC Melody with Starlight Cruises and MSC Cruises. Monthly cruises are also offered.

Located in the heart of Cape Town's Century City urban hub, African Pride Crystal Towers Hotel & Spa is beside a palm-lined canal, and boasts views of Table Mountain.

From the original art works in the spacious lounges to the chic and innovative finishes, style, elegance and comfort are the watchwords. The Towers Restaurant is home to world-class chefs who skilfully blend and fuse a myriad cooking styles and flavours to tantalise even the most jaded of palates. If guests are looking for something more relaxed and casual, a selection of specialty coffees, cakes, pastries, gourmet paninis and light meals can be enjoyed at the 24 hour deli.

After dinner you can unwind in the elegant, doublevolume bar lounge where complimentary snacks are on offer, and the bar is fully stocked with imported champagnes and single malt whiskys.

Invigorate yourself at the Life Day Spa with a range of treatments, using the sauna and steam rooms or treating yourself to a workout in the gym.



Each of the 180 splendid rooms at the African Pride Crystal Towers Hotel & Spa combines an innovative blend of technological sophistication with elegant, modern décor.

Clean, modern lines give way to custom-designed fittings and designer furniture. Unique features include a cylindrical frosted glass shower with LED mood lighting, and a flat-screen TV that rises from the base of the bed at the touch of a button.

Travel Club members qualify for the exclusive rate of R1 380 per room per night on a bed & breakfast basis. This rate is subject to the availability of accommodation in this rate category, and is valid for a minimum two-night weekend stay. Full prepayment is required at the time of reservation.

Enquiries can be directed to African Pride Hotels direct to the hotel reservations department on 021 525 3888 or via e-mail on reservation@crystaltowershotel.com. Valid until April 30.

Private firm flouts UN embargo in Somalia February 26 2012 at 12:34pm By Ivor Powell

Comment on this story



INLSA

File Photo: Saracen trainees in the semiautonomous Puntland region of Somalia. The company s avowed mission in the area was to assist in training an anti-piracy task force.

Related Stories

# On the slippery trail of military deals

Eight months after SA-linked private military company Saracen International was fingered in a UN Security Council as the "most egregious threat" to peace and security in the failed state of Somalia, Saracen continues to run and train a private army in violation of UN Security Council resolutions.

Saracen, one of a cluster of shadowy private military contractors born from the ashes of the SA/British mercenary outfit Executive Outcomes, after nearly 18 months of military activity in the region, has yet to secure permission to operate as a security provider in a region so volatile Somalia has not had a functioning central government for upwards of 20 years.

Tlali Tlali, the spokesman for the National Conventional Arms Control Committee, confirmed that neither the SA arm of the Saracen operation, nor any of the individuals associated with the Somali adventure had applied for accreditation as legitimate security contractors.

UN Somalia and Eritrea Monitoring Group (SEMG) co-ordinator Matthew Bryden confirmed the company had failed to seek or secure authorisation from the international authority to operate as a private military contractor in Somalia after being fingered in the Monitoring Group's June 2011 report.

We understand that the UN is in possession of compelling evidence that Saracen has continued with military training and deployment in defiance of the UN's general arms embargo. The continuing violations of UN Resolutions 1973 and 1976 are expected to be addressed in detail in the SEMG's forthcoming annual report at midyear.

Saracen's operation in Somalia is headed by Executive Outcomes stalwart and – until the mercenary outfit was disbanded – holding company

director, Lafras Luitingh. Luitingh is also a director of Australian African Global Investments (AAGI) the company primarily involved in logistical supply and procurement for the operation.

The Saracen operation, funded by anonymous donors in the United Arab Emirates, has also been linked to US private military contractor Erik Dean Prince, formerly head of the notorious Blackwater, now operating out of Abu Dhabi as Xe Services. A third shadowy connection uncovered in respect of the Saracen programme is to former Mogadishu CIA bureau chief Michael Shanklin.

Originally contracted under the auspices of Somalia's fragile Transitional Federal Government (TFG) to train up an anti-piracy task force, and to take care of presidential security, Saracen has since early 2011 been exclusively contracted to the administration of Abdurahman Farole, "president" in the semi-autonomous region of Puntland, and based near the Puntland port of Bossaso.

The transfer of base and allegiance followed the cancellation of the TFG contract in the wake of allegations of violations of the UN arms embargo in February 2010.

Shortly before the TFG deal was cancelled, a flight chartered by Saracen was grounded by the authorities in Somaliland – another of the semi-autonomous regions that make up the failed Somali state – and an unauthorised cargo of combat uniforms, military webbing and other materiel impounded. The cargo – enough to equip more than 500 soldiers- was vaguely detailed in the flight manifest as "safari equipment".

At the present time, Saracen controls, on behalf of Farole, what is estimated to be the largest military presence in Somali territory with the exception of the nearly 20 000 strong Amisom peacekeeping force.

Photographs in the possession of Independent Newspapers show that its troops are equipped with state of the art hand-held light machine guns, as well as heavier machine guns mounted on turrets fitted in armoured vehicles and AK47 assault rifles.

Earlier, as highlighted in the SEMG report, Saracen's trainers complained that weapons already available from Puntland's armouries were inadequate, and proposed that new weapons be accessed by "other channels".

Warned by the UN they would be closely monitored and that such imports would be in flagrant violation of the general arms embargo enforced under UN Security Council Resolutions 1973 and 1976, Saracen apparently backed down, saying they would rely on what the Farole administration could legitimately access on Somali markets.

However, sources close to the UN in Somalia told Independent Newspapers that while the UN mission had not been in a position to scrutinise all deliveries, many of the weapons in the possession of the Farole forces were not available on internal markets in Somalia.

After being fingered for "egregious violation of the arms embargo" and "representing a threat to peace and security in Somalia" in June 2011, Saracen undertook to suspend all operations, but said it would maintain a presence to secure equipment already inside Somali territory and to perform humanitarian functions like building clinics and delivering famine relief in rural areas.

However, Independent Newspapers investigations have revealed that Saracen has routinely exceeded its avowed brief, and appears to have been pursuing different and shadowy agendas.

At present the Saracen base outside Bassaso has capacity for an estimated 1 500 soldiers – three times the number of soldiers trained by the time Saracen agreed to suspend operations.

Moreover, in the course of the past year, according to sources close to the UN operation, Saracen is known to have brought 15 000 tons of materiel into Puntland in defiance of the UN arms embargo, and without the UN being in a position to execute inspections.

Other intelligence in the possession of Independent Newspapers indicates that in the second half of 2011, the Puntland port was closed off to normal control mechanisms for a period of 10 days while Saracen materiel was unloaded. It remains unclear exactly what the cargoes were.

Meanwhile, in the current frame, Saracen has deployed forces to a military command centre at Qow in the Puntland hinterland, according to sources on the ground. There is also evidence that Saracen is operating at least four helicopters in Puntland – after UN monitors blocked the unloading of two Alouettes on a vessel linked to Saracen and its shadowy associates in the early part of 2011. In addition the operation is suspected to have access to at least six ocean-going vessels as well as several inflatable attack vessels.

Funded to the tune of some \$50 million (R380m) a year for an initial period of three years – the figure excludes the cost of military hardware – the avowed purpose of the Saracen operation was to train up an-anti piracy force on behalf of the Puntland administration. However, even in the June 2011 SEMG report the concern is expressed that "there were early indications that the Puntland authorities may have had alternate objectives in mind for the force".

Some of those "alternate objectives" could be highlighted in a letter dated 6 December 2010 and addressed to the UN by the "president" of the Galmudug region of fractured Somalia. Here reference is made to a "massacre" of "innocent nomads" carried out by Puntland security forces explicitly identified as having been armed and trained by Saracen. In one of a series of actions conducted by troops in armoured vehicles equipped

with heavy weapons, the Galmudug leader says 35 people were killed, and 46 wounded, many of the casualties inflicted on women and children.

While the direct involvement of Saracen in the incidents referred to has been questioned, sources close to the UN monitoring group said there were indications that Saracen could be equipping and advising militias loyal to Farole in ongoing civil conflict with Bedouin clans in the Puntland domain.

Especially targetedare clans with an allegiance to the militant religious leader Sheikh Mohamed Said Atom – who has emerged as one of the major targets of US interventions in Somalia.

Avowedly linked with the militant Al Shabaab, Atom, as well as other clan leaderships in the area are also highly resistant to the exploitation of mineral resources in their territory.

Ironically, little activity is on record or has been alleged involving anti-piracy actions on the part of Saracen.

Meanwhile the stakes have risen higher in troubled Puntland. With a concerns growing that Farole intends to secede from the fragile Somali federation, drilling has begun on two oil concessions in the territory held by Canadianmining company Africa Oil. With huge reserves already identified – and initial surveys indicating even more extensive offshore resources, Puntland is poised to become a major player in the horn of Africa.

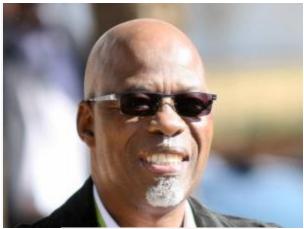
Against this backdrop, intelligence sources indicated that Saracen's operatives, backed by Mohamed Farole – son of and designated advisor to the president – have sought to insert themselves into an oil security operation that to date has operated with UN accreditation and in co-operation with the international authorities.

This would give Saracen a foothold in the resources-for-arms trade that characterised Executive Outcomes' military adventures in Angola and Sierra Leone among other troublespots in the 1990s.

Contacted for comment, Luitingh said he could not speak at that moment and failed to answer calls later. - Sunday Independent

**ANC whip pressed health MEC over tender** October 27 2013 at 09:42am By LOYISO SIDIMBA

Comment on this story



Independent Newspaper Limited

ANC Chief Whip Stone Sizani. Photo: Masi Losi

Johannesburg - ANC chief whip Stone Sizani has been accused of putting former Eastern Cape Health MEC Nomsa Jajula under immense political pressure to approve the building of two private hospitals.

Former acting Eastern Cape health superintendentgeneral Dr Nandi Diliza makes the startling claims in papers filed at the Constitutional Court and the Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA).

Current Health MEC Sicelo Gqobana and the department's superintendent-general Dr Thobile Mbengashe have applied for leave to appeal the SCA's judgment in May at the Constitutional Court.

In May, the SCA set aside Eastern Cape High Court Judge Mandela Makaula's December 2011 decision to refer the applications back to the superintendent-general for reconsideration.

Kirkland Investments, which trades as Eye and Laser Institute, applied to build private hospitals in Port Elizabeth and Jeffrey's Bay between 2006 and 2007. Its application was granted by then acting superintendent-general Diliza.

According to court papers filed at the Constitutional Court, Diliza received an instruction from then MEC Jajula, who the department admits was also under pressure to grant the company's application.

Diliza simply carried out the instruction but the permanent superintendent-general at the time, Lawrence Boya, had already rejected Kirkland Investments' application.

However, Boya's rejection was not communicated to the company. Kirkland Investments says it only found out about this nine months after the decision was taken. The company had already acquired land for the hospitals and was already preparing and submitting building plans when Boya's decision was finally communicated to it.

In her affidavit filed at the SCA, Diliza said that prior to making the decision in favour of Kirkland Investments, Jajula told a meeting of senior

departmental staff that she had been approached by Sizani, at the time ANC provincial chairman, and that she would be going to Port Elizabeth to meet him to discuss Kirkland Investments' applications for approval and to be shown one of its hospitals.

Jajula has denied instructing Diliza but was only willing to give oral evidence, according to Kirkland Investments.

At another meeting, Jajula informed staff members, including Diliza, that she had met Sizani and saw Kirkland Investments' clinic, which was small and needed expansion.

According to Diliza, Jajula told health department staff that it would be unfair to refuse Kirkland Investments' applications and that she was under pressure from the province's executive council because the department was seen as withholding licences from black-owned companies to establish private hospitals.

After the Port Elizabeth meeting with Sizani, Jajula told Diliza that she was under political pressure to approve Kirkland Investments' application and instructed her to approve it.

Diliza obliged with the instruction, Gqobana and Mbengashe say in court papers. They say Jajula understood that Sizani had an interest in Kirkland Investments although this is disputed.

Sizani's declaration in Parliament's register of members' interest shows that he is a director or partner in a dozen companies but Kirkland Investments is not one of them. Some of the companies have been liquidated.

According to Gqobana and Mbengashe's court papers: "The acting superintendent-general (Diliza) received an instruction from the then MEC (herself under political pressure) to grant Kirkland Investments' applications".

They say the instruction was unlawful and inappropriate.

Sizani, through ANC Parliamentary caucus spokesman Moloto Mothapo, said he was aware of the court case in question.

"However, he wishes to make it clear that the case has nothing to do with him. Therefore there should be no need whatsoever to either get involved in the case or dignify claims made in it with a response," he said.

In May, acting SCA Judge Clive Plasket accepted Diliza's version of events, saying "Jajula had not deposed an affidavit and despite the denial of the allegations by Kirkland Investments and competing allegations whether Jajula made certain admissions or denials, no proper dispute of fact is created".

At the SCA, Diliza said Jajula was under political pressure to grant the applications because the refusal to grant the Kirkland Investments'

applications put her in a bad light in the political arena.

The matter will be heard next month.

Sizani may also face court action after DA MP Dianne Kohler Barnard indicated that she was considering legal action against him for an alleged defamatory attack on her character.

The threat of legal action follows Sizani's claim that Kohler Barnard violated her oath of confidentiality by posting updates on Facebook during the probe by Parliament's ethics committee against former Communications minister Dina Pule.

The ethics committee dismissed the allegation against Kohler-Barnard.

Meanwhile, the Eastern Cape health department has received 69 applications for private hospitals.

Among the applicants are former Olympics marathon runner Xolile Yawa and Medical Research Council chairperson Professor Lizo Mazwai.

He has applied to build a 100-bed hospital in Sterkspruit and upgrading of Carecure's hospital in Queenstown. Mazwai wants to open a 75-bed hospital and two theatres in Lusikisiki.

Spokesman Sizwe Kupelo declined to comment on the case, saying the health department did not talk about issues before the courts.

Diliza, who has since left the Eastern Cape health department, did not respond to requests for comment.

loyiso.sidimba@inl.co.za Sunday Independent